

開明中學講義

開明英文講義

〔第二冊〕

林語堂 林 幽

合 編

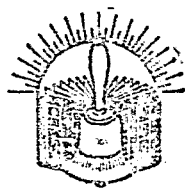
開明函授學校出版
開·明·書·店·印·行

開明中學講義

開明英文講義

〔第二冊〕

林語堂 林 幽
合 編



開明函授學校出版
開明書店印行

CONTENTS

Lesson	page
1. How do you Find the Food?	1
2. This is a Nice House	4
3. Porch, Backyard, etc.	7
4. I Wash my Face	10
5. I Brush my Teeth	13
6. "To Bed, to Bed," says Sleepy Head, etc.	17
7. April Showers, etc.	20
8. Will This Do?	23
9. Colours	27
10. More Colours	30
11. What Grammar Is	34
12. Subject and Predicate	36
13. Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs	39
14. Please do Come, etc.	42
15. A Riddle, a Riddle, etc.	45
16. Adjectives	49
17. Adverbs	52
18. I Got a Few Books	55
19. Would you do me a Favour?	59
20. Shall I Show you How the Farmer?	62
21. This House is Nicely Furnished	65
22. Dining-room, Bedroom Furnitures.	68
23. Direct Objects	71
24. Nominative and Objective Cases	74
25. Simple Simon Meets a Pie-man	76
26. I am a Barber (Hair Cut).	81

27.	I am a Barber (Shaving, etc.)	84
28.	The Monkey and the Cat	87
29.	Don't be Some One's Cat's-paw	90
30.	The Dog in the Manger	93
31.	Report for Work	96
32.	Being Introduced to the Staff	99
33.	Long Measures	103
34.	Weight Measures	106
35.	<i>Here we Go 'round the Mulberry Tree</i>	109
36.	Prepositions, Conjunctions and Interjections	114
37.	How Words are Classified	117
38.	Phrases	121
39.	The Thirsty Fox and the Grapes	125
40.	Is the Grape Sour?	127
41.	Analysing a Sentence	131
42.	Prepositional Phrases	134
43.	They Killed a Deer	138
44.	The Lion's Share	141
45.	<i>Little Shepherd, Come, Play your Flute</i>	145
46.	A Bird in Hand is Worth Two in Bush	148
47.	The Squirrel and the Lion	152
48.	Naming One's Relations (I).	155
49.	Naming One's Relations (II)	158
50.	<i>Mary had a Little Lamb</i>	162
51.	Indirect Objects.	166
52.	Prepositional Verbs	168
53.	Foreign Countries and Peoples	171
54.	More Foreign Countries and Peoples	175
55.	Foreign Peoples and Languages.	179
56.	A Dinner	183

57.	Object Complements	185
58.	A Busy Day.	188
59.	This House needs Repair Now	191
60.	<i>Twinkle, Twinkle, Little Star</i>	193
61.	A Letter	197
62.	A Reply	200
63.	Parts of a Letter	203
64.	Molly's Fine Dream	205
65.	About Molly's Dream	208
66.	Appositives	211
67.	Independent Constructions	214
68.	The Wood-cutter's First Wish	217
69.	The Wood-cutter Explains	219
70.	The Second and Third Wishes	222
71.	How to Get There (I)	226
72.	How to Get There (II).	228
73.	How to Get There (III)	230
74.	The Fly and the Moth	233
75.	<i>In Winter I Get Up by Night, etc.</i>	235
76.	On a Tram	239
77.	On a Bus	242
78.	Sentences Classified according to Use.	245
79.	The Order of Words	248
80.	Don't Blow Hot and Cold	251
81.	Whose Treat will it Be?	255
82.	I Want to Get Business, Pure and Simple	258
83.	Let's have Foreign Food	261
84.	The Crow and the Fox	264
85.	Don't Trust Flatterers	266
86.	Complex Sentences,	270

開明英文語義(二)

87. Compound Sentences	273
88. Analysis of the Simple, Compound and Complex Sentences	276
89. The Weather is Bad and Many are Ill	280
90. Don't Kill the Goose that lays Golden Eggs	283
GLOSSARY	288

LESSON 1

How do you Find the Food?

MRS. CHEN: (1) How do you find the food?

MR. LEE: (2) I enjoy [ɪnjoɪ'] it very much. (3) Every dish is delicious [dɪlɪʃəs].

MRS. CHEN: (4) Then help yourself freely [frɪ'li]. (5) We don't stand on ceremony [sɛ:'ɪmənɪ] here.

MR. LEE: (6) Neither [neɪ'dheɪ] do I. (7) Mr. Chen and I are old, old friends.

MR. CHEN: (8) But you are not eating as much as you used to [u'st tʊ].

MR. LEE: (9) My stomach [stʊm'ek] is not what it used to be.

MRS. CHEN: (10) That is too bad [bɑd]. (11) Have some broth [brʊθ] of the pig's [pɪgz] stomach. (12) It ought to be good for you.

MR. LEE: (13) Thanks. (14) I will help myself to it by and by. (15) I must finish these first.

MRS. CHEN: (16) You needn't [neɪ'dn] finish everything you have taken. (17) If anything doesn't agree [egre'] with you, just leave it on the plate [plæt].

MR. LEE: (18) There is no need of doing that, as you leave me to get what I like.

MRS. CHEN: (19) Have you finished? (20) Now, help yourself to some of the broth, please.

MR. LEE: (21) Yes, I will. (22) What, more dishes



MR. CHEN: (23) Yes, this is fish [fɪʃ], so there will be one more dish, and then the sweets [swēts], and it will be over. (24) Come on, let's have it while it's hot.

MR. LEE: (25) I have taken more than what is good for me, I fear [fɛə]. (26) However [how-ɛvə], as it is fish, I will take some.

MR. CHEN: (27) Have no fear, and you will be all right.

譯 文

陳夫人：(1) 這些小菜你以為如何？

李先生：(2) 我很充分地享用它。(3) 每碟滋味都很好。

陳夫人：(4) 那麼請你自由進食。(5) 我們這裏不拘禮節的。

李先生：(6) 我也不。(7) 陳先生和我是很老的老朋友。

陳先生：(8) 但是你吃得不如你習常的多。

李先生：(9) 我的胃(不是那個它從前是)不如從前的健。

陳夫人：(10) 那太(不好)可惜了。(11) 喝點兒豬肚湯罷。(12) 這應當是有益於你的。

李先生：(13) 謝謝。(14) 再一會兒我會自己取食。(15) 我須先喫完這些。

陳夫人：(16) 你不必喫完一切你所夾去的。(17) 如果有什麼東西不合於你[的胃口]，儘管放在盤上。

李先生：(18) 不必這樣做，既然你讓我來取我所愛喫的。

陳夫人：(19) 你喫完了嗎？(20) 現在請喝點兒湯。

李先生：(21) 好，(我要)我來了。(22) 怎麼，(更多的)還有菜來嗎？

陳先生：(23) 是，這是魚，所以還有一樣菜，然後是甜食，那就完了。(24) 來呀，讓咱們當它還熱的時候喫它。

李先生：(25) 深恐我已(喫了更多於那有益於我的)喫得太多了，有傷脾胃了。(26) 雖然，這個既然是魚，我總要喫點兒的。

陳先生：(27) 不要怕，你就無事。

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2. enjoy [injoɪ]: 賞樂, 享用。 | pig [pɪg] 猪。——pig's [-z]: 猪的。 |
| 3. delicious [dɪlɪʃhəs]: 滋味很 | [好, 再一會兒。 |
| 4. freely [fri:li]: 自由地。 [好。 | 14. by a ' by [ɪ' ɒn li:]: 與一 |
| 5. ceremony [sərə'məni]: 禮節。 | 16. needn't [ni:dn't, 或 nē'dn:]: 無須, 不必。(此字爲 need not 之縮寫) |
| ——stand on ceremony: (立在禮節上), 拘; 禮節。 | 17. agree [ə'ri:]: 合, 相合。(過去時詞與過去分詞只加一 -d 字) |
| 6. neither [nei'dhe, 或 ni'dhe]: 不, 也不。 | plate [plæt]: 盤。 |
| 8. used [u:st]: 慣。(作此解時現在時制罕用。)——used to [u:st tə, 但於 to 字後邊沒有云謂該時應讀 u: t tō]: 慣於。 | 23. fish [fɪʃ]: 魚。(多條的魚仍用 fɪ:ʃ, 指多種的魚時始用 fishes [fɪʃtɪ:z]) |
| 9. stomach [stʌm'tək]: 胃, 肚。(複數 stomachs [stʌm'tɛks], 加 -s, 非 -es.) | sweets [swets]: 蜜餞, 或其他甜的食物。 |
| 10. bad [bəd]: 不好, 有缺點。——too bad [tu: bəd]: 太有缺點, 遺憾, 美中不足; (轉爲) 太可惜。 | 24. on [ɒn]: 作狀態用時, 義爲“前進”。——come on [kʌm'ɒn]: (來前進), 來呀! |
| 11. broth [brɒθ]: (有肉類的) 湯。 | 25. fear [fɪə]: 怕。 |
| | 26. however [həw-əvə]: 雖然。 |

講 義

(A) 本課的課文是三個人席上所講的話, 在各人所講的話的前面, 另以他或他的姓名及“冒號”(:) 爲記。

(B) Neither do I 的 do I 並非詢問句, 乃一種倒裝句法。

(C) use 作“慣”解時, 須以 to 放在後邊, 而且祇適用於過去時制。

開明英文講義 (二)

(D) what it used to be, what I like, what is good for me 都是子句當作名詞用,所以叫“名詞子句”;但這種子句不一定都是以 what 做引的。

(E) 第 16 句 everything you have taken 的 you have taken 乃形容詞子句,這子句的全句本有 have taken 的賓詞 which 在 you 之前;但是這句構造——把子句的賓語同時爲介紹字者省去——是很常見的。

(F) 第 18 句 of doing that 的 doing 是現在分詞當做名詞用(即所謂“動名詞”),除自身有賓語 that 外,同時又是介詞 of 的“賓語”。介詞 + 名詞 = 介詞短語,可作形容詞短語或狀語短語用。

練 習

【背誦】 Please don't stand on ceremony.
There is no need of doing that.
Neither do I.
Come on, let's have it while it's hot.
I have taken too much already, I fear.

LESSON 2

This is a Nice House

(1) This is a nice house. (2) It has nice brick walls [brɪk wɔːlz] and red tile [tɪl] roof [rʊf]. (3) That is to say, its walls are built [bɪlt] of bricks [-s], and its roof is covered with tiles [-z].

(4) Inside the house, the walls are nicely plastered [plə'stəd]. (5) Its ceilings [sɛ'lɪŋz] are beautifully [bju'tɪfli] plastered too. (6) It has wooden [wʊd'n] floors, that is to say, its floors are paved [pævd] with wood [wʊd].

(7) The doors are made of wood, and beautifully made, too. (8) Its windows have beautiful wooden frames [fræmz] and glass panes [glɑːs pænz].

(9) The other house is not so nice. (10) Its walls are built of black [blāk] brick, and are not so nicely plastered. (11) Its floors are paved with red square [skwār] tiles. (12) Its windows are smaller, and not so beautiful. (13) It is a nice house, but not so good as the other house. (14) However, it is bigger and has more rooms.

15. Which house is nicer [nī'so], the bigger one or the smaller one?—The smaller one is a nicer house.
16. Of what are their walls built?—The walls are built of bricks.
17. With what are the floors of the bigger house paved?—They are paved with square tiles.
18. With what is the roof covered?—It is covered with red tiles.
19. Of what are the doors and window frames made?—They are made of wood.

譯 文

(1) 這是一間很精緻的房子。(2) 它有精美的磚牆與紅瓦的屋頂。(3) 就是說，它的牆是以磚造的，而它的屋頂是用瓦蓋的。

(4) 在屋子內，牆壁很精美地塗以灰泥。(5) 它的天花板也很美麗地塗以灰泥。(6) 它有木頭地板，就是說，它的地板是木頭鋪成的。

(7) 門是以木頭做的，而且做得很美麗。(8) 它的窗門有美麗的木骨架與玻璃片。

(9) (另外) 那一間房子沒有這樣的精緻。(10) 它的牆是

以黑磚造的，又不是那樣精緻地塗以灰泥。(11) 它的地板是以紅方磚鋪的。(12) 它的窗門較小，又沒有那樣美麗。(13) 它是一間好房子，但不如那間的好。(14) 雖然，它是較大，也有較多的房間。

15. 哪一間房子是較精緻，那較大的還是那較小的？——那較小的是較精緻的房子。
16. 它們的牆是用什麼東西造的？——牆是用磚造的。
17. 那較大的房子的地板是用什麼鋪的？——它們是用方磚鋪的。
18. 屋頂是用什麼蓋的？——它是用紅瓦蓋的。
19. 門與窗門的骨架是用什麼做的？——它們是用木頭做的。

生 字

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|-----|
| 2. brick [brɪk]: 磚,(用以造磚的) | tile [taɪl]: 美瓷地。 | [的。 |
| wall [wɔ:l]: 牆。 | 6. wooden [wʊd.n]: 木頭(製) | |
| tile [taɪl]: 瓦,磚。 | pave [pæv]: 鋪(地板),鋪(路)。 | |
| roof [rʊf]: 屋頂。(複數: roofs [rʊf.s]) | wood [wʊd]: 木頭。 | |
| 3. build [bɪld]: 蓋造。(過去時制與過去分詞: built [bɪlt]) | 8. frame [fræm]: 骨架; 框。 | |
| 4. plaster [plɑ:stə]: 塗灰泥。 | glass [glɑ:s]: 玻璃。 | |
| 5. ceiling [s'eɪlɪŋ]: 天花板。 | pane [pæn]: 片,方片。 | |
| beautifully [bju:tblɪ, 或 bju:tblɪ] | 10. black [blæk]: 黑。 | |
| | 11. square [skwɛr]: 四方,四方的。 | |
| | 15. nicer [nɪ:sə]: 較精緻。 | |

講 義

(A) 第7句的 *and beautifully made* 爲 *and are beautifully made* 之前, *are* 字不會寫出或說出。

(B) 注意 *built of bricks*, *made of wool*; 但是 *covered with tiles*, *paved with tiles*. *build* 與 *make* 之後用 *of*; *cover* 與 *pave* 之後是用 *with*. 但這只是關於所用的材料。

(C) 注意被動態的詢問句中之云謂詞短語被分開後所佔的位置: to be 之各式在主語之前而動詞的過去分詞則仍然在後。又須注意帶有詢問代名詞的介詞短語須於在 to be 之前,如 16 至 19 諸詢問句。

練 習

將以下諸句與 16 至 19 四句比較其不同之點:

Are the walls built of bricks?

Are not the floors of the bigger house paved with square tiles?

Is the roof covered with tiles?

Are not the doors made of wood?

LESSON 3

Porch, Backyard, etc.

(1) The nicer house is not so big as the other house.

(2) The latter [lǎt'ə] has more rooms. (3) It has a yard [yāf`] at the back, which is called the backyard [bāk'-yāf']. (4) But it has no porch [pōrch], which the smaller house has. (5) The smaller house has two porches [pōr'chiz], one in the front, and one on the left side.

(6) The smaller house has less rooms. (7) It has only one drawing-room [drō'ing-rōōm] and one dining-room downstairs, and three rooms upstairs. (8) It has neither an attic [ăt'ik] nor [nōr] a basement [bā'smont]. (9) The kitchen [kīch'in] is outside the house, at the back.

(10) The bigger house has no basement, but it has an attic of many rooms. (11) Its hall [hawl] is also bigger

than that of the nicer house. (12) The kitchen is in the house, next to the dining-room. (13) It has two bathrooms [bah'th-rōō.nz], while the smaller house has only one.

14. Where is the kitchen of the bigger house, and that of the smaller house?—The kitchen of the former [fōr'mə] is in the house, while that of the latter is at the back.
15. Has the big house a basement and an attic, and the small house?—Neither the big house nor the small house has a basement, but the former has an attic.
16. How many porches has the smaller house, and the bigger house?—The former has two porches, while the latter has none [nūn].
17. Which hall is bigger, that of the big house or that of the small house?—The former has a bigger hall, of course.

譯 文

(1) 那較精緻的房子不如那另一所房子大。(2) 後者有較多的房間。(3) 它有一庭在屋後,那是後庭。(4) 但是它沒有走廊,那較小的房子就有了。(5) 那較小的房子有兩個走廊,一個在前邊,一個在左邊。

(6) 那較小的房子有較少的房間。(7) 它只有一個客廳與一個飯廳在樓下,與三個房間在樓上。(8) 它沒有屋頂樓,也沒有地下室。(9) 廚房是在房子外邊,在屋後。

(10) 那較大的房子沒有地下室,但是它有一層許多房間的屋頂樓。(11) 它的門廊也是較大於那較精緻的房子的(門廊)。

(12) 廚房是在房子內，毗連於飯廳。(13) 它有二間浴室，而那較小的房子只有一間。

14. 那較大的房子的廚房在什麼地方，而那較小的房子的(廚房)呢?——前者的廚房是在屋子內面，而後者的是在屋後。
15. 那大房子有地下室與屋頂樓嗎，而那小房子呢?——那大房子沒有，那小房子也沒有地下室，但是前者有一層屋頂樓。
16. 那較小的房子有幾個走廊，而那較大的房子呢?——前者有兩個走廊，而後者一個也沒有。
17. 哪一個門廊是較大，那大房子的，還是那小房子的?——當然，前者有個較大的門廊。

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2. latter [lăt'ə]: 後者。(指兩件東西的第二件而言，前面須有“the”) | 9. kitchen [kīch'īn, 非 -ən, t 無音]: 廚房。 |
| 3. yard [yărd]: 庭。 [字]。 | 11. hall [haw]: 門廳，門廊(即入門處的廳)。 |
| backyard [băk'yăd]: 後庭。 | 13. bathroom [bah'th-rōom, 注意 th 與 r 須分開讀]: 浴室。 |
| 4. porch [pŏch]: 走廊。 | 14. former [fŏr'mə]: 前者。(當做名詞用時須置“the”字於其前。) |
| 7. drawing-room [drŏ'īng-rōom]: 客廳。 | 16. none [nŏn]: 一個也沒有。(代名詞) |
| 8. attic [ăt'īk]. 屋頂樓。 | |
| nor [nŏr]: 也不。 | |
| basement [bă'smənt]: 地下室。 | |

講 義

(A) 注意: *on* (或 *at*) *the back*, *on* (或 *at*) *the side*, 但 *in the front*.

(B) *neither ~ nor ~* = “非~, 也非~”; 或 “無~, 也無~”。主語為兩個單數用 “*neither ~ nor ~*” 去聯絡時，後邊云謂詞應用單數。

(C) *the former*, *the latter* 乃在前面有兩件事或兩件東西，而欲指其“前一件”或“後一件”時用的。注意: *latter* [lăt'ə] 與 *later* [lă'tə], 所差只一個 *t* 字; 兩個字都是 *late* 的較級。不過 *latter* 常和 *the* 連用，作“後者”解; 而 *later* 卻是“更遲”的意思，或者 *later* 與 *on* 連用 (*later on*), 作“後來”解。

(D) 注意：本課中 the bigger 是與 the smaller 相對比較的，不是與 big 比較的，同樣地 the smaller 並不是與 small 比較，而是與 the bigger 相對比較的。

(E) 14, 15, 16 的詢問句都是複合句，而其在後邊的子句乃簡句，把“述語”省去了。

練 習

【填字】

The walls are built — bricks.

The floor is paved — tiles.

There is a porch — the front and one — the back.

It has — a porch — the front, — a yard — the back.

LESSON 4

I Wash my Face

(1) When I get up in the morning, I go to the bathroom to wash [wǒsh] myself. (2) This is what I do.

(3) I pour [pǒu] water into the basin [bā'sn] and wash my hands first. (4) Then I empty [ěm'tí] the basin, pour more water into it, and wash my face.

(5) First, I dip my towel [t'ow'tól] into the water, rinse [rīns] it, and wring [rīng] it dry. (6) Then I rub [rǔb] soap [sǎp] on it, and rub my face and neck well with it.

(7) Again I dip it into the water, rinse it, wring it dry, and wash my face and neck once more. (8) Finally [fī'nəli] I rinse the towel, wring it dry, and wipe [wíp] my hands dry on it. (9) In this way, I wash my face,

which means I wash my forehead, temples, eyes, nose, lips, chin, cheeks, ears, and neck.

10. When do you wash your face?—I can't tell, because I wash my face many times a day.
11. With what do you wash your face? — With water in a basin, towel, soap and my hands.
12. Do you use [nɪz] much water and soap in washing your face?—Why, yes.
13. How do you use your towel? — I dip it into water, rinse it, and wring it dry, before using [nɪzɪŋ] it.
14. Please empty the basin when you have finished using it.
15. Please pour water into it again.

譯 文

(1) 早上我起身時，我到浴室去洗濯我自己。(2) 我做的是這個。

(3) 我注水入面盆而先洗我的手。(4) 然後我倒空那面盆，再注更多的水入面盆而洗我的臉。(5) 首先，我浸我的面巾入水中，洗它，而絞乾它。(6) 然後我抹搽肥皂在它上邊，而用它好好的擦我的臉與頸。(7) 我再浸那面巾入水中，洗它，絞乾它，而再洗一回我的面與頸。(8) 最後我洗那面巾，絞乾它，而在它上邊拭乾我的手。(9) 這樣地我洗我的臉，這就是說，我洗我的額，髮角，眼睛，鼻，唇，頰，頰，耳，與頸。

10. 你什麼時候洗臉?——我不能說，因為我一天洗臉洗許多回哩。
11. 你用什麼洗臉?——用面盆中的水，面巾，肥皂，與我的手。

12. 你用許多的水與肥皂洗你的臉嗎?——唔,是呀。
13. 你怎樣地用你的面巾?——我在用它之前把它浸入水中,洗它,絞乾它。
14. 請倒空那面盆在你用完之時。
15. 請再注水入盆中。

生 字

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. wash [wɒʃ, 注意 a 讀 ɒ 音]:
洗面。 | wring [rɪŋ]: 絞。 |
| 3. pour [pɔː]: 傾注(液汁)。 | 6. rub [rʌb]: 抹, 搽, 摩擦。 |
| basin [bæsn]: 盆, 面盆。 | soap [səʊp]: 肥皂。 |
| 4. empty [ɛm'ptɪ, 或 ɛm'ti]: 空;
使空。 | 8. finally [fɪ'nə'li]: 最後, 末了。 |
| 5. towel [taʊəl]: 手巾, 面巾。 | wipe [wɪp]: 拭, 揩。 |
| rinse [rɪns]: 輕輕地洗, 或將水
注入又傾出。 | 12. use [uːz]: 用, 使用。 |
| | why [waɪ]: 是吓, 當然。(作感
嘆詞或口頭語用時等於“唔”,
“呀”) |

講 義

(A) wring it dry, wipe my hands dry 內中的 dry 是形容詞, 形容 it, 與 hands 同時是動詞的意義, 這詞在文法上叫“補足語”。動詞的直接賓語亦是補足語之一。此外如 It is good 內中的 good 亦是補足語。

(B) 11 與 12 的答句都是簡句。11 的答句所省去的是 I wash my face, 可放在 with 之前或 hand 之後; 12 的答句所省去的是 I use much water and soap in washing my face, 應在 yes 之後。

練 習

- 【背誦】 Please empty the basin.
Please pour some water into the basin.
Would you please give me the { towel?
 { soap?
Wipe your hands dry first, please.

LESSON 5

I Brush my Teeth

(1) Next [nĕkst] I rinse my mouth, or rather brush [brūsh] my teeth.

(2) To rinse my mouth, I first fill [fīl] a mug [mŭg] with water. (3) Next, I take my toothbrush [tōō'th-brūsh] and force [fōrs] some tooth-paste [tōō'th-pāst] on it.

(4) Then I brush my teeth briskly [brīsk'lī]. (5) I rinse my mouth and brush my teeth again. (6) I rinse my mouth once more, and I gurgle [gŭr'gl] my throat with water to clean [klĕn] the inner [in'ə] part of my mouth. (7) Then I wipe my mouth with the towel and I have finished brushing my teeth.

(8) After this, I go and stand before a mirror [mīr'ə].

(9) I brush my hairs well, and rub some pomade [pomah'd] on them. (10) Then with a comb [kōm] I comb my hairs right and left, dividing [dīvī'dīng] them at the left. (11) After combing [kō'mīng] my hairs, I put on my clothes.

12. With what do you brush your teeth? — Why, with toothbrush and tooth-paste.
13. How do you clean the inner part of your mouth? — I gurgle with water.
14. Before what do you stand, when you are combing your hairs? — I stand before a mirror.
15. Your hairs look very nice, do you use pomade? — Why, yes, of course.

16. Every morning everybody washes his hands and face, brushes his teeth, rinses his mouth, gurgles his throat, and combs his hairs.
17. Please wipe your hands dry on the towel.
18. Would you, please, lend me your hand-mirror [hænd-mɪr'əʊ]?

譯 文

(1) 其次,我漱口,或是寧可說我刷我的牙齒。

(2) (以)漱口,我先以水斟滿一個玻璃杯。(3) 其次,我拏我的牙刷而擠出些牙膏在它的上邊。(4) 然後我輕快地刷我的牙齒。(5) 我再漱口,再刷我的牙齒。(6) 我再漱一回口,我又含水使它在我的喉部作潺潺聲來洗我的嘴的內部。(7) 然後我用手巾揩我的嘴而我已刷了我的牙齒。

(8) 這事以後我去立了一個鏡前。(9) 我好好地刷我的頭髮,而敷塗些髮油。(10) 然後我用一把梳子梳我的頭髮向右與向左,分佈它們在左邊。(11) 梳了我頭髮之後,我穿上我的衣服。

12. 你用什麼刷你的牙齒?——當然,以牙刷與牙膏。
13. 你怎樣地洗你嘴的內部?——我以水作潺潺聲。 [前。
14. 你在梳你的頭髮時,你立在什麼東西之前?——我立在鏡
15. 你的頭髮看去很好看,你用髮油麼?——唔,當然的。
16. 每早各人洗他的手與面,刷他的牙齒,漱他的口,含水在喉頭使它作潺潺聲,與梳他的頭髮。
17. 請在那手巾上揩乾你的手。
18. 請你借與我你的手鏡,好嗎?

生 字

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. next [nɛkʃi]: 其次。 | inner [ɪn'ə]: 較內的。——inner part: 內部。 |
| brush [brʊʃ]: 刷; 刷子。 | 8. mirror [mɪ'rɔ:]: 鏡。 |
| 2. fill [fɪl]: 使充滿, 貯滿。 | 9. pomade [pə.nəh'd, 或 pɔ:]: 生髮油, 或香髮膏。 |
| mug [mʊg]: 漱口杯。 [刷。 | 10. comb [kɔm, b 字無音]: 梳 (頭髮); 梳子。(云謂詞或名詞) |
| 3. toothbrush [tʊθ'θrʊʃ]: 牙刷 | divide [dɪvɪ'd]: 分, 分開。 |
| force [fɔ:ʃ]: 擠出; 驅逼(使出)。 | 15. look [lʊk]: 看起來像。 |
| tooth-paste [tʊθ'pɑ:st]: 牙膏。 | 18. hand-mirror [hænd-mɪ'rə, d 讀出或不讀出都可以]: 手鏡。 |
| 4. briskly [brɪʃk'lɪ]: 輕快地; 活 | |
| 6. gurgle [gɜ'gɜ:]: 作潺潺聲; 使作 | |
| clean [klen]: 洗滌。 [潺潺聲。 | |

講 義

(A) finished brushing, 依文法講起來, brushing 一字是現在分詞而為 finished 的“賓語”; 依其意義可譯為“刷完”。finish 與其他的動詞之現在分詞在這種構造時亦同。

(B) 第 10 句 dividing them at the left, 依文法講, 是形容詞形容主語 I; 但是在實際上, 其作用與狀詞同, 說明“梳具的頭髮向右與向左”時的情形: 頭髮有左邊分開。這種的句子很常見。

(C) 在 15 句中的 look 字, 在文法上, 雖是“自動態”, 而在意義上, 卻是“被動態”; 因為這“看”並不是它文法上的主語“你的頭髮”做出來的動作, 而為“你的頭髮”被人家看了人家以為很好看。可這樣用的動詞不多, 只限於 look, read, taste, smell 等字。

(D) everybody 是“同性”, 可用以指男人, 又可用以指女人, 所以在第 13 句中以後的代名詞都用 his, 似乎在邏輯上說不大過去, 但是這是一種通例, 與 man 有時不作“男人”解, 而用以泛指“人”的道理一樣。

(E) mug 在歐美的人是用為飲器, 不是漱口杯, 但是在我們, 卻當漱口杯用。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 1-5):

1. How do you find the fish?
2. Oh, that's delicious.

3. Every dish is delicious.
4. Please don't stand on ceremony.
5. Just leave them on the plate, if they don't agree with you.
6. Come on, have some more.
7. Thanks, I will take some by and by.
8. No, thanks, I have had enough already.
9. I can't take any more, my stomach is not what it used to be.
10. Have no fear, and you will be all right.
11. A house usually has a red tile roof, plastered walls and wooden floor; but this house has brick walls which are not plastered, and its floor is paved with red square tiles.
12. The windows have wooden frames and glass panes.
13. A house usually has a yard in it or at the back, a porch or two in the front or on the side.
14. Some houses have attics and basements, but some don't have them.
15. Has this house any bathroom, and where is its kitchen?
16. Neither this house nor that one is good. The former has too many rooms, while the latter has too few.
17. He washed his hands before I wash my face, and I washed my face before he rinses his mouth.
18. I dip my towel into the water, rinse it, and wring it dry, next I rub soap on it, then I am ready to wash my face.
19. Empty the basin and pour some water into it, please.
20. Will you please wring me that towel? I want to wipe my hands.

21. He fills the mug with water, takes his toothbrush, forces some tooth-paste on it, then brushes his teeth with it briskly, next he rinses his mouth with water, and finally gurgles his throat to clean the inner part of his mouth.
22. Mr. A, standing before a mirror and with a comb in his hand, combs his hairs right and left.
23. He doesn't rub pomade on his hairs.

* * *

LESSON 6

"To Bed, to Bed," says Sleepy Head, etc.

(I)

- | | |
|---|-----|
| "To bed, to bed," says Sleepy Head; | (1) |
| "tə ɪ.ð.l/ tə bɛd/," sɛz slɛ'pɪ hɛd/; | |
| "Wait yet a while," says Slow; | (2) |
| "wɑt jət ə whɪ'l," sɛz slə/; | |
| "Let's cook something," says Greedy King, | (3) |
| "lɛts kʊk/ sʌnθɪŋ," ɛz grɛ'di kɪŋ/, | |
| "We'll sup before we go." | (4) |
| "wɛl sʌ/ bɪfɔ/ wɛ gə/." | |

(II)

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Marv, put the kettle on, | (5) |
| mɑ:v, pʊt ðə kɛt'l ɔn, | |
| Marv, put the kettle on, | (6) |
| Marv, put the kettle on, | (7) |
| We'll all have tea. | (8) |
| wɛl/ ɔ:l hæv/ i:tə. | |

- Johnny, take it off again, (9)
 jŏn'ɪ, tɑ:k_ɪt ɔf ə_æ_n,
 Johnny, take it off again, (10)
 Jɒhnɪv, take it off again, (11)
 The guests have all gone away. (12)
 ðhe' gə:ts hæv' əwl_ɡɒn' əwā.

(III)

- Cross patch, (13)
 krɒs' pætʃ,
 Draw the latch, (14)
 drɔw' ðhe lætʃ,
 Sit by the fire and spin, (15)
 sɪt' bi ðhe fɪə ənd spɪn,
 Take a cup, (16)
 tɑ:k ə kʌp,
 Drink it up, (17)
 drɪŋk' ɪt ʌp,
 Then call your neighbours in. (18)
 ðen' kɔ:l jʊə nəɪbə:z ɪn.

譯 文

(一)

- 昏昏睡說道：“睡罷，睡罷”； (1)
 事事慢說道：“再等一會兒呀”； (2)
 貪食王說道：“讓咱們煮點東西， (3)
 “咱們去(睡)之前，總該先喫晚飯啦。” (4)

(二)

- 瑪麗，放上茶碗子， (5)
 瑪麗，放上茶碗子， (6)
 瑪麗，放上茶餅子， (7)
 我們大家都要喝茶。 (8)
- 壬吶，再把它掙開罷， (9)
 壬吶，再把它掙開罷， (10)
 壬吶，再把它掙開罷， (11)
 客人們都已去了啦。 (12)

(三)

- 乖戾的惡漢， (13)
 抽上門門， (14)
 坐到火旁去紡紗， (15)
- 拿起一杯(酒或茶)， (16)
 喝完了它， (17)
 然後(再)叫你的鄰人進來呀。 (18)

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>sleepy</i> [s'ɒ'pi]: 好睡, 瞌睡。——
<i>Sleepy Head</i> : (好睡的腦袋), 好睡的人。s 和 h 大寫是因為把這名字當人名用) | <i>will</i> 之簡) |
| 2. <i>slow</i> [slə]: 慢, 遲。 | <i>s: p</i> [s'ʌp]: 喫晚飯。 |
| 3. <i>greedy</i> [grɛ'di]: 貪食的。 | 5. <i>Mary</i> [mā'i]: 瑪麗(女人名)。 |
| 4. <i>we'll</i> [wɛ'l]: 咱倆要。(此你 we | <i>kettle</i> [kɛ'tl]: 鍋, 茶鍋。 |
| | 9. <i>Johany</i> [jə'n'i]: 壬吶(男子名, 即 John 的小名)。 |
| | 12. <i>guest</i> [gɛst]: 客人。 |
| | <i>away</i> [əwə]: 離開。(狀詞) |

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 13. cross [krɔs]: 乖戾的。 | fire [fi:] : 火; 火爐。 |
| patch [pætʃ]: 惡漢。(罕用) | spin [spɪn]: 紡織。 |
| 14. draw [draʊ]: 拉。 | 17. up [ʊp]: 完, 盡。 |
| latch [lætʃ]: 門閂。 | 18. neighbour [nə'be]: 鄰人。 |
| 15. by [bi]: 近。 | |

講 義

(A) 本講選三篇童歌, 因為它們是歌, 所以把各字的音都注出, 使讀者對於歌的音節不致讀錯; 請讀者注意各重讀的音, 因為英文詩歌的音節全在於重讀音與輕讀音, 如我們的平仄一樣。

(B) Sleep, Head, Slow, Greedy King 諸字都當做人名用, 所以各字的第一個字母都大寫。

(C) Mary, put the kettle on 當然是說 on the stove (在爐上); 不過在這裏沒有說出來就是了。又 Take it off again 的 again, 精細地講, 當然不應該有, 但是在童歌裏是不能這樣講究詞句的。

練 習

- 【背誦】 Where are our guests?
 They have all gone away.
 Have you supped yet?
 Put the kettle on, we'll have tea.

LESSON 7

"April Showers," etc.

(I)

- | | |
|---------------------|-----|
| April showers, | (1) |
| ā'prəl show'ez, | |
| Brings May flowers. | (2) |
| brɪŋgz' mā flow'ez. | |

(II)

The rain is raining all around, (3)

dhe rá'n íz rá'nǎng aw'i erow'nd,

It falls on field and tree, (4)

ít faw'lz ɔn fé'ld ɔn tré',

It rains on the umbrellas here, (5)

ít rá'nz ɔn dhe' úmbrəl'əz hēr',

And on the ships at sea. (6)

ɔn ɔn' dhe shíps' át sé'.

—Robert Louis Stevenson.

—rōb'ət lō'íz stō'vnsn.

(III)

The north wind does blow, (7)

dhe nōr'th wínd düz' blō,

And we shall have snow, (8)

ɔn wē'shəl hāv' snō,

And what will poor Robin do then, poor thing? (9)

ɔn' wʰɔt wíl' pūr rōb'ín dōō' dhēn, pūr' thǐng?

He'll sit in the barn, (10)

hēl sít' ín dhe' bārn,

And keep himself warm, (11)

ɔn kē'p lǐmsēlf' wɔrm,

And hide his head under his wing, poor thing! (12)

ɔn' híd híz' hēd ún'də híz' wíng, pūr' thǐng!

譯 文

(一)

四月的雨, (1)

帶來五月的花。 (2)

(二)

- 雨正在四週地下, (3)
 下在地上,也在樹上, (4)
 下在這裏的雨傘上, (5)
 也下在海中的船上。 (6)

(Robert Louis Stevenson 著)

(三)

- 北風吹着, (7)
 我們將有雪, (8)
 可憐的知更鳥,將要做什麼,可憐蟲? (9)
 他將坐在穀倉中, (10)
 使他自己溫暖, (11)
 藏他的頭在他的翼下,可憐蟲! (12)

生 字

1. shower [ʃəʊə]: 驟雨,陣雨(夏天狂雨頃刻則晴者)。
2. flower [flaʊə]: 花。
4. fall [fɔ:l]: 下跌。(過去時制 fell [fɛl], 過去分詞 fallen [faw'lən])
 field [fi:ld]: 田; 空地。
 tree [tri:]: 樹。
5. umbrella [ʊmbrə'lə]: 雨傘。
6. ship [ʃɪp]: 船。
 sea [si:]: 海。—at sea: 在海中。
8. snow [snəʊ]: 雪; 雨霰。
9. poor [pʊə]: 可憐的。——*poor thing*: 可憐蟲(可憐的東西)。
 robin [rəb'ɪn]: 知更鳥。
10. he'll [hɛ:l]: 他將。(he will 之簡)
 barn [bɑ:n]: 穀倉。
11. keep [ki:p]: 保持。(過去時制及過去分詞 kept [kɛpt, t, p 常讀不明])
12. hide [haɪd]: 藏,匿。(過去時制 hid [hɪd], 過去分詞 hidden [hɪd'n])

講 義

(A) 本課 I 與 III 是普通的童歌, II 是 Robert Louis Stevenson 著的童歌。Stevenson 是英國十九世紀的文家之一。他是以小說及散文知名的, 雖則他的詩自有飄然的風格。

(B) 注意 *The rain is raining* 是很好的英文, 雖則在我們中文裏“雨在下雨”是不通的。

(C) *The north wind does blow, And we shall have snow.* 第一個子句的述語用現在時制, 第二個的用將來時制, 似乎不通; 但其實不然。第一個子句實為“附句”, 我們譯過, 附句中的將來時制可用現在時制代替。這兩個子句的關係實等於“*When the north wind blows, we shall have snow.*”這種的句法雖不甚通行, 但亦非罕見。

(D) 第 11, 12 兩行的云謂詞乃與第 10 行 *he'll* 中之 *will* 合成複式的“云謂詞短語”, 即:

He will	{	sit and keep and hide
---------	---	---

練 習

- 【背誦】 Bring me an umbrella please.
I have brought you some flowers.
This is the first snow we have this year.
Let's take a walk in the field.

LESSON 8

Will This Do?

CLERK [klɑ:k]: (1) Will this do?

CUSTOMER [kūs'təmə]: (2) No, that is too coarse [kɔ:s] for my purpose [pɜ:'pəs].

CLERK: (3) Then here is something finer. (4) How do you like this?

CUSTOMER: (5) Yes, this is much better, but it is too dear, much too dear.

CLERK: (6) There you are. (7) Cheap things are not good, and good things are not cheap.

CUSTOMER: (8) But not always, sometimes we can get quality goods at very reasonable [rē'znəbl] price.

CLERK: (9) Yes, *sometimes*, but not always.

CLERK: (10) Shall I show you some more of them? (11) We have a very nice stock [stök] of them.

CUSTOMER: (12) I believe I have bought enough.

CLERK: (13) I want just to show them to you. (14) There is no harm [hārm] in looking at them. (15) You needn't buy any, unless [ʌnləs'] you really need them or like them.

CUSTOMER: (16) You are a very good salesman [sā'lz-men], it would be hard [hārd] to say you "no".

CLERK: (17) Perhaps [pəhəp's, prəps] you would be interested [in'terɪstɪd, in'trɪstɪd] in some of our bargains [bā'gɪnz] too. (18) There are all kinds of goods [gūdz].

CUSTOMER: (19) Where are they? (20) I'll have a look at them.

CLERK: (21) Just go straight [strāt] to the other end of the building [bɪl'dɪŋ], and you will find them.

CUSTOMER: (22) Thanks.

CLERK: (23) Don't mention [mən'shen] it.

譯 文

店員：(1) 這個行麼？

顧客：(2) 不，那太粗，不合我的用途。

店員：(3) 那麼，這裏有些較細的。(4) 這個你以為如何？

顧客：(5) 是，這個較好，但是太貴了，真太貴了。

店員：(6) 正是這樣。(7) 便宜無好貨，好貨不便宜。

顧客：(8) 但是並非老是這樣，有時候我們可以很公道的價錢買到上等貨。

店員：(9) 是呀，有的時候，並非老是這樣。

店員：(10) 我再多拏點給你看好嗎？(11) 我們有很完美的好貨(關於它們)。

顧客：(12) 我相信我已買夠了。

店員：(13) 我只要拏它們給你看。(14) 看看它們並沒有害處。(15) 你一點也無須買 除非你實在需要它們或是喜歡它們。

顧客：(16) 你是個很好的賣貨員，很難對你說個“不”字。

店員：(17) 對於我們廉價的貨品或許你也會感到趣味。(18) 各種的貨物都有。

顧客：(19) 它們在哪裏？(20) 我要看一看它們。

店員：(21) 只消一直過去到屋子那邊的盡頭，你可以找到它們。

顧客：(22) 謝謝。

店員：(23) 不必提起它。

生 字

1. clerk [ˈklɜːk, 美國人讀 klɜːk]: 店員, 賣貨員。 「人。」
2. customer [ˈkʌstəmə]: 顧客, 客

- coarse [kɔːs, 或 kɔːrs]: 粗。
purpose [ˈɜːpəs]: 目的, 效用, 用途。

8. **reasonable** [rē'zənbəl]: 合理; 公道(指價錢而言)。
11. **stock** [st'ɔ:k]: 存貨。
14. **harm** [hɑ:m]: 害處。
15. **unless** [ʌnləs/]: 除非。
16. **salesman** [sə'lɪzmən]: 賣貨員。(複數 salesmen [sə'lɪzmən, 或 -mən])
- hard** [hɑ:d]: 難。
17. **perhaps** [pə'hæp's, 或 prə'pɜ:s, 後者為較自由時說的]: 也許。
- interest** [ɪn'terɪst 說得快時變為 ɪn'trɪst; 在英國似乎還是說 ɪn'trɪst 的人多]: 使(人)有趣味。(過去時詞與過去分詞 interested [ɪn't(ə)rɪstɪd])
- bargain** [bɑ:ɡ'ain]: 還價(云謂詞); (轉為)以廉價買得或賣出的貨物(名詞)。
18. **good** [gʊd]: 貨物。
21. **straight** [stræt]: 直。
- building** [bɪl'dɪŋ]: 房子。
23. **mention** [mən'shən]: 說到, 提及。

講 義

(A) too ~ for ~ = too ~ to ~, 即其中的 too 等於“過分以致不合”或“太~不合~”, 如第二句 too coarse for my purposes = “太粗了不合我的用途”。

(B) 如以前說過, 述語有的時候雖放在主語之前而該句不是詢問句; 這種句子是把句中某短語或單字, 平常應在全句之末或中間者, 放到前邊來引起人家注意, 要有這種的構造, 同時須把主語與述語的位置對換, 如第 3 句。

(C) quality 本意只是“質”, 但 quality goods 乃商場中的慣用語, 等於“頂上貨”。

(D) you would be interested in our bargains = “你會使有趣味於我們的便宜貨”, 就是說“你會被那些便宜貨的品質與價錢引起而有趣味於它們”。換言之, 你是被吸引而有趣於那些東西的, 可以應用被動態。

練 習

【背誦】

Will this do?

This is too dear. Much too dear.

Cheap things are not good, good things are not cheap.

Perhaps you would be interested in our bargains.

Don't mention it.

LESSON 9

Colours

CLERK: (1) What can I do for you, madam?

CUSTOMER: (2) Show me some threads [thrēdz], please.

CLERK: (3) Silk [sīlk] or cotton?

CUSTOMER: (4) Cotton yarn [yārn], please.

CLERK: (5) And what colour [kūl'ə]?

CUSTOMER: (6) Show me some pink [pīnk], some green [grēn], and some purple [pū'pl].

CLERK: (7) Here they are: this is pink, this is green, and this is purple.

CUSTOMER: (8) The green is all right; but the pink is too light [līt], give me something darker [dār'kə] please.

CLERK: (9) Here it is, pink of the darker shade [shād], and how about the purple?

CUSTOMER: (10) That's too dark. (11) Suppose [sə-pō'z] you show me some lavender [lāv'ində].

CLERK: (12) What about a shade-guide [shā'd-gī'd]?

CUSTOMER: (13) That's much better. (14) Give me lavender, shade 7, and pink, shade 5.

CLERK: (15) Here is [hēr'iz] pink, shade 5. (16) Very sorry, lavender, shade 7 is out of stock. (17) What about silk thread?

CUSTOMER: (18) All right, if you have them of this shade.

CLERK: (19) Certainly we have. (20) Here they are, madam.

CUSTOMER: (21) How much for each skein [skān]?

CLERK: (22) Twenty-five cents for one skein of the silk thread, and thirty cents for each ball [bawl] of cotton one.

CUSTOMER: (23) All right, give me three balls of the pink, two of the green, and two skeins of the lavender.

譯 文

店員：(1) 你要買什麼，太太？

顧客：(2) 請拏些線給我看。

店員：(3) 絲的還是紗的？

顧客：(4) 請拏紗線。

店員：(5) 什麼顏色？

顧客：(6) 拏些淡紅的，些青的，與些紫色的給我看。

店員：(7) 都在這裏：這是淡紅的，這是青的，而這是紫色的。

顧客：(8) 這青的可以了；但是這淡紅的太淺淡了，請給我些顏色較深的。

店員：(9) 在這裏，那色度較深的淡紅，而那紫色的呢？

顧客：(10) 那太深了。(11) 假使你拏些淡紫色的給我看如何？

店員：(12) 用色度指南如何？

顧客：(13) 這樣好得多了。(14) 給我淺紫色，色度第七，與淡紅色，色度第五。

店員：(15) 淡紅，色度第五在這裏。(16) 很對不起，紫色色度七已經賣貨了。(17) 絲線如何？

顧客：(18) 可以，如果你們有這色度的。

- 店員：(19) 當然地我們有。(20) 在這裏，夫人。
 顧客：(21) 每縀多少錢？
 店員：(22) 絲線每縀二角半，紗的每球三角。
 顧客：(23) 可以，給我三球淡紅的，兩球青的，與兩縀那淺紫的。

生 字

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 2. thread [θrɛd]: 線。 | [dɑː'kɪst] |
| 3. silk [sɪk]: 絲。 | 9. shade [ʃɑːd]: 色度。 [何?] |
| 4. yarn [jɑːn]: 線，粗線。 | 11. suppose [ə'pəʊz]: 假使~(如 |
| 5. colour, 或 color [kʌl'ə]: 色，顏 | lavender [æ'vɪndə]: 淡紫。 |
| 6. pink [pɪŋk]: 淡紅。 [色。 | 12. guide [ɡaɪd]: 指南。(名詞)—— |
| green [ɡrɛn]: 青。 | sha'e-guide [sɑː'd-ɡaɪd]: 色度 |
| purple [pɜːpl]: 紫色。 | 指南。 |
| 8. light [laɪt]: 淺色。(較級 light- | 15. out of stock [aʊt əv stɒk]: (在 |
| er [laɪ'te]); 最級 lightest [laɪ't- | 存貨之外), 脫貨。 |
| ɪst] | 21. skein [skeɪn]: 縀。(名詞) |
| dark [dɑːk]: 深色。(較級 | 22. ball [bɔːl]: 球;(轉為)球形的 |
| dark; 最級 dɑːkɪst] | 東西。 |

講 義

(A) 注意：本課中簡句特多，尤其是詢問的句子。這種句子通常只是短語，“主語”與“述語”都省去。例如 Cotton or silk? 全句應作 Which kind of thread do you like, cotton or silk?; Cotton yarns, please 之前省去 I want 或 Show me; And what colour? 之後應有 do you like; What about ~? 一句中 about 之前應有 do you think; How about ~? = What do you think about ~? 日常談話，貴乎簡潔，不可拘泥文法；而且也決無這樣的傻子一定要說冗長的句子，使自己和聽者都感到不便，尤其是時間的不經濟。

(B) thread 與 yarn 義同，而 thread 似乎比 yarn 粗。

(C) - 本課中把許多的形容詞當做名詞用，例如 the green = the green thread 等。

練習

【背誦】 How about this?
 Certainly we have them.
 Here they are.

Give me {light} {dark} {pink.
 green.
 purple.
 lavender.

LESSON 10

More Colours

CLERK: (1) Don't you need some of other colours?

CUSTOMER: (2) Let me see. (3) Show me some brown and some blue [blōō], deep [dēp] brown and light bluē, please.

CLERK: (4) Yes, madam. (5) Herē is the light blue, and here, the deep brown.

CUSTOMER: (6) This blue one will do, give me three balls. (7) The brown is too dull [dūl], suppose you give me silk.

CLERK: (8) Will this do?

CUSTOMER: (9) Yes, this is much better, I will take this skein. (10) Let me see what else I need. (11) Ah yes, show me some bright [brīt] red and some soft [sōft] grey [grā], please.

CLERK: (12) We have to give you some other brand [brānd] for these two colours.

CUSTOMER: (13) All right, show them to me.

CLERK: (14) Shall I show you some of light yellow [yě'l'ā], some cream [krēm], and some orange [ŏr'inj] too?

CUSTOMER: (15) All right, show them to me. (16) Yes, they are very nice, but I don't need them just now. (17) I will take two skeins of the bright red and one of the soft grey. (18) How much is it altogether now?

CLERK: (19) Let me see. (20) Three dollars and seventy-five cents. (21) The last three skeins of cotton yarns are twenty cents each.

CUSTOMER: (22) Here are four dollars.

CLERK: (23) Here is your change [chānj], thanks.

譯 文

店員：(1) 你豈不需要些別種顏色嗎？

顧客：(2) 讓我想一想看。(3) 拏些棕色的與藍色的給我看看，深棕色與淺藍。

店員：(4) 好，夫人。(5) 淺藍的在這裏，深棕色的在這裏。

顧客：(6) 這藍的可以了，給我三球。(7) 這棕色的太暗淡，假使你給我絲的。

店員：(8) 這個可以嗎？

顧客：(9) 是呀，這個好得多了，我拏這一絛。(10) 讓我想想我還需要什麼東西。(11) 是吓，請給我些鮮紅色的與些淡灰色的。

店員：(12) 這兩種顏色我們須給你別種牌子的。

顧客：(13) 可以，拏給我看看。

店員：(14) 我也拏些淡黃色的，乳酪色的與橙黃色的給你
看，好嗎？

顧客：(15) 可以，拏給我着。(16) 是呀，這些都很好，但
是我現在不需要它們。(17) 我就拏兩縀淡紅的與一縀暗灰的。
(18) 現在總共多少錢了？

店員：(19) 讓我算一算看。(20) 三元七角半。(21) 最
後的三縀紗線每縀二角錢。

顧客：(22) 這裏四塊錢。

店員：(23) 謝謝，這裏是你的找頭。

生 字

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. blue [blu:] 藍色。 | 12. brand [brænd]: 牌子。 |
| deep [dēp]: 深。 | 14. yellow [yél'ə]: 黃色。 |
| 7. dull [dül]: 暗淡，不光亮。 | cream [krēm]: 乳酪；(轉爲) 乳酪色。 |
| 11. bright [brít]: 光亮。 | orange [ór'in]: 橙，柑；(轉爲) |
| soft [sǒft]: 暗淡。 | 23. change [chānj]: 零頭，找頭。 |
| grey, 或 gray [grā]: 灰色。 | |

講 義

(A) Let me see 的 see, 等於“看一看”的“看”字。

(B) dull 與 soft 同義，但是有這個區別：soft 只是“淡而無光”；dull 則含有“不美觀”之意。

(C) cream 與 orange: 原是別種東西的名而轉用爲顏色的名，所以若要避免誤會，須在後面附加 colour 一字；但在本課譯文中無誤會的可能，所以不用此字。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 6—10):

1. Let's sleep, I am sleepy.
2. He eats too much, he is greedy.

3. Why are you always slow?
4. Come, let's sup together tonight.
5. Here comes the tea; but all the guests have gone away.
6. I have something to tell you, close the door and draw the latch please.
7. Who is she?—She is our neighbour.
8. Come and sit down by the fire here, it's rather cold today, it has been snowing all day long.
9. We have beautiful flowers in the spring.
10. In summer, it's always cool after a shower.
11. It is raining, will you please lend me an umbrella?
12. Wait a minute, my brother has taken it with him to the barn.
13. Will this serve your purpose?
14. No, it is much too $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{coarse.} \\ \text{fine.} \end{array} \right.$
15. This will do, but it is too dear, much too dear.
16. There you are, cheap things are not good, and good things are not cheap.
17. Please go to the other end of the building. There are our bargains: quality goods, reasonable prices.
18. Shall I show you some more of these? We have a very nice stock of them, and you needn't buy any, unless you like them.
19. Perhaps you may like these?
20. You want to get threads? cotton or silk? coarse or fine?
21. Here is our shade-guide.
22. No, this is too $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{light.} \\ \text{dark.} \end{array} \right.$ Give me something $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{darker.} \\ \text{lighter.} \end{array} \right.$

23. No, this will not do, I want something soft, but not dull.
24. Give me three skeins of this and two balls of that. Here is the money.
25. Here is your change, thanks.
26. Here are a few of the colours we often see: red, pink, orange, green, blue, purple, lavender, grey, yellow, cream, black, brown, etc.

* * *

LESSON 11

What Grammar Is

(1) We shall study English grammar. [ɪŋ'ɡlɪʃ grɑm'ə] in English from now on. (2) First we must know what grammar is and what it can do for us, then we can study it in the right way.

(3) Grammar starts [stɑrts] with observation [ɒb'zəvə'shən] of the usage [u'zɪʃ] of words, that is, how words are put together to express [ɪksprɛs'] our thought [θɔt].

(4) From these observations, we obtain [əbtə'n] rules [rʊlz]. (5) These rules tell us what the usages [-jɪz] are.

(6) They also make us understand why certain forms [sɜ'tɛn fɔrmz] of words are used in certain ways. (7)

This they do with the help of definitions [dɛf'ɪnɪʃ'ənz].

(8) From rules and definitions we learn how to put words and their different forms to express what we want to express.

(9) However, only knowing these rules cannot make us use words and their different forms in the right way,

though it helps. (10) We must learn the right usage by observation and practice [präk'ti's].

(11) We must have a thought before we can use words to express it. (12) From thought to expression [iks-prësh'en], is the way we are going to study grammar.

譯 文

(1) 自今以後我們將以英文讀英文文法。(2) 首先我們必須知道文法是什麼，以及它能為我們做的什麼，然後我們才能夠以適當的方法去研究它。

(3) 文法由關於字的用法——就是如何把字拼合起來以表示我們的意思——的觀察入手。(4) 從這些觀察上我們得到規則。(5) 這些規則告訴我們那些用法是什麼。(6) 它們也使我們了解字的某種形式是以某種方法使用的緣故。(7) 它們以界說的幫助做這事。(8) 從規則及界說，我們學到怎樣用字以及字的不同形式，以表示我們所要表示的。

(9) 雖然，僅僅懂得這些規則還不能使我們正確地使用字與字的不同形式，雖則它(幫助)多少有點兒幫助。(10) 我們必須以觀察與練習學到正確的用法。

(11) 我們必須有一個思想，然後我們才能夠用字表示它。(12) 自思想至表現，就是我們將要讀文法的方法。

生 字

1. English [ĩng'glĩsh]: 英文; 英文的。
grammar [grám'ə]: 文法。
from now on: (自現在前進), 從今以後。

3. start [stárt]: 起手, 開始, 出發。
observation [əb'zəvə'shən, 注意兩個重音]: 觀察。(名詞)
usage [ū'zĩ]: 用法, 習慣。(複數 usages [ū'zĩjz])

- express [iksprɛs/ 或 ɛks-, k 只呼口氣]: 表示。
- thought [tɔ:t]: 思想。(注意: 此字與 though 只差字末的一個字母 t, 而兩字的發音與意義完全不同。)
4. obtain [əbteɪn]: 得到。
- rule [rʊl]: 規則。[個等等]。
6. certain [sɛɪʃən]: 某(某種, 某
- form [fɔ:m]: 形式。
7. definition [dɛfɪ'nɪʃən], 注意兩個重音: 界說, 定義。
10. practice [præk'tɪs, k 只呼口氣]: 練習。(名詞)
12. expression [ɪk'sprɛʃən 或 ɛk-, k 只呼口氣]: 所表示出來的方式, 表現。

講 義

(A) 第 3 句 observation of the usage of word = “關於字之用法的觀察”。注意各名詞的位置在英文中與在中文中適相反; 又注意 observation of ~ = “關於~的觀察”。

(B) practice 與 exercise 同是譯為“練習”, 但是有這個分別: exercise 當指練習的自身, 而 practice 指練習的行為。

練 習

【填字】

Do it — the right way.

What can I do — you?

He did it — the help of your brother.

I learn the right usage of words — observation and practice.

LESSON 12

Subject and Predicate

(1) When we think, we must think something about a person [pɛr'sn], a place [plæs], or a thing. (2) So when

we speak or write about what we think, we must state [stāt]: (A) the person, place, or thing we think about; and (B) what we think about that person, place or thing.

(3) For instance [fo: ~in'stens]:

(A)

Mr. Lee

Hangchow [hǎng'chow]

Hairs

(B)

has just gone away.

is a beautiful place.

grow on the scalp.

(4) In each of these sentences [sĕn'tənsiz], the first part is called the **subject** [sŭb'jikt], and the second part, the **predicate** [prĕd'ikət].

(5) The subject and the predicate are the two essential [isĕn'shəl] parts of a sentence. (6) When we omit [ōmīt'] the subject, nobody, except [iksĕpt'] ourselves [ow'esĕlvz'], knows which person, place, or thing we think about; and when we omit the predicate, nobody knows what we think about that person, place, or thing. (7) For instance, when I say *is a beautiful place*, nobody except myself knows which place I mean [mĕn]; and when I say *Mr. Lee*, again nobody except myself knows what I think of Mr. Lee. (8) In neither case [kās] is the thought complete [kĕmplĕ't], and those groups [grōōps] of words are not sentences; for a sentence is a group of words expressing a complete thought.

(9) However, sometimes one part of the sentence does not appear [əpĕr'] in the sentence, it is understood. (10) For instance, in this sentence—*Come here, please*—the subject is *you*, but it does not appear in the sentence, it is understood [ŭn'ḏes'tōōd].

譯 文

(1) 我們思想的時候，我們必定想到關於一個人，一個地方，或是一件東西的事。(2) 所以我們說或寫我們所想的事時，我們必須陳述：(A) 我們所想到的人，地方，或東西，與(B) 我們對於那人，那地方，或那東西所想到的是什麼。(3) 例如：

(A)	(B)
李先生	剛剛去了。
杭州	是一個美麗的地方。
頭髮	長在頭皮上。

(4) 在這些句子的每句中，第一部分叫做“主語”，而第二部分叫做“述語”。

(5) 主語與述語是一句句子的二個主要部分。(6) 我們減去主語時，除了我們自己無人知道我們想到哪一個人，地方，或東西；又，我們減去述語時，無人知道我們所想到那個人，那地方，或那東西的是什麼。(7) 例如：我說“是一美麗的地方”，除了我自己以外無人知道我指哪一個地方；而我說“李先生”時，又是除了我自己以外無人知道我所想到“李先生”的是什麼。(8) 在這兩個實例之中沒有一個思想是完全的，而那些字羣不是句子；因為一句句子是一羣的字在表現一個完全的思想。

(9) 但是，有的時候句子的一部分不出現在那句，它是不言而喻的。(10) 例如，在這一句中——請到這邊來——那主語是“你”，但是它不出現在句中，那是不言而喻的。

生 字

1. **person** [pɛr'sn]: 人。
place [plās]: 地方。
2. **state** [stāt]: 陳述。
3. **instance** [in'stens]: 例。——
for instance: 例如。
4. **sentence** [sɛn'tens]: 句子。
subject [süb'jikt, 或 -jɛkt; k
只呼口氣]: 主語。
predicate [prɛd'ikɪt, 作動詞
用時讀 prɛd'ikət]: 述語。
5. **essential** [ɛsɛn'she!]: 主要的。
6. **omit** [ɔmɪt/ 或 omɪt/, o 乃併
成 o 音之第一音, 說時牙牀及舌均
比說 aw 時較上升]: 減去。
- except** [ɪk'sɛp't, 或 ɛk-, k 與 p
都只呼口氣]: 除了~以外。
- ourselves** [ow'ɛsɛlvz'']: 我們
自己。
7. **mean** [mɛn]: 指。(過去時制
及過去分詞 meant [mɛnt])
8. **case** [kās]: 實例。
complete [kɛmplɛ't 或 kɔm-
plɛ't]: 完全。
group [grʊp]: 羣。
9. **appear** [əpɛr'/]: 出現。
understand [ʊn'dɛstænd'']: 不
言而喻, 省略。(過去時制及過去分
詞 understood [ʊn'dɛstɔd''])

講 義

(A) something about = “關於~的事”。

(B) for instance 實一介詞短語, 自身不能獨立, 在本課中的用法等於 Let us take, for instance ~ (讓我們取~做例) 而把 let us take 諸字省去。

練 習

- 【背誦】 What do you think about it?
Let us take this case for instance.
I will study harder from now on.

LESSON 13

Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs.

(1) Let us go back to the examples [ɪgzah'mplz] of our last lesson and note [nɔt] that the subjects of the

three sentences are names of a person, a place, and a thing.

(2) This class [kla:hs] of words is called the noun [nəʊn].

(3) Pick [pɪk] out the nouns in this paragraph. [pɑ:/'e:grɑ:f].

(4) Let us take another example.—He is here.—the word he may mean Mr. Chang, Mr. Lee, or any other person.

(5) In this sentence, we use the word he instead [ɪn'steɪd] of using [u:zɪŋ] the name of that person.

(6) He and other words used in place of nouns are called pronouns [prə'naʊnz].

(7) The subject of a sentence is usually a noun or a pronoun. (8) Pick out the pronouns in this paragraph.

(9) If we observe these examples, we shall notice [nəʊ'tɪs] that in their predicates the most important words say or assert [ə'sɜ:t] something. (10) They are not nouns, they are not pronouns, they are verbs [vɜ:bz].

(11) Verbs say or assert something. (12) Pick out the verbs in this paragraph.

(13) Note this important distinction [dɪ'stɪŋ'ʃən]: noun, pronoun, and verb are names of three classes of words; when these three classes of words are used in a sentence, they, as parts of a sentence, are called subjects and predicates.

(14) Subject and predicate are names of the two essential parts of a sentence.

釋 文

(1) 讓我們回到我們上課的例，(而)注意那三句的主語是一個人，一個地方，和一樣東西的名。(2) 這一類的字叫做“名詞”。(3) 揀出這段中的名詞。

(4) 讓我們取另一個例——他在這裏——這個“他”字可指“張先生”，或“李先生”，或任何別的人。(5) 在這句中，我們用“他”字來代替那個人的名。(6) “他”與其他的字被用以代替名詞者叫做“代名詞”。(7) 一句的主語通常是一個名詞或是一個代名詞。(8) 揀出此段中的代名詞。

(9) 如果我們觀察這些例，我們將要看出在它們的述語中那最重要的字是述說或斷言某事的。(10) 它們不是名詞，它們不是代名詞，它們是“云謂詞”。(11) 云謂詞述說或是斷言某事。(12) 揀出這段中的云謂詞。

(13) 注意這個重要的區別：名詞，代名詞，與云謂詞是三類字的名；這三類的字用在句子內時，它們，當做一句中的都分，叫做主語與述語。(14) 主語與述語就是一句中兩個主要部分的名稱。

生 字

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|------|
| 1. example [ɪgzɑh'mpl, 或 ɔg-]: | 詞，常與 of 連用。 | [音。] |
| note [nōt]: 注意。 | [例。] | |
| 2. class [kla:hs]: 類。(複數加-es: | 6. <i>in place of</i> = instead of: 代 | |
| classes [kla:hs'iz]) | pronoun [p'ə'nəʊn]: 代名詞。 | |
| noun [naʊn]: 名詞。 | 9. notice [nō'tis]: 看出。 | |
| 3. pick [pik]: 揀。 | assert [ə'sɜ:t]: 斷言。 | |
| paragraph [ˌpɑ:r'ɛgrɑ:f]: 文 | 10. verb [vɜ:b]: 云謂詞。 | |
| 字之段節。 | 13. distinction [dɪs'tɪŋkʃən, 或 | |
| 5. instead [ɪnstəd]: 代替。(狀 | -tɪŋk , 注意: k=ng+k, k 在 | |
| | 此處只呼口氣): 分別。 | |

講 義

(A) *Instead* 是狀詞，不可當做云謂詞用。“我代替你做這事”= *I will do it for you*, 不可說 *I instead of you do it*; 這後一句乃說“這亦是我做的，非你做的。”

(B) *Note* 是“注意”; *notice* 是“看出”。

練 習

做第 3, 8, 與 12 句所指定的工作。

LESSON 14

Please do Come, etc.

1. Could [kōód] you come and dine [dīn] with us tomorrow night?
2. There is going to be a party at our home Wednesday night, and we should [shōód] be glad if you could come.
3. We are going to have tea tomorrow afternoon, please do come.
4. With pleasure [plēzh'ə].
5. Yes, I shall be glad to go.
6. Oh, yes, I shall go.
7. I should like to go very much, but I can't.
8. I am awfully [aw'flī] sorry I can't go this time.
9. Oh, no, that won't [wōnt] do, you said the same thing last time, too.
10. I shall be very busy by that time. Otherwise [ūdh'əwīz], I should be glad to go.
11. Busy? All the people are busy all the time. When there is a will [wīl], there is a way.
12. If you take it that way, then I must go.
13. All right, I'll [īl] try my best to go, but I do not promise [prōm'is] anything definite [dēf'īnī].
14. Yes, please do try your best to come.

15. If you'll [wɪl]-excuse me, I'll go next time.
16. Well, last time you said "I'll go next time," so this is the "next time"; and you must come.
17. Did I say that? Then I must go.
18. Please do come, I want you to meet some one there.
19. If that's the case, I'll go.
20. Can you not come? That's too bad.

譯 文

1. 明天晚上你能夠來與我們喫飯嗎?
2. 星期三晚上在我們家中將有一個交際會,(我們很喜歡如果你能夠來)我們很希望你能夠來。
3. 明天下午我們將開茶會,請你一定來。
4. 好。
5. 好,我(很喜歡去)一定去。
6. 唔,好,我去。
7. 我很愛去,但是我不能夠。
8. 對不起得很,這一回我不能去。
9. 吓,不,這不行,上一回你也是(說這同樣的話)這樣說的。
10. 那時我會很忙。否則我很喜歡去。
11. 忙嗎? 所有的人時時都忙。有意志便有方法。
12. (如果你這樣地看它,)你既這樣說,那麼我(必須去)只好去了。
13. 好,我總盡力想法子去,但是我不答應(任何事一定的)一定如何。
14. 好,務必盡力設法來啊。
15. 如果你願饒恕我,我想下一回去。

16. 好,上一回你說“我想下一回去”,所以這已經是“下一回”了,(所以)你必須來。
17. 我說過那話嗎? 那麼,我只好去了。
18. 請你來,我要你在那裏會晤某人。
19. 既如此,我就去。
20. 你不能來嗎? 那太可惜了。

生 字

1. could [kʊd]: (假使)能够。云謂諷的助語;在此處的用法,比 can 較為婉轉,有“假使能够”的意思。
dine [dīn]: 與正餐。
2. should [ʃʊd, 或輕讀作 shəd, 1 無音]: 云謂諷之助語,與其他的云謂諷合用以指假定之將來的事實。
3. tea [tē]: 由“茶”轉為“茶點”,再轉為“茶會”。
4. pleasure [plēzhə]: 快樂。
8. awfully [aw'fʌli]: 極大地。(不可讀 aw'fʊli, 讀此音時字義為“可怕”。) [寫]
9. won't [wɒnt]: will n t 之簡寫。
10. otherwise [ʊð'əwɪz]: 否則。
11. will [wɪl]: 意志。(名詞)
12. take [tæk]: 看作,當作。(過去時制 tək [tʊk]; 過去分詞 taken [tæ'kɪn])
13. I'll [ɪl]: I will 之簡寫。
promise [prɒm'ɪʃ]: 答應。
definite [dɛf'ɪnɪt]: 一定的。
15. you'll [ju:l]: you wɪl 之簡寫。

講 義

(A) 英國人把他們所說或所寫的話分成事實,命令,與假設,而用不同的語氣去說它們。說事實時使用“直說語氣”;發命令時,用“命令語氣”,作一種假設時,如果把這假設當做事實,仍從用直說語氣,如果把這假設認為假設(非事實),使用“假設語氣”。第 1 句的 could you come 與第 2 句的 we should be glad if you could come 與第 7 句的 I should like to go 內中之 could come 或 should be, 與 should like 都是假設的語氣。“假使”你能够來我們將很喜歡,“假使”我能够去我會愛去。

(B) With pleasure 原意為“我以快樂接受你的邀請”,而把其他的字省去,只說“以快樂”。

(C) 第 11 的末句是英文的諺語，請客者有點兒不大高興客人的一味推辭始引用這句，等於說“如果你要，總能夠來”。所以客人在下一句答他“如果你把我的推辭這樣看，我只好去了”。

(D) best 原來是形容詞或狀詞，但如在 13, 14 兩句中則當做名詞用：try my best=試盡我所能的(做做看)。

練 習

【背誦】 With pleasure.

I shall be glad to go.

I am awfully sorry I can't go this time.

I'll try my best to go, but I don't promise anything definite.

If you'll excuse me, I'll go next time.

Please do try your best to come.

LESSON 15

"A Riddle, a Riddle," etc.

1. Do you know what a riddle [rɪd'l] is?
2. Yes, a riddle describes [dɪskrɪ'bz] something and makes you guess [gɛs] what it is.
3. Quite right. Here are a few of them, see if you can get them right.

4.

RIDDLE I

A riddle, a riddle, as I suppose,

A hundred eyes and never [nɛvə'ə] a nose.

5. What is this?
6. I can't get it. What is it?
7. Why, a sieve [sɪv], the eyes are the holes [hɔlz]. Here is another one.

8. RIDDLE II

*Long legs, crooked [k'òók'id] thighs,
Little head and no eyes.*

9. What is it?
10. Why, a pair of tongs [t'óngz], its handles [hǎn'dlǝ] are the long legs with crooked thighs.
11. You have guessed [g'èst] it right. See if you can get this one.

12. RIDDLE III

*Like My Brown [mā brown],
In a white gown,
With a red nose,
The longer she stands,
The shorter [sh'òr'tò] she grows.*

13. What is it?
14. I know it. It's a candle [kǎn'dl]. The red nose is the flame [flām].

譯 文

1. 你知道謎語是什麼嗎?
2. 知道, 謎語描寫一件東西而使你猜它是什麼。
3. 十分對。這裏有幾個, 看看你是否能夠猜得對。
4. 謎 語
一個謎語, 一個謎語, 如我忖度的,
眼睛成百, 鼻子一個也沒有。
5. 那是什麼?
6. 我猜不出。那是什麼?
7. 當然的, 那是一“節”, 眼睛就是小洞。這裏還有一個。

8. 謎語二

長足曲大腿，
頭小沒眼睛。

9. 那是什麼？
10. 當然的，一副鐵鉗，它的柄(是)就彷彿長足曲大腿。
11. 你猜得對。看看是否你猜得出這一個。

12. 謎語三

小 May Brown,
穿了件白長衣，
鼻子紅紅的，
立得越久，
個兒越小了。

13. 那是什麼？
14. 我曉得。一枝蠟燭。紅鼻頭是火舌。

生字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. riddle [rɪd'ɪl]: 謎語。 | 8. crooked [krʊk'ɪd]: 曲的。 |
| 2. describe [dɪskrɪ'b]: 描寫, 形容。
make [māk]: 使。
guess [gɛs]: 猜。 | 10. tongs [tɒŋz]: 大鉗。
handle [hændl]: 柄。 [人名] |
| 3. if [ɪf]: 是否。 [得"]。 | 12. May Brown [mā'brʌwn]: 女 |
| get [gɛt]: 由“取得”轉為“猜” | short [shɔrt]: 短, 矮。(較級 shorter [shɔrtə], 最級 shortest [shɔrtɪst]) |
| 4. never [nɛvə]: 永不。 | 14. candle [kændl]: 蠟燭。
flame [flām]: 火焰。 |
| 7. sieve [sɪv, 切勿讀 sɛv]: 篩。
hole [hɔl]: 孔, 洞。 | |

講義

(A) 這些謎語都是用詩的體格寫的。注意，謎語一與二全無“謎語”。如果要把它補足成爲完整的句子，須在前面加 It has 兩字。

(B) tong: 單數複數形式皆同, 複數可用 pairs of 去代表它。

(C) in a white gown 直譯為“在一件白長衣中”, 意思就是“穿着一件白長衣”。這種的說法很普遍。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 11—15):

1. Grammar helps us to understand why words or certain forms of words are used in certain ways, it helps us to know how to use words, but it cannot make us use them in the right way.
2. We must learn the right usage by observation and practice.
3. The two essential parts of a sentence are the **subject** and the **predicate**.
4. The **subject** is the person, place, or thing about which we speak or write, while the **predicate** says what we think about the **subject**.
5. When we omit the **subject** or the **predicate**, the thought is not complete, and the group of words is not a sentence, for a sentence expresses a complete thought.
6. However, one part of a sentence is sometimes understood.
7. In English grammar we classify words according to their uses.
8. We have learned so far something about the three classes of words, they are **nouns**, **pronouns**, and **verbs**.
9. A **noun** is the name of a person, place, or thing; a **pronoun** is a word used in place of a **noun**; a **verb** says or asserts something.
10. Can you come to dine with us tonight?

11. Awfully sorry, I can't. I have to attend another party tonight.
12. I should like to go, but I can't. I have another engagement; otherwise, I should like to go.
13. I'll try my best to go, but I don't promise anything definite.
14. Please do come, won't you?
15. Yes, with pleasure.
16. Can you not come? That's too bad.
17. A riddle describes something and makes you guess what it is.
18. Do you remember the riddle of a sieve?
19. Has a pair of tongs long legs with crooked thighs?
— Yes, it has handles which are long and crooked.
20. What is the red nose of May Brown? — The flame of a candle.
21. Is this true, the longer a candle stands, the shorter it grows? — Yes, that's true.

* * *

LESSON 16

Adjectives

(1) We have learned that we can express a complete thought with only two or three classes of words, or parts of speech [spēch] as they are called in grammar. (2) But these are not enough to express our thought completely [kəmplitli]. (3) Sometimes we want to point [point] out a particular thing, or to describe it; for this purpose, we use another class of words, which is called the adjec-

tive [äj'iktiv]. (4) Sometimes we want to tell *how*, *why*, *when*, or *where* a thing is done, or a condition [kändiš'hən] is; for this purpose, we use still another class of words, the *adverb* [äd'verb].

(5) An *adjective* modifies [möd'ifiz] a *noun*, that is, it points out a *noun*, or describes it; for example, *a*, *an*, *the*, *this*, *that*, etc. point out *nouns*, while *good*, *bad*, *nice*, *fire*, *cheap*, *dear*, etc. describe them. (6) Let us see how *adjectives* are used. (7) For instance, in this example—*This kind father loves that good son* [sün]—there are four *adjectives*, *this* and *kind* modify [möd'ifi] the *noun father*, and *that* and *good* modify the *noun son*; *this* and *that* point out the *father* and the *son*, while *kind* and *good* modify them. (8) Note that all the *adjectives* in this sentence are placed [pläst] before the *nouns* which they modify; this is the usual position [pözish'hən] of an *adjective*. (9) Let us take another example—If you have something *important*, do it right away. (10) In this sentence, *important* is an *adjective* which modifies *something*, but it is placed after the *noun* it modifies. (11) There is yet another way of using an *adjective*, that is, to put it in the *predicate*, although [awldhō'] it modifies the *subject*, for example—*This is dear*. (12) Here *dear* is an *adjective* which modifies the *subject this*, and yet [ən yet] it is placed in the *predicate*, so it is called a *predicate adjective*.

譯 文

(1) 我們已經學知，我們可表現完全的思想只用兩三類的字，或是（詞，如它們被叫在文法之中）照文法上的名稱叫做詞。
 (2) 但是這些還不夠完全地表現我們的思想，(3) 有的時候我

們要指出某一件事物，或是形容它；爲這個用法，我們有另一類的字，這一類的字叫做“形容詞”。(4) 有的時候我們要說一件事之被做成或者一種情形是怎樣，是爲什麼，是在什麼時候，或是在什麼地方；爲這種的效用，我們還要用另一類的字，[即] 狀詞。

(5) 一個形容詞限制一個名詞，就是它指出一個名詞或是形容詞；例如，一，一，該，這個，那個，等等都指名詞，而好，壞，可愛，晴朗，便宜，貴，等等則形容它們。(6) 讓我們看看形容詞是怎樣用的。(7) 例如在這個例中——這個仁慈的父親愛惜那個好的兒子——有四個形容詞，“這個”與“仁慈的”限制那名詞“父親”，又“那個”與“好的”限制那名詞“兒子”的意義；“這個”與“那個”指出“父親”與“兒子”，而“仁慈的”與“好的”變動它們的意義。(8) 注意在這句中所有的形容詞都放在它們所限制的名詞之前；這是一個形容詞平常的位置。(9) 讓我們再取一個例——如果你有重要的事，[請你]立刻做它。(10) 在這句中，“重要的”是一個形容詞，限制“事”的意義，但是它被放在它所限制的名詞之後。(11) 還有另一種用形容詞的方法，就是放在“述語”中，雖則它限制着“主語”，例如——這很貴。(12) 在這裏“貴”是一個形容詞，限制着那主語“這”，然而它被放在述語之中，所以這個叫做“述語形容詞”。

生 字

1. *speech* [s, ɛch]: 話, 言。— *part of speech* [pɑrt_əv spɛch]: (語言的部分); 詞類。(複數 *parts of speech* [pɑt_s_əv spɛch])
2. *completely* [kɔmp.ə'ti:l]: 完全也。
3. *point* [, o:nt]: 指, 指出。
adjective [ə'dʒektɪv]: 形容詞。
4. *condition* [kəndɪʃ'ən]: 情形, 情勢。
adverb [əd'verb]: 狀詞。
5. *modify* [n.ɔd'ɪfɪ]: 變動~的意義, 限制。(加入稱字末時變爲 *mod.ifies* [mɔd'ɪfɪz], 過去時制及過去分詞 *mod.ified* [mɔd'ɪfɪd])

7. son [sʌn]: 子, 兒子。
8. place [plɑː]: 置, 放。(過去時制及過去分詞 placed [p. læst])
position [pəzɪʃən]: 位置。
9. right away [rɪt əweɪ]: 立刻。
11. although [əwɪðhəʊ, 重音在後]: 雖然, 雖則。
12. and yet [ən jət]: 然而。
predicate adjective [prɛdɪkətɪv]: 述語形容詞。

講 義

(A) 注意第 3 句中 which 係指 class, 非指 word, 所以云謂詞用單數的 is, 不用 are。

(B) 第 3 句的 adjective 與第 4 句的 a verb 乃一切的 adjectives 與 adverbs 之“總稱”, 所以用單數, 不用複數。

(C) modify 這字與形容詞及狀詞之界說似乎須加詳細的說明。例如我們單說“父親”時, 這名詞的範圍很廣大, 而於其意義方面是空空洞洞的, 我們無從知道這父親是好的, 還是壞的; 如果我們加上一個形容詞, 說“仁慈的父親”, 我們立刻把這意義上空空洞洞的名詞變成一個極有一定的意義的; 同時限制了這名詞的範圍, 例如我們說“父親”時, 我們把世界上一切做父親的都包括在內, 但說“慈愛的父親”時, 顯然地所指的範圍縮小了; 又說“這個父親”時, 就把世界上所有的父親都排在一邊, 而單指一個父親; 所以我們也可以說形容詞是在限制名詞。

(D) 第 7 句的末字 them 乃指 father 與 son 這兩個字, 並非指他們兩個人, 所以譯成“它們”。

練 習

- 【背誦】 Please do it right away.
You said you like this, and yet you don't take it;
how is that?
Wait, I haven't finished my sentence yet.
What would you [wɔː jɔː] have in place of this?

LESSON 17

Adverbs

- (1) An adverb modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb, telling how, why, when, or where a thing is done,

or a condition exists. (2) Let us take a few examples. (3) In this sentence—That is *very* fine [fīn]—*fine* is an adjective, describing the subject *that*, while *very* is an adverb telling how *fine* that is, i.e. [dhāt īz], it modifies an adjective. (4) When we take this sentence—The girl speaks *very* fast [fahst]—we have two adverbs, *very* and *fast*; *fast* tells how the girl speaks, i.e., it modifies a verb; and *very* tells how *fast* the girl speaks, i.e., it modifies another adverb.

(5) Adverbs in the last two examples tell how the condition is and how the action is done. (6) In this sentence—I met him *here* *this morning*—*here* is an adverb, telling where I met him, and *this morning*, an adjective and a noun, used as an adverb, telling when I met him. (7) And this sentence—The boy runs *for his life* [lif]—has three words *for his life* to tell why the boy runs.

(8) When two or more words are used as one unit [ū'nīt], doing the work of a part of speech, this group of words is called a phrase [frāz]; *for his life*, in the last example, is a phrase used as an adverb, and is called an adverbial [ād̄yēr'biəl] phrase.

(9) As the function [fūnk'shən] of adjectives and adverbs is to modify other words, they are, as parts of a sentence, called modifiers [mōd'ifīz].

譯 文

(1) 一個狀詞限制一個名詞，一個形容詞，或是另一個狀詞，說明如何，為何，在何時，或在何地一件事被做，或是一種的情形存在。(2) 讓我們舉幾個例。(3) 在這個句子裏——那很細

——“細”是形容詞，形容主語“那”，而“很”是一個狀詞，說明那是“如何地”細，就是，它變動一個形容詞的意義。(4)我們採取這個句子——那位姑娘說話很快——時，我們有兩個狀詞，“很”與“快”；“快”說明那位姑娘“如何地”說話，就是說，它變動一個云謂詞的意義，而“很”說明那位姑娘說話“如何地”快，就是說，它變動了另一狀詞的意義。

(5)在最後兩個例之中，狀詞說明情形是如何，與那動作是如何地被做成。(6)在這句子——我今天早上在這裏遇着他——“在這裏”是一個狀詞，說明“在什麼地方”我遇見他，而“今天早上”是一個形容詞與一個名詞，[合起來]當做一個狀詞用，說明“在什麼時候”我遇見他。(7)而這個句子——那童子為他的生命而跑——有“為他的生命”這幾個字，說明那個童子“為什麼”跑的。

(8)兩個或是更多的字被當做一個單位用在做一個詞的工作時，這樣的字叫做一個短語；在最後的例子裏頭，“為他的生命”是一個短語當做一個狀詞用，是叫做一個“狀詞短語”。

(9)因為形容詞與狀詞的功用是變動其他字的意義，所以它們，當做一個句子之某部分時，叫做“變動者”。

生 字

3. fine [fɪn]: 細的。
i.e. 乃拉丁文 “id est” 之簡，
[讀 i. 6. 或 dhāt iz 均可，因為原
文的意義等於 that is]: 就是。
4. fast [fɑ:st]: 快。
7. life [laɪf]: 生命。(該數 lives
[lɪvz])——run for one's life:
(為生命而跑)，送命。
8. unit [uˈnɪt]: 單位。

- phrase [frɑ:z]: 短語。
adverbial [əd'verbɪəl], 注意
重音在第二音，非若 adverb 之在
第一音]: 狀詞的。
as [əz]: 既然~所以。
function [fʌŋkʃən 或 fʌŋk-
'ʃən]: 效用。
modifier [mɒdɪfaɪə]: 變動者。

講 義

(A) 現在或過去分詞當做形容詞用 而分詞自身的後邊帶着許多的字 (如狀語或是賓語等) 時, 這分詞當是放在名詞的後邊; 例如本課中各句的 telling ~, 雖則這現在分詞及其附帶語在實際上有狀語的效用, 如前面所說過的, 又如第 6 句的過去分詞 used as an adverb 變動着 adjective 與 noun 的意義。

(B) as 在第 9 句的用法是等於“既然~所以”, 所以不可在“主句”之前再加 so 字。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	agree	agreed	agreed
	appear	appeared	appeared
	assert	asserted [əsɛr'tɪd]	asserted
	build	built	built
	brush	brushed [brʌʃt]	brushed
	clean	cleaned	cleaned
	comb	combed [kɔmd]	combed
	cross	crossed [krɔst]	crossed

LESSON 18

I Got a Few Books

- A: (1) Where did you come from?
 B: (2) From a book-shop [bʊk'shɔp].
 A: (3) Which book-shop?
 B: (4) The A B C Book-shop.
 A: (5) Did you get any books?
 B: (6) Why, yes, I got quite a few books. (7) For, for what other purpose could I go there?

A: (8) Whcse [hōōz] books did you buy?

B: (9) I don't remember [rīmēm'bə] the names of the authors [aw'həz], anyway [ən'iwā], here are the books, you may find it out for yourself.

A: (10) Ah, I see, you don't read the well-known [wēl'nō'n] authors.

B: (11) Oh, I read them, but I am always on the lookout [lōōk'ow't] fo: the new ones. (12) I like to discover [dīskŭv'ə] unknown [ŭn'nō'n] but good writers.

A: (13) And whom [hōōm] have you discovered [dīskŭv'əd] this time?

B: (14) I can't say yet, as I have not yet made a study of them.

A: (15) Which among the less well-known writers [rī'təz] do you like best?

B: (16) It's hard to say.

A: (17) What book would you recommend [rĕk'ə-mĕnd"] me to read for short [shōrt] story?

B: (18) It depends [dīpĕndz'] on what kind of story you would like to read, and whether [whĕdh'ə] you would like to read the well-known authors or the less well-known ones.

譯 文

甲：(1) 你從哪裏來？

乙：(2) 從一家書店。

甲：(3) 哪一家書店？

乙：(4) A B C 書店。

甲：(5) 你買了些書嗎？

乙：(6) 唔，當然的，我稍稍買了幾本書。(7) 因為，爲什麼別的目的我會跑到那裏去？

甲：(8) 你買誰〔著〕的書？

乙：(9) 我記不起那些作家的名字了，無論如何，書在這裏，你可替你自己找出。

甲：(10) 吓，我曉得了，你不讀著名的作家。

乙：(11) 唔，我讀是讀的，不過我時常在留心尋覓新的〔作家〕。(12) 我愛發現不曾著名但是好的作家。

甲：(13) 而這回你發現了誰？

乙：(14) 我還不能說，因爲我還沒有做一個關於他們的研究。

甲：(15) 在那些較不知名的作家裏頭，你最愛哪一個？

乙：(16) 這很難講。

甲：(17) 哪一本書你可介紹我讀，關於短篇小說？

乙：(18) 那〔須〕視哪一種的故事你愛讀，以及你愛讀著名的作家還是較不知名的。

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. book-shop [bōōk'sbōp]: 書店。 | known [nōn]: 被人家知道。(know 的過去分詞)—— <i>well-known</i> [wēi'nō'n, 注意兩個平等的重讀音]: 著名的。 |
| 3. which [wɪtʃ]: 哪一個？ | 11. lookout [lōk'ow't]: (著向外), 留心。—— <i>on the lookout for</i> (在那留心爲), 留心察覺。 |
| 6. a few [ə fū]: 一些。—— <i>quite a few</i> [kwit'ə fū]: 頗不少。 | 12. discover [dɪ.kʌv'ə]: 發現。(過去時制及過去分詞加 -ed [-ɪd]) |
| 8. whose [hōz]: 誰的？ | unknown [ʌn'nō'n 注意兩個平等的重讀音]: 不知名的, 不著名的。 |
| 9. remember [rɪmēm'bə]: 記憶。 | |
| author [aw'tl ə]: 著作家。 | |
| anyway [ən'ɪwā]: (任何狀態), 無論如何。 | |
| 10. see [sē]: 曉得了。 | |
| well [wēl]: 好好的。 | |

13. whom [bɒm]: 誰? (受格)
 14. study [s'tʌdi]: 研究。(名詞)
 15. writer [rɪ'taɪ]: 寫者, 著作家。
 17. recommend [rɪk'eɪnd], 注
 意兩個重音]: 推薦, 介紹。
 short [shɔ:t]: 短。——short
 story [shɔ:t stɔ:ri]: 短篇小說。
 18. depend [dɪpɛnd]: 靠, 恃。——
 depend on: 憑~而決定。
 whether [wɛðə'hə]: 抑~抑,

講 義

(A) 第 6 的第二句兩個 for 字的意義, 似乎相同而又不相同: 第一個 for (讀 [fɔ:t]) 是“因為”, 第二個 for (讀 [ə]) 是“爲”; 前者爲連詞, 後者爲介詞。

(B) 連詞的 for 意義與 because 同, 但是用法不同: because 所介紹的子句不能獨立成爲一句, 而 for 所介紹的卻可以。

(C) write 與 author 均是著作家, 但 writer 可用以指寫字的人, author 卻不可。

練 習

【背誦】 It's hard to say.
 I can't say that.
 I'll do it anyway.
 Be on your lookout for anything good.

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
complete	completed [-tɪd]	completed
recommend	recommended [-dɪd]	recommended
divide	divided [-dɪd]	divided
draw	drew [drɔ:]	drawn [drɔ:n]
dine	dined	dined
describe	described [-bd]	described
discover	discovered [-vɛd]	discovered

LESSON 19

Would you do me a Favour?

1. Would you do me a favour [fā'vəʃ]?
2. Certainly, what is it?
3. Well, what is it?
4. Well, I should like to know what it is first.
5. I am sorry to trouble [trʌb'l] you. I am sorry to have troubled [trʌb'ld] you.
6. Not at all, that's no trouble for me.
7. You are welcome.
8. Excuse me. Pardon [pɑ'dɒn] me.
9. I beg your pardon.
10. That's all right.
11. Never mind [mɪnd]. Never mind that.
12. Thank you. Thank you very much.
13. Thanks. Many thanks.
14. Thanks ever so much. Thanks, awfully.
15. Don't mention it.
16. You are welcome.
17. Beg your pardon, I can't quite follow [fɔ'lɔ] what you said.
18. Would you speak { a little louder [ləʊ'dəʃ]?
more slowly [sləʊ'li]?
more distinctly [dɪ'stɪŋktli]?
19. All right, I'll speak { louder.
more slowly
more distinctly.
20. Am I speaking { loud
slowly } enough now?
distinctly }

21. Do I speak too { low [lō]?
fast?
22. Don't I speak distinctly enough?

譯 文

1. (你願做給我一件恩惠嗎?) 請你替我做一件事,好嗎?
2. 當然的,那是什麼事?
3. 唔,什麼事呀?
4. 唔,我要先知道那是什麼事。
5. 對不起 [這樣] 打擾你。對不起 [這樣地] 打擾了你。
6. 絕不,那於我並無煩擾。
7. 你 [這樣做] 是 [我所] 歡迎的。
8. 原諒我。饒恕我。
9. 我求你的饒恕。
10. 那是可以的。那不相干。
11. 勿以為意。勿以此為意。
12. 謝謝你。謝謝。
13. 多謝。非常多謝你。
14. 感激之至。大大的感謝。
15. 請勿提起。
16. 你 [這樣做] 是 [我所] 歡迎的。
17. 求你的饒恕,我不能十分(隨從)了解你所講的。
18. 請你稍為說得較大聲 較慢,較清晰),好不好?
19. 好,我將說得較大聲(較慢,較清晰)。
20. 我說得夠大聲(慢,清晰)嗎?
21. 我說得聲音太低(說得太快)嗎?
22. 我說得不夠清晰嗎?

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. favour, 或 favor [ə've]: 恩惠。(英人喜用前一種拼法, 美人喜用後一種拼法。) | 17. follow [fɒ'lə]: 隨從; (關於聽話) 領悟。 |
| 5. trouble [trʌb'l]: 打擾 (云謂詞); 煩擾(名詞)。 | 18. louder [ləʊ'də]: 較大聲; (loud) 的較級。 |
| 8. pardon [pɑː'dn]: 饒恕 (名詞, 云謂詞)。 | slowly [sləʊ'li]: 慢慢地。 |
| 11. mind [maɪnd]: 心 (名詞); 以爲意 (云謂詞)。 | distinctly [dɪ'stɪŋkt'li, 或 -ɪŋkt'-]: 清楚地。 |
| | 21. low [lə]: 低; 低聲。 |

講 義

(A) 第 1 句只是很平常的請求人家的話, 全無什麼恩惠不恩惠的意義在內。

(B) 第 5 句的第一與第二兩句意義略同, 但其中有個不同處, 就是: 人家替我們做完了事的時候兩句話中可任擇其一用之, 雖則嚴格地說用第二句較合; 但是在人家光答應我們而尚未替我們做事時, 須用第一句, 不可用第二句。

(C) 第 10 句在譯文中有兩個譯法, 第一個較近原文, 但在有的情形之中第二個用法較合。

練 習

- 【背誦】 Would you do me a favour?
 Certainly, what is it?
 Well, what is it?
 I am sorry to trouble you.
 That's all right.
 Many thanks.
 Don't mention it.
 You are welcome.
 Beg your pardon.

LESSON 20

“Shall I Show you How the Farmer”

I.

- Shall I show you how the farmer [fā'r'mə], (1)
 Shall I show you how the farmer, (2)
 Shall I show you how the farmer (3)
 Sows [sōz] his barley [bār'li] and wheat [whēt]? (4)
 Look, 'tis [tɪz] thus [dʰʊs], thus that the farmer, (5)
 Look, 'tis thus, thus that the farmer, (6)
 Look, 'tis thus, thus that the farmer (7)
 Sows his barley and wheat. (8)

II.

- Shall I show you how the farmer, (etc.) (9)
 Reaps [rēps] his barley and wheat? (10)
 Look, 'tis thus, thus that the farmer, (etc.) (11)
 Reaps his barley and wheat. (12)

III.

- Shall I show you how the farmer, (etc.) (13)
 Thrashes [thrāsh'ɪz] his barley and wheat? (14)
 Look, 'tis thus, thus that the farmer, (etc.) (15)
 Thrashes his barley and wheat. (16)

譯 文

- I. 我可做給你看怎樣地那農夫, (1)
 我可做給你看怎樣地那農夫, (2)
 我可做給你看怎樣地那農夫 (3)
 播他的大麥與小麥嗎? (4)

- 看哪,那是這樣地,這樣地那農夫; (5)
- 看哪,那是這樣地,這樣地那農夫, (6)
- 看哪,那是這樣地,這樣地那農夫 (7)
- 播種他的大麥與小麥。 (8)
- II 我可做給你看怎樣地那農夫,[等等] (9)
- 割他的大麥與小麥嗎? (10)
- 看哪;那是這樣地,這樣地那農夫,[等等] (11)
- 割他的大麥與小麥。 (12)
- III. 我可做給你看怎樣地那農夫,[等等] (13)
- 打他的大麥與小麥嗎? (14)
- 看哪,那是這樣地,這樣地那農夫,[等等] (15)
- 打他的大麥與小麥。 (16)

生 字

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. farmér [fár'mə]: 農夫。 | 5 'tis [tíz]: 那是。(it is 之簡) |
| 4. sow [sô]: 播,播種。 | thus [dhūs]: 這樣地。 |
| barley [bār'li]: 大麥。(複數同) | 10. reap [rēp]:刈,收割(五穀)。 |
| wheat [whēt]: 小麥。(複數同) | 14. thrash[thrāsh]: 打,打(五穀)。 |

講 義

(A) 這是一篇童歌,兒童一面唱,一面做出播麥,刈麥,打麥的樣子。

(B) 第 9 與 13 行行末的 [etc.] 乃指以下還各有兩行與其相同之字,如 2 與 3 兩行之相同於 1; 同樣地第 11 與 15 二行的 [etc.] 指其下亦各有兩行與其相同之字,如 6 與 7 兩行之相同於 5。

(C) 注意: 第 1 與 2 行, 5 與 6 行之行末有點號(,) 而第 3 與 7 行之末則無之,原來每節只是一句話,極短,無須用點號來隔緊它,但在第 1 行重複地述了三遍,所以於最初兩遍之後用點號來隔斷它們。

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 16-20):

1. The classes of words are called parts of speech in grammar.
2. We learned some time ago what nouns, pronouns, and verbs are, and we have learned now what adjectives and adverbs are.
3. An adjective either points out a noun or describes it.
4. An adjective is usually placed before, but sometimes after, the noun it modifies, and sometimes it is placed in the predicate of a sentence to modify the subject, in which case it is a predicate adjective.
5. An adverb modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb, telling *how*, *why*, *when*, and *where* a certain thing is done, or a certain condition exists.
6. When two or more words are used as one unit, doing the work of a part of speech, it is called a phrase.
7. Which class of authors do you like to read, the well-known ones or the unknown?
8. Whose {poems
short stories} do you like best?
9. What book would you recommend to me for reading?
10. Well, it depends on what kind of book you like best.
11. Would you do me a favour?
12. I am sorry to trouble you.
13. Don't mention it.
14. Never mind.
15. Beg your pardon, I can't quite follow what you said,

- would you kindly speak a little $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{louder?} \\ \text{more slowly?} \\ \text{more distinctly?} \end{array} \right.$
16. Do I speak too $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{low?} \\ \text{fast?} \end{array} \right.$
17. Don't I speak $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{loud} \\ \text{slowly} \\ \text{distinctly} \end{array} \right.$ enough? All right, I will
speak $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{louder} \\ \text{more slowly} \\ \text{more distinctly} \end{array} \right.$ then.
18. The farmer first sows, then reaps, and then thrashes his barley and wheat.

* * *

LESSON 21

This House is Nicely Furnished

(1) This is a nice house, nicely furnished [nī'slī fū'nīst]. (2) It looks very nice from outside. (3) Its windows have very nice lace curtains [lās kū'n'tnz]. (4) On the window sills [sīlz] there are several pots [sēv'rəl pōts] of flowers.

(5) Before the door there is a coir mat [koir māt]. (6) In the hall there is a stand [stānd] for hats, overcoats, umbrellas, etc.

(7) In the drawing-room, there are a settee [sētē'] and a sofa [sō'fə] besides the chairs. (8) There are four tea tables besides one table, on which stands a flower vase [vahz]. (9) There are several pots of flowers on the

flower stands: (10) On the wall hang [hǎng] many pictures [pík'chəz], some in frames and some in scrolls [skrōlz]. (11) There are scrolls of calligraphs [kə-līg'rəfs] too.

12. Are you looking for your hat? It's on the stand in the hall.
13. Take away these pots of flowers from the stands and put them on the window sills.
14. Draw the curtain to that side please.
15. Some one lies on the sofa, so I sit on the settee.
16. Come on, I'll show you some pictures and scrolls of calligraphs.
17. How do you like this flower vase?
18. The tea is on the tea table.

譯 文

(1) 這是一間精美的屋子，很精緻地裝置。(2) 從外邊看起來很好看。(3) 它的窗門有很美麗的花邊布的窗簾。(4) 在窗座上有幾盆花。

(5) 在門前有一張棕席。(6) 在門廊中有一個掛帽子，大衣，雨傘等的架子。

(7) 在客廳中除去椅子之外[還]有一張靠背長椅與一張沙發。(8) 有四隻茶几在一個上邊放着花瓶的桌子之外。(9) 有幾盆花在花架上。(10) 在壁上掛着圖畫，有的是入框的，有的是裱成幅的。(11) 也有幾幅字。

12. 你在尋你的帽子嗎？它在門廊中的架子上。
13. 把這幾盆花從架子上拿下來，把它們放在窗座上。

14. 請把窗簾拉到那邊去。
15. 有人躺在沙發上，所以我坐在靠背的長椅上。
16. 來呀，我要拿些圖畫與幾幅字給你看。
17. 這花瓶你以為如何？
18. 茶在茶几上。

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. nicely [ni'ʃli]: 精緻地。</p> <p>furnish [fɜ:nɪʃ]: 裝置, 氣設 (凡在室中安置桌, 椅, 窗簾, 字畫等工作都是)。 [帘者]。</p> <p>3. lace [læs]: 花邊, 花邊布 (用為窗簾)。</p> <p>curtain [kɜ:tɪn]: 簾, 帘, 帳, 幕。</p> <p>4. sill [sɪl]: 門限, 窗檯。</p> <p>several [səv'rel]: 幾個, 數個。</p> <p>po [pəʊ]: 壺; 盆。</p> <p>5. coir [koɪr]: 棕。 [棕帚]。</p> <p>mat [mæt]: 蓆。——coir mat:</p> <p>6. stand [stænd]: 座; 架。(名詞)</p> <p>7. settee [seti:]': 靠背長椅。</p> | <p>sofa [sə'fə]: 沙發。</p> <p>8. tea table ['i:tə'bl]: 茶几。</p> <p>vas [vaz, 美國人讀 vās 或 vāz]: 花瓶。</p> <p>9. flower stand: 置花盆的架。</p> <p>10. hang [hæŋ]: 吊, 掛。(過去時刷及過去分詞 hung [hʌŋ])</p> <p>picture ['pɪkʃə]: 圖畫。</p> <p>in frames: (在框中的), 鏡框的。</p> <p>scroll [skrɔ:l]: 卷軸。——in scrolls: (在卷軸中的), 捲成軸的。</p> <p>11. calligraph [kə'lɪgrəf]: 精美的字; 法帖。(複數加 -s [-s])</p> |
|--|---|

講 義

(A) **mat** 雖不一定是置在門前的“蓆”, 但頗有人用以指它。

(B) **calligraph** 乃指精美的字與法帖, 若以精美的字當美術時, 此種美術名曰 **calligraphy** [kə'lɪgrəfɪ]; 但許多人卻把 **calligraphy** 當作 **calligraph** 用。

練 習

【背誦】

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
fall	fell [fɛl]	fallen [faw'ln]
follow	followed [-əd]	followed

furnish	furnished [-shɪ]	furnished
gurgle	gurgled [-gɪd]	gurgled
guide	guided [-daɪ]	guided
get	got [gɒt]	got
hide	hid [hɪd]	hidden [hɪd'n]
hang	hung [hʌŋ]	hung
enjoy	enjoyed	enjoyed
empty	emptied	emptied
express	expressed [-st]	expressed
fear	feared [fiəd]	feared
fill	filled [-ld]	filled
force	forced [-st]	forced

LESSON 22

Dining-room, Bedroom Furnitures

(1) In the dining-room, there are, of course, the dining-table [dɪ'nɪŋ-tā'bl] and the chairs. (2) But besides these, there is a cupboard [küb'əd].

(3) In the bedroom, there are beds, chests of drawers, wardrobe, dresser [chɛsts əv drɔ:z, wɔ:'d-rɔb, drɛs'ə], etc.

(4) The windows have heavy curtains and blinds [blɪndz].

(5) On the floor there is a mat.

(6) We sleep in the bed, on the mattress [mät'rɪs] and sheet [shēt], and are covered with another sheet and blankets [blän'kɪts] or quilts [kwɪlts]. (7) We keep our clothes in the chest of drawers, or hang them in the wardrobe.

(8) In the bathroom, there are a bathtub [bah'th-tüb], a basin, and a flush toilet [flüş toi'lit].

9. Get the cups from the cupboard please.
10. She makes the bed and puts the bed-cover [béd'-kűv'ə] over the blankets.
11. Get me the black long gown which is hung in the wardrobe please.
12. I get my underwear and drawers from the chest of drawers and go into the bathroom to take a bath [bahth].
13. Women dress themselves before the dresser.
14. Be sure to flush the toilet after using.
15. If the blanket is not warm enough, then use the quilt.

譯 文

(1) 在那飯廳裏當然有餐桌與椅子。(2) 但這些以外[還]有一個碗碟櫃。

(3) 在寢室裏,有牀,衣櫃,衣櫥,梳妝臺,等等。(4) 窗門有厚的窗簾與遮陽簾。(5) 地板上有蓆。

(6) 我們睡在牀上,在褥子與牀布之上而(被)蓋以另一張牀布與毛毯或棉被。(7) 我們收藏我們的衣服在衣櫃裏或是掛它們在衣櫥裏。

(8) 在浴室裏有一個浴盆,一個臉盆架,與一個沖水馬桶。

9. 請自碗碟櫃裏取出杯子來。
10. 伊鋪牀,把蓋牀布蓋在毛毯上。
11. 請把那件掛在櫥中的黑色長衣拿給我。
12. 我自衣櫃中取出我的汗衫與短褲,走進那浴室去洗澡。

13. 婦人們在梳妝臺前梳妝。
14. 抽水馬桶用完之後，一定須抽水沖洗。
15. 如果毛毯不夠暖，就用棉被。

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. dining-table [dī'nī'æg-tābl]: 餐桌, 大菜檯。 2. cupboard [kūp'əɪ]: 碗碟櫃。 3. chest [ʧəst]: 櫃。
drawer [drəʊ, 或 drəw'ə]: 抽斗。——chest of drawers: 衣櫃。
wardrobe [wɔɪ'd-rəʊb, 注意 d 與 r 分開讀]: 掛衣櫥。
dresser [drəs'ə]: 梳妝臺。 4. blind [blānd]: 遮陽簾。 6. mattress [mæt'rɪs]: 褥子。
sheet [shēt]: 被單。 | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> blanket [blān'kɪt]: 毛毯。
quilt [kwɪlt]: 棉被。 8. bathtub [bah'th-tūb]: 浴盆。
flush [f.ʊsh]: 沖洗, 抽水沖洗。
toilet [toi'lɪt]: 廁所。——flush toilet: 沖水廁。 10. make [māk]: 整理。——make the bed: 鋪牀。 [布。
11. bed-cover [bēd'kūv'ə]: 蓋牀
12. bath [bath]: 沐浴。(名詞)
14. be sure [bē shoor]: (你)一定要, (你)必須。 |
|---|---|

講 義

(A) cupboard 是置在飯廳裏面的, 不是置在廚房裏面的碗碟櫃。

(B) sheet 似被單而只一重, 二重一副, 一重蓋在褥子上, 一重蓋在毛毯下毛毯上蓋一張蓋牀布: 這是西洋人鋪牀的方法。嚴格地說, 第 10 句的後半句當然已包括在前半句裏。

(C) 注意: drawers 可指複數的抽斗, 也可指櫃。拼法與讀音雖相同, 但用法上常有這個分別: drawer 是指一個抽斗, 但不能指一只衣櫃。

練 習

【背誦】

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
dress	dressed [-st]	dressed
flush	flushed [-sh]	flushed
make	made	made

interest	interested [-tîd]	interested
keep	kept [këpt]	kept
know [nō]	knew [nū]	known [nōn]
mean	meant [mēnt]	meant
modify	modified [-fid]	modified
mind	(minded [-dîd])	minded)

LESSON 23

Direct Objects

(1) You have, perhaps, already noted that a predicate must contain [kəntā'n] a verb. (2) Sometimes the verb alone forms [fōrmz] the predicate, as in this sentence—He laughs [lahfs]. (3) But sometimes a verb alone is not enough to complete [kəmplē't] our thought, and we have to use some other words to complete the meaning [mē'n-īng]. (4) Words thus used are called complements [kōm-plīmēnts].

(5) If I say "I bought," you will naturally [nāch'relî] ask "What did you buy?" because the meaning is not complete in I bought. (6) For the word *bought* expresses an action which affected [əfëk'tîd] something, and that something was not expressed in these two words I bought. (7) However, when I say "I bought a book," the meaning is complete, because the action of my buying affected a book, and it is expressed in the sentence. (8) The book is directly [dīrëkt'lī] affected by the action of buying, hence [hēns] it is called the direct object [dīrëkt' əb'jëkt]. (9) A direct object completes the meaning of a verb, hence it is a complement.

(10) A verb which takes an object is called a **transitive** [trah/'nsitiv] verb, while the other kind of verb—i.e., a verb which asserts an action that does not affect some other thing, or a verb which asserts a condition—is called an **intransitive** [ɪntrah/'nsitiv] verb.

譯 文

(1) 也許你已看出了，一個“述語”必須含有一個云謂詞。
 (2) 有的時候云謂詞單獨構成那“述語”，如在這一句——“他笑，”
 (3) 但是有的時候一個云謂詞單獨不足以完全表出我們的思想，而我們須用些別的字以完滿那意義。
 (4) 這樣被用的字叫做“補足語”。

(5) 如果我說“我買”，你將要很自然地問“你買什麼？”，因為在“我買”[這話]裏，意義不完全。
 (6) 因為這“買”字表現一種動作，這動作影響着些東西，而這東西並不在“我買”兩字中表現出來。
 (7) 雖然，如果我說“我買一本書”，[這句的]意義就完全了，因為我買東西的行為影響着一本書，而它在這句中被表現出來。
 (8) 那書是直接地被買的行為所影響，所以叫做“直接賓語”。
 (9) 一個“直接賓語”完成了一個云謂詞的意義，所以叫做“補足語”。

(10) 一個云謂詞之有“賓語”者叫做“他動云謂詞”，而另一種云謂詞——就是說明一種不影響到別的東西的云謂詞，或是說到一種情形的云謂詞——叫做“自止云謂詞”。

生 字

1. contain [kəntɪn]: 含有, 包括。
 2. form [fɔɹm]: 形成。
- laugh [lɑ:ʃ]: 笑。

- complete [kəmplɪt]: 完成, 使完滿。(云謂詞)
- meaning [mi:nɪŋ]: 意義。

4. **complement** [kɒm'plɪmənt]: 補足語。
[地。]
5. **naturally** [nætʃ'rəli]: 自然
6. **affect** [ə'fekt]: 影響。
8. **directly** [dɪ'rektli, di-, 或 de-]: 直接地。
hence [hɛns]: 所以。
direct [dɪ'rekt, di-, 或 de-]: 直接的。
object [əb'ʃjɛkt, 或 -jɛkt]: 賓語。——*direct object*: 直接賓語。
10. **transitive** [træz'n'sɪtɪv, 或 træn'sɪtɪv]: 他動的, 動作影響及他物的。——*transitive verb*: 他動云謂詞。
intransitive [ɪntræz'n'sɪtɪv 或 ɪntræn'sɪtɪv, 或首二音並讀重音]: 自止的, 動作或情形不影響及他物的。——*intransitive verb*: 自止云謂詞。

講義

(A) 注意: 過去分詞當做云謂詞用時常含有被動的意義, 就是說它所形容的名詞是受着這過去分詞所說的動作之影響的; 例如: *words thus used* = 被(我們)這樣使用的字。

(B) *direct* 與 *directly* 的 *i*, 美人多讀長音 [i:], 而英人多讀短音 [ɪ]。

(C) *transitive* 與 *intransitive* 之 *a*, 英人多讀 [aɪ], 美人多讀 [ā]; 注意 *s* 仍讀 [s] 音。

練習

【背誦】

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
contain	contained	contained
form	formed	formed
laugh	laughed [-ft]	laughed
complete	completed [-tɪd]	completed
affect	affected [-tɪd]	affected
note	noted [-tɪd]	noted
notice	noticed [-st]	noticed
obtain	obtained	obtained
omit	omitted [-tɪd]	omitted

LESSON 24

Nominative & Objective Cases

(1) When a noun or pronoun is used as the subject of a sentence, it is said to be in the **nominative case** [nōm'-inē-tīv kās]. (2) And when it is used as the object of a **transitive verb**, it is said to be in the **objective** [ōbjēk'tīv] case. (3) We are now ready to study another kind of complement. (4) If I say "Mr. Lee is", you will ask "What is he?" or "How is Mr. Lee?", for the meaning of my saying [sā'ing] is incomplete, although there is the subject and there is the predicate verb too. (5) However, when I add "a nice fellow [fēl'ō]" to "Mr. Lee is", then we have a complete sentence, for the meaning is now complete. (6) The word *fellow* completes the meaning of the verb and is another kind of complement. (7) It is called a **predicate nominative**, because this word, *fellow*, is in the predicate and in the nominative case. (8) It is in the nominative case, because it is not the object of the verb but refers [rīfēr'z] to the same person as the subject, which is in the nominative case.

(9) Another kind of complement is the **predicate adjective**, which we studied in Lesson 21. (10) For instance, when we say "Mr. Lee is ill", the word *ill* is a **predicate adjective**, and answers [ah'nsež] the question [kwēs'chen] "How is Mr. Lee?"

譯 文

(1) 一個名詞或代名詞被用做一句的“主語”時，那就說是居於“主格”。(2) 而它被用做一個“他動云謂詞”的“賓語”

時，那就說是居於“受格”。(3)現在我們可以研究另一種的“補足語”了。

(4)如果我說“李先生是”，你會問“他是什麼？”，或“李先生怎麼了？”，因為我說的話的意義不完全，雖則有“主語”也有“述語云謂詞”。(5)雖然，如果我於“李先生是”這幾字後面加“一個好伴侶”，那處我們就有一個完全的句子，因為現在意義是完全了。(6)“伴侶”這字完滿了那云謂詞的意義，它是又一種的“補足語”。(7)它叫做“述語主格”，因為“伴侶”這字是在“敘述”中而又居於“主格”。(8)它居於“主格”，因為它不是那“云謂詞”的“賓語”而與“主語”同指一個人，“主語”是居於“主格”的。

(9)另一種的“補足語”是“述語形容詞”，這個我們在第二十一課裏讀過了。(10)例如我們說“李先生生病”，這“病”字便是“述語形容詞”，而答覆了“李先生怎麼了？”這個問題。

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. nominative [nōm'ɪnətɪv]: 屬於主語的，屬於主格的。
case [kās]: 格(名詞與代名詞在句的構造上之地位)。—— <i>nominative case</i> : 屬於主語的格，“主格”。 | 在述語中作為云謂詞而非形容詞或名詞用之云謂詞，分詞等)。
saying [sə'ɪŋ]: (所說的)話。(say 的現在分詞當做名詞用) |
| 2. objective [ɒbjəktɪv]: 屬於賓語的(受云謂詞所述的動作之影響的)。—— <i>objective case</i> : 屬於賓語的格，“受格”。 | 5. fellow [fə'ləʊ]: 伴侶。 |
| 4. predicate verb : 述語云謂詞(即 | 7. predicate nominative : 述語主格，或屬於主語的。 |
| | 8. refer [rɪfə'r]: 指。 |
| | 10. answer [ah'nʌnsə]: 答覆。 |
| | question [kwɛs'tʃən]: 問題。 |

講 義

(A) 從本課所讀的兩種“補足語”，可以看出云謂詞 *be* (*am, is, are, was, were, have been, has been, had been, 等*) 之後可用名詞(代名詞)或形容詞，

如果逐字不是與分詞合用構成云謂詞短語。現在把可用在“be”字後邊的分詞列在下面：—

- (1) Today is *windy*. (形容詞)
 - (2) I am not a *girl*. (名詞)
 - (3) It is *I*. (代名詞)
- 但：You are *studying*. (現在分詞) [連綴式]

Such questions were not *asked*. (過去分詞) [被動態]

- (B) 注意本課“生字”對於文法名詞之解釋，許多講義的材料都放在那裏。

練 習

【背誦】

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
refer	referred [-d]	referred
answer	answered [-d]	answered
plaster	plastered [-t]	plastered
paved	paved [-vd]	paved
pour	poured [-d]	poured
pick	picked [-kt]	picked
promise	promised [-st]	promised
point	pointed [-tɪd]	pointed
pardon	pardoned [-nd]	pardoned
rinse	rinsed [-st]	rinsed
rub	rubbed [-bd]	rubbed
reap	reaped [-pt]	reaped

LESSON 25

“Simple Simon Meets a Pie-man”

(I)

Simple Simon meets a pie-man,
sɪm'pl sɪ'mən mi'ts ə pi'mæn,

(1)

- Going to the fair. (2)
 gɔ'ɪŋ tə ðə fɑɪə.
- Says Simple Simon to the pie-man, (3)
 sɜz sɪm'pl sɪ'mən tə ðə pi'mən,
- "Let me taste your ware." (4)
 "lɛt mi tæst jɜ wɛə."
- Says the pie-man to Simple Simon, (5)
 sɜz ðə pi'mən tɔ sɪm'pl sɪ'mən,
- "Show me first your penny." (6)
 "ʃəʊ mi fɪrst jɜ pɛni."
- Says Simple Simon to the pie-man, (7)
 sɜz sɪm'pl sɪ'mən tə ðə pi'mən,
- "Sir, I haven't any." (8)
 "sɪr, i hævnt ɛni."

(II)

- "Where are you going, my pretty maid?" (9)
 "wɛə ɜ ju gəʊɪŋ, mi prɪtɪ mæd?"
- "I am going a-milking, sir," she said. (10)
 "i ɜm gəʊɪŋ əmɪl'kɪŋ, sɪr," ʃe seɪd.
- "May I go with you, my pretty maid?" (11)
 "mæ i gəʊ wɪð ju, mi prɪtɪ mæd?"
- "Yes, if you please, sir," she said. (12)
 "jɛs, ɪf ju pli:z, sɪr," ʃe seɪd.
- "What is your father, my pretty maid?" (13)
 "wɔt ɪz jɜ fɑðə, mi prɪtɪ mæd?"
- "My father is a farmer, sir," she said. (14)
 "mi fɑðə ɪz ə fɑ:mə, sɪr," ʃe seɪd.
- "What is your fortune, my pretty maid?" (15)
 "wɔt ɪz jɜ fɔ:tʃən, mi prɪtɪ mæd?"

“My face is my fortune, sir,” she said. (16)

“mī fá's iz mī fōr'chen, sīr,” shē'sēd.

“Then I can't marry you, my pretty maid.” (17)

“dhēn ī'kahn n.ārī' ū, mī prīt'ī mād.”

“Nobody asked you, sir,” she said. (18)

“nō'bedī ah'skt ū, sīr,” shē'sēd.

譯 文

(一)

愚蠢的西門遇着一個賣餅的人 (1)

正向市集上走去。 (2)

愚蠢的西門對賣餅的人說： (3)

“讓我試一試你的貨色。” (4)

那賣餅的人對愚蠢的西門說： (5)

“[你]先拿出你的辨士給我看。” (6)

愚蠢的西門對那賣餅的人說： (7)

“先生,我(任何)一個都沒有。” (8)

(二)

“你到哪裏去,(我的)美女?” (9)

“我去搖牛奶,”伊說。 (10)

“我可與你同去嗎,(我的)美女?” (11)

好,如果你願意,(仁慈的)先生,”伊說。 (12)

“你的父親(是什麼)有何職業,(我的)美女?” (13)

“我的父親是一個農夫,”伊說。 (14)

“你的家產(是什麼)如何,(我的)美女?” (15)

“我的臉孔[便]是我的家產,先生,”伊說。 (16)

“那麼,我不能和你結婚了,(我的)美女。” (17)

“[並]沒有人教你呀,先生,”伊說。 (18)

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| simple [sɪm'pl]: 簡單,率直。 | pence [pɛns] 指一宗款項的數目時用的) |
| Simon [sɪ'm n]: (人名)西門。 | 9. pretty [prɪ'ti]: 美麗的。 |
| pie [pi]: 麵(一種食品,形似餅,頗大,以麵粉為皮,以雞鴨或肉或果食為餡,歐美之人,每於飯後食之,視為珍品)。 | maid [maɪd]: 女子。 |
| pie-man [pi'mæn]: 賣麵餅的 | 10. milk [mɪlk]: 擠牛奶。(動詞)——milking [mɪl'kɪŋ]: 在擠牛奶。 |
| 2. fair [fɛr]: 市集;城。 | a-milking [ə'mɪl'kɪŋ]: 以擠牛奶。 |
| 4. ware [wɛr]: 貨。 [節。 | 15. fortune [fɔr'tʃən]: 財產,產業。 [娶。 |
| 5. i' [i]: to之簡,把元音省去以合音 | 17. marry [mæ'rɪ]: 與~結婚,嫁 |
| 6. penny [pɛn'i]: 辨士(英國幣制中最小單位)。(複數 pennies [pɛn'iz] 指一個一個的 penny; | 18. ask [æsk]: 求,請,教。 |

講 義

- (A) a-milking 這一類的字,現在無人用,都用 to milk 或“to + 動詞”。
- (B) 英文詩的音步是依其輕重(抑揚)音之變化而成的,或二音一步,或三音一步,而其重(抑揚)音或在首音或在末音,所以共有四律:(1) 抑,揚;(2) 揚,抑;(3) 抑,抑,揚;(4) 揚,抑,抑。再,由每行的步數與每節的行數變化成爲各種的詩。
- (C) 英文詩的音節有的時候可不十分嚴格遵守,例如第 3, 7 兩行都先來個半步,又如第 16 行第一步缺一音,第 18 行缺兩音。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 21—25)

1. Some verbs express actions, which affect some one or something, such verbs are called transitive verbs,

2. The **noun** or **pronoun**, that stands for the person or thing which is affected by the action of a **transitive verb**, is called the **direct object** of the verb.
3. The **direct object** of a **transitive verb** completes the meaning of the verb, so it is called a **complement**, which means any word or words that complete the meaning of the verb and help to form a complete predicate.
4. The **predicate adjective** is a **complement** too, and so is the **predicate nominative**.
5. A **noun** or **pronoun** is said to be in the **nominative case**, when it is used as the **subject** of a sentence, and in the **objective case**, when it is used as the **direct object** of a verb.
6. A **predicate nominative** is a **noun** or **pronoun** used in the predicate, not as the **direct object** of the verb, but referring to the same person or thing as the **subject**, which is in the **nominative case**.
7. Your house is very nicely furnished, it looks very nice from both inside and outside.
8. You have very nice flowers on the stands and very nice pictures on the walls.
9. Which do you like best, those pictures in frames or this one in scroll?
10. I like this scroll of calligraphs best.
11. Look, how well the vase looks on the table!
12. Yes, it looks very nice indeed, but I always like flower in pot better.
13. The price is the same, you may take the sofa or the settee as you like.
14. You wish to get curtains, well, which kind do you like to get, lace or heavy curtains?

15. Put these bowls and cups on the cupboards right away, and go upstairs to make the beds, and do change the bed-covers please.
16. Be sure to clean the mirror of the dresser and that of the wardrobe too.
17. Draw up the blinds and sweep the floor.
18. Clean the toilet and flush it.
19. I am getting my clothes from the chest of drawers, as I am going to take a bath.
20. Are the blankets warm enough, or do you have to use quilt now?
21. After our dinner, we shall have some pie, do you like it?
22. Simple Simon was going to the fair, when he met a pie-man, whose ware he wanted to taste though he had not even a penny.
23. The pretty maid was going a-milking, when she met a boy.
24. He wanted to marry her because she was pretty, but he didn't want to marry her, the moment he learned that her face only was her fortune.
25. What do you think of such a man?

* * *

LESSON 26

I am a Barber (Hair Cut)

(1) I am a barber [bār'bə] and I work in a barbershop [bār'bəshɔp]. (2) There I cut [kūt] people's hairs or shave [shāv] their beards [bērdz].

(3) When a customer [kūs'təmə] comes in and sits down on the chair, I put a hair-cutting [hār-kūt'ing] cloth [klōth] over him and ask: "Shave, sir, or hair cut?" (4) Sometimes our customer says, "Shave only, if you please." (5) And sometimes he says, "Both."

(6) In case of a hair cut, I first take the hair clippers [klīp'əz] and clip [klīp] the hair close [klōs]. (7) After clipping [klīp'ing], I trim [trīm] the long hairs with a comb and a pair of scissors [sīz'əz]. (8) I trim or cut the long hairs in the front, at the back, and on the sides.

(9) When I have finished, I offer [ɔf'ə] him a hand-mirror and ask, "Is this as you like it?" (10) Sometimes our customer says, "Yes, that's right." (11) And sometimes he says, "Cut it a little shorter, if you please." (12) In the latter case, I cut the hair shorter, as he likes it.

13. Where have you been?
14. I have been to the barbershop.
15. But you haven't had your hair cut there.
16. No, I went there for a shave. They shave me very close, that's why I like to have my shave there.

譯 文

(1) 我是一個理髮匠，我在理髮店裏工作。(2) 在那裏我翦人家的頭髮，或剃他們的鬚鬚。

(3) 一個客人進來坐在椅上時，我(置)圍一塊翦髮布在他(上邊)身上，問道：“剃鬚鬚還是翦髮，先生？”(4) 有的時候我們的客人說：“只剃剃鬚鬚，如果你喜歡。”(5) 有的時候他說：“兩樣[都要]。”

(6) 如果呈剪髮,我先取那個剪髮器而剪短他的頭髮。(7) 剪後,我用一個梳子與一把剪刀修髮那些長的頭髮。(8) 我修剪那在前邊,在後邊,與在旁邊的長頭髮,

(9) [剪]完了的時候,我舉出一面手鏡與他,問道:“這是如你所愛的嗎?”(10) 有的時候我們的客人說:“是,(那是對的)好。”(11) 有的時候他說:“把它再剪短一點,如果你喜歡。”(12) 在後者的情境中,我剪那頭髮使較短,如他所愛的。

13. 你到哪裏去了回來?
14. 我到剪髮店去的。
15. 但是你不曾在那裏剪髮。
16. 對的,我到那裏去剃鬚鬚的。他們剃得很光,所以我愛到那裏去剃。

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. barber [bār'le]: 理髮匠。 barbershop [lār'le.höp]: 理髮店。 2. cut [küt]: 割,剪。(過去時制及過去分詞均不裂形式) shave [shāv]: 剃鬚鬚。(同時可當云謂詞又可當名詞用) beard [bērd]: 鬚。 3. customer [kūs'təmə]: 商店的主顧,客人。 hair-cutting [hār-küt'ɪŋ]: 屬於剪髮的。 cloth [klōth]: 布。(複數 cloths [klōðz 或 klōths]) | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> hair cut [hār küt]: 剪髮。 6. clippers [klīp'əz]: 剪髮器。 clip [klīp]: 剪髮(特指用剪髮器剪時)。(過去時制及過去分詞均為 clipped [klīpt]) close [klōs]: 近。(用於剪髮時,指) 近肉,剪短。 7. trim [tɪ̄]: 修剪。(過去時制及過去分詞 trimmed [tɪmd]) scissors [sɪz'əz]: 剪刀。— a pair of scissors: 一把剪刀。 9. offer [ōf'ə]: 獻與,取~與。(過去時制及過去分詞 offered [ōf'əɪ]) |
|---|---|

講 義

(A) people = “人”, 廣泛的名詞,我們要泛指人們而不指定某人時,可用之。

- (B) cloth 的複數只指“多種的布”，並非指“多少布”。
 (C) hair 單數可指全部頭髮；非指頭髮全部時的複數始用 hairs。

練 習

【背誦】

Is this as you like it?

Yes, that's right.

Cut it a little shorter here.

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
cut	cut	cut
shaved	shaved	shaved
clip	clipped [-pt]	clipped
trim	trimmed	trimmed
offer	offered	offered
sup	sipped [-pt]	sipped
spin	span [spän]	spun [spün]
suppose	supposed	supposed
start	started [-tɪd]	started
see	saw [saw]	seen [sɛn]
study	studied [-dɪd]	studied
sow	sowed	sowed

LESSON 27

I am a Barber (Shaving, etc.)

(1) After the hair cut, I sharpen [ʃl.ɑr'pɪn] my razor [rā'zə] well upon [əpən] a strop [strɒp]. (2) Next with a brush I work some soap to a lather [lah'dhə] in a

shaving-dish [shā'vīng-dīsh], and with the brush I lather his cheeks, lips, and chin. (3) Then I shave him close.

(4) Next I ask him: "Massage [mäzah'zh], sir?" (5) Some customers say "Yes", while others say "No". (6) In case of the former, I use an electrical apparatus [i'ěks-'trikəl äp'erā'tes] to massage his face. (7) Then I suggest [səj'ěst'], "Singe [sīnj], sir?" (8) Very few customers will singe their hairs.

(9) "Take a shampoo [shämpōō'], sir?" I would suggest. (10) When he says "Yes", I ask, "Wet [wēt] or dry?" and then I give him wet or dry shampoo as he desires. (11) In case of a dry shampoo, I apply [əpli'] some powder [pow'də] to his hair and rub it well on the hair. (12) In case of a wet shampoo, I apply some liquid compound [lik'wid kōm'pōwd] to the hair and work it to a lather. (13) Then I wash the hair with water, rub it dry with a towel, and finally fan [fän] it dry with hot air [ār], which is produced [prədū'st] by an electric apparatus.

14. Let's open the window, the air in this room is not good.

15. When the weather is hot, we use fans or electric fans [il'ëk'trik fänz] to fan ourselves.

譯 文

(1) 剃髮之後，我在一條皮帶上鏘利我的剃刀。(2) 其次，我以一個刷子在剃鬚的用碟中擦些肥皂使成泡沫，而用那刷子把泡沫抹在他的頰上，唇上，與額上。(3) 然後把他剃得精光。

(4) 再次，我問問他：“按摩麼，先生？”(5) 有的客人說“要”，而別的說“不要”。(6) 在前者的情形中，我用一個電氣

的機械以按摩他的面部。(7) 其後我提議：“焦頭髮嗎，先生？”
(8) 很少的人要焦他們的頭髮。

(9) “要洗頭髮嗎，先生” 我會提議。(10) 在他說“要”時，我便問他：“用水洗還是乾擦？”然後如他所愛的給他溼洗或是乾擦。(11) 如果是乾擦，我放些[藥]粉在他的頭髮中，把它擦在上邊。(12) 如果是溼洗，我用些(液質的混合物)混合的液質在他頭髮上、擦它成泡沫。(13) 然後我用水洗那頭髮，用毛巾揩乾它，最後用那電氣機械所產出的熱風烘乾它。

14. 咱們開開窗門罷，這房間裏的空氣不好。

15. 天氣熱的時候，我們用扇或電扇(以扇我們自己)扇風。

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. sharpen [ʃaɪp'n, 或 -pən]: 個上只呼口氣。電氣的，使利，磨利，鏘利。 | apparatus [ə'pɛ:ə'tiəs]: 機械，儀器。 |
| razor [ræ'zə]: 剃刀。 | 7. suggest [sə'ʒʌst]: 提議，暗示。 |
| upon [əpən, 或重讀作 əpən]: 在~之上。 | singe [sɪŋ], 注意非 sɪŋg]: 焦。 |
| strop [strɒp]: 鏘剃刀的皮條， | 9. shampoo [ʃæmpu:]': 擦洗頭髮。(同時可作名詞與云謂詞用) |
| 2. work [wɜ:k]: 工作以使。 | 10. wet [wɛt]: 溼的，用水的。 |
| lather [læ'dlɛə, 或 lædɪ'ɛ:]: 肥皂的泡沫；抹這種泡沫。(同時可當名詞與云謂詞用) | 11. apply [əplɪ': 置，放。 |
| shaving-dish [ʃeɪvɪŋ-dɪʃ]: 剃鬚盤的用碟(用以盛肥皂及泡沫者)。 | powder [paʊ'də]: 粉類。 |
| 4. massage [mæ'sɑ:z', 注意末音非]音，乃 zh 音]: 按摩。(可作名詞與云謂詞之用) | 12. liquid [lɪk'wɪd]: 液質，液質的。 |
| 6. electrical [ɪlɛk'trɪəl, 第一 | compound [kəm'paʊnd]: 混合的，混合物。 |
| | 13. fan [fæn]: 扇；揮扇，揮扇使~。 |
| | air [ɛə]: 空氣；風。 |
| | produce [prə'dju:s]: 使生出。 |
| | 15. electric [ɪlɛk'trɪk]: 電氣的。 |

講 義

- (A) singe 乃以燭火或紙卷之火舌吹頭髮，使頭髮不像新剪的。
 (B) 注意: liquid cam, oil 譯成中文時，形容詞變名詞，名詞變形容詞。
 (C) electric 與 electrical 雖同為形容詞，意義也同，但前者較通用，後者現在很少用，又現在從沒有人說過 electrical fan。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	sharpen	sharpened [-nd]	sharpened
	work	worked [-kt]	worked
	lather	lathered [-dhəd]	lathered
	massage	massaged [-zhd]	massaged
	suggest	suggested [-tɪd]	suggested
	sign	signed [-d]	signed
	shampoo	shampooed [-d]	shampooed
	apply	applied [-d]	applied
	fan	fanned [-d]	fanned
	take	took [tʊk]	taken [tā'kn]
	thrash	thrashed [-shɪt]	thrashed
	use	{used [uːst] {used [uːzd]	(used) used
	wash	washed [-shɪt]	washed
	wring	wrung [rʌŋg]	wrung
	wipe	wiped [-pt]	wiped

LESSON 28

The Monkey and the Cat

- (1) Long, long ago there lived two thieves [thēvz]—a cat [kæt] and a monkey [mʌŋg'ki]. (2) One day the

Monkey found some chestnuts [chĕst'nŭts] in a fire. (3) He wanted to eat the chestnuts, but he was afraid [əfrā'd] of burning [bŭr'nĭng] his hand, so he took the Cat to the fire, and said:

(4) "Look, here is a fine dinner for us. (5) I have found these chestnuts, but your claws [klawz] are sharper [shāp'pe] than mine [mīn]. (6) So if you will pull [pŭl] them out of the fire, we will have a grand [grānd] dinner together."

7. What is a thief?
8. A thief is one who steals [stēlz].
9. Do cats and monkeys often steal?
10. Yes, that's why we call them thieves.
11. What did these two thieves try to steal?
12. They tried to steal some chestnuts which the Monkey found in the fire.
13. Why did the Monkey ask the Cat to pull out the chestnuts?
14. Because he was afraid of burning his hands, and so he tried to make the Cat bear [bār] the brunt [brŭnt].
15. Whether or not he succeeded we shall see in the next lesson.

譯 文

(1) 很久很久以前(活着)有二個賊——一隻貓與一隻猴子。
 (2) 一天那猴子找到些栗子在火中。(3) 他(要)想喫那栗子,但是他怕燒着他的手,所以他(取)領那隻貓到火[前],而說:

(4) "看呀,這裏有一頓很好的飯給我們[喫]。(5) 我找到了這些栗子,但是你的爪比我的利。(6) 所以如果你肯把它們拖出火外來,我們就可共喫一大頓的好東西。"

7. 賊是什麼?
8. 偷東西的人是賊。
9. 貓與猴子常偷東西麼?
10. 是的,就是因為這個理由我們叫他們賊。
11. 這兩個賊試要偷什麼東西?
12. 他們試要偷些那猴子所找到的在火中的栗子。
13. 為什麼猴捉貓[來]拖栗?
14. 因為他怕燒燙他的手,所以他試使那貓負擔那灼傷。
15. (或許與不他成功)他成功與否我們將於下課看出。

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. thief [thēf]: 竊賊,偷兒。(複數 thieves [hēvz]) cat [kāt]: 貓。 monkey [mūng'kī]: 猴子。 2. chestnut [hēs.'nūt]: 栗子。 3. afraid [ə'frā'ɔ]: 怕。 burn [būrn]: 燃燒。 5. claw [klaw]: 爪。 sharp [shāp]: 尖利。(較級 sharper [ʃ'æ'pe], 最級 sharp- | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> est [shāp'pīs]) mine [mīn]: 我的。(代名詞, 受格,其後不用名詞) 6. pull [pūō.]: 拉,拖。 grand [grānd]: 大,豐盛的。 8. steal [stēl]: 偷。 10. why [whī, 或 wī]: 這個理由。 14. bear [bār]: 負擔。 brunt [brūnt]: 衝擊。——bear the brunt: (負擔衝擊),喫虧。 |
|--|--|

講 義

(A) afraid 是形容詞,但只能當“述語形容詞”用,就是說,只能與 am, are is, 等等連用,並且它的後邊須有 of 字。

(B) one = “人”, 如 people 字一樣地泛指隨便什麼人而言; one 是單數, people 是複數。

(C) 第 14 句,全句當是 The Monkey asked the Cat to pull out the chestnuts because ~ 或 It was because. 不過在會話時這種句子很普通,雖則作文時不該如此寫。

(D) whether ~, whether or not ~, 或 whether ~ or not 三種的句子意義全同,即“~與否”;例如 whether or not he succeeded, whether

he succeeded or not, 或 whether he succeeded 這三個子句的構造雖然不同,但其意義則同為“他成功與否”。

(E) monkey 與 cat 的第一個字母大寫,是因為我們把那貓與猴當做人看,會說話,所以把它們的名字如人名一樣的以大寫字母起首。

(F) 又,因為把它們當做人看,所以 monkey 的代名詞用 he 而不用 it; 下一課用 she 代 cat 而不用 it,也是這個理由。

練 習

【背誦】

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
burn	burnt (或 burned)	burnt (或 burned)
pull	pulled	pulled
steal	stole [stōl]	stolen [stō'ln]
bear	bore [bōr]	borne [bōrə]

I am not going to bear the brunt for some one else.

LESSON 29

Don't be Some One's Cat's-paw

(1) The Cat agreed [əgrē'd] to it, and began to pull the chestnuts out of the fire. (2) She burnt⁴ [būrnt] her paw [paw] every time she pulled a chestnut out. (3) “But,” she thought to herself [hērsēlf], “never mind, the dinner I am going to have will fully [fōō'li] compensate [kōm'pēnsāt] for all the pains [pānz]” (4) So she went on pulling more and more chestnuts out of the fire. (5) When she had finished her work she turned [tūrnd] round and looked, and what did she find? (6) The Monkey had eaten them all!

7. Did the Cat agree to pull the chestnuts out of the fire in order to share the grand dinner?
8. Yes, that's why she burnt her paws.
9. What did she think when her paws were burnt?
10. She thought: "Oh, never mind, I shall soon be compensated by the delicious dinner."
11. But did she get her delicious chestnuts?
12. Oh no, she was fooled [fōold] by the Monkey, who ate them all
13. Now we speak of a man who bears the brunt for some one else as some one's cat's-paw [kāts'paw].
14. Don't be a cat's-paw.

譯 文

(1) 那貓同意於這個，而動手拖那些栗子出火。(2) 每回伊拖出一顆栗子，伊燒着伊的蹄掌。(3) “但是，”伊自己想，“不要緊，我將要喫的大餐會完滿地酬償一切的苦痛。”(4) 所以伊繼續拖出更多又更多的栗子。(5) 伊做完伊的工作時，伊轉回身來一看，伊發現什麼呢？(6) 那猴子已喫完它們。

7. 貓答應拖那些栗子出火以分享很美好的大餐嗎？
8. 是的，就是爲這個理由，伊焦了伊的蹄掌。
9. 在伊蹄掌被焦時，伊想的什麼？
10. 伊想：‘吓，不要緊，我不久將（受那好滋味的大餐賠償）由那美味的大餐得到賠償。’
11. 但是伊得到伊栗子的大餐嗎？
12. 不，伊被那猴子騙了，那猴子把栗子都喫完了。

13. 現在我們說一個爲別人喫虧的人是人家的“貓蹄”(傀儡)。
14. 你自己勿做一個“貓蹄”(傀儡)。

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. agree [ə'grɪ]: 同意。 | compensate [kəm'pensæt]: 賠償(損失)。 |
| 2. burnt [bɜ:nt]: 燃燒。(burn 的過去時制及過去分詞,又可併作 burned) | pain [pæn]: 痛。(名詞;但複數 [pænz] 作“辛苦”解。) |
| paw [paw]: 蹄,掌。 | 4. go on [gō ɔn]: 繼續下去。 |
| every time [əv'ri tɪm]: 每回。 | 5. turn [tɜ:n]: 轉;掉頭,—— <i>turn round</i> [tɜ:n raʊnd]: (轉四周), |
| 3. herself [hɜ:rsɔlf]: 伊自己。 | 12. fool [fʊl]: 騙,愚弄。 [轉回], |
| never mind [nɛv'ə mɪnd]: (永不以爲意),不相干,不要緊。 | 13. cat's-paw [kæts'paw]: “貓蹄”(比喻爲人傀儡的人)。 |
| fully [fʊl'i]: 完滿地, | |

講 義

- (A) agree 是自止云謂語,要加賓語時須置一介詞在其後: *agree to it*。
(B) 注意第 3 句的標點;這把一句話打斷了,而插進說明這句話是誰說的或是誰想的,在英文中可算是標準句。
(C) *thought to herself* 注意 to 字在譯文中無之,但在英文中則不可缺。
(D) *speak of* = 說屬於,即“說”(含有批評的意義): *speak of a man as* = “說一個人(如)是~”。

練 習

- 【背誦】 Pardon me.—Never mind.
Can you catch what I said?—Yes, go on.
Come on, let's turn round.

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
agree	agreed [-d]	agreed
compensate	compensated [-tɪd]	compensated
turn	turned [-nd]	turned
fool	fooled [-ld]	fooled

LESSON 30

The Dog in the Manger

(1) Once a dog [dög], looking for a place for his afternoon nap, saw the manger [mä'njə] of an ox [öks].

(2) He liked it and, jumping [jüm'píng] into it, slept easily [kō'zili] upon the straw [straw].

(3) Soon the ox came back from his day's work. (4) He went up to the manger to get the straw for his supper.

(5) The dog, enraged [ĩnrā'jd] at being awakened [əwā'knd] from his nap, got up and barked [bārkt] at the owner [ō'nə] of the manger. (6) Whenever [whēnēv'ə] the ox went near [nēr] the manger, he tried to bite [bit] him.

(7) So the ox had to give up the hope [hōp] of having his supper. (8) He went away grumbling [grüm'blíng]: "He can not enjoy the straw, and yet he won't let me have it."

(9) Often people are like "the dog in the manger".

(10) But don't be one yourself.

譯 文

(1) 一回一隻狗在找一個午睡的地方，看見一個（槽屬於一頭牛的）牛槽。(2) 他歡喜它而跳入，在草稈上舒服的睡着了。

(3) 一會兒那牛自它[一]日的工作回來 (4) 他上前到那槽以取得些草當他的晚飯[喫]。

(5) 那狗(被激怒於被驚醒自他的午睡)為被驚醒而動怒，跳起來 吠(於)那槽的主人。(6) (無論何時)只要牛走近那槽，

他(試)就要咬他。

(7) 所以那牛須放棄喫他晚飯的希望。(8) 他走開了,喃喃埋怨道:“他不能享受那草,又不讓我喫它。”

(9) 人往往(也)是像這隻“槽中狗”。(10) 但是你自己勿做一個[這樣的人]。

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>dog</i> [dɔg]: 狗。 | <i>bark</i> [bɑ:k]: 吠。 |
| <i>manger</i> [mɑ:njə] 槽。 | <i>owner</i> [oʊnə]: 主人。 |
| <i>ox</i> [ɒks, k 只呼口氣]: 牛。(複數 <i>oxen</i> [ɒk's-n]) | 6. <i>whenever</i> [whənəv'ə]: 不論何 |
| 2. <i>jump</i> [jʌmp]: 跳。 [服地。 | <i>near</i> [nɛə]: 近。 [時 |
| <i>cosily</i> , 或 <i>cozily</i> [kɔʊzili]: 舒 | <i>bite</i> [bit]: 咬。(過去時制 <i>bitten</i> [bit'n]) |
| <i>straw</i> [strɔw]: 草稈; 草。 | 7. <i>give up</i> [gɪv'ʌp]: 放棄, 作罷。 |
| 3. <i>enrage</i> [ɪnrəʃ]: 激怒。 | <i>hope</i> [hɒp]: 希望。(名詞) |
| <i>awaken</i> [əwə'kn]: 驚醒。 | 8. <i>grumble</i> [grʌmbl]: 喃喃埋怨。 |

講 義

(A) 如我們說過, 分詞當形容詞用時, 也有主動態與被動態之分: 現在分詞是表明它所形容的人或物是主動的, 而過去分詞則表明他們是被動的。本課第 1, 2 兩句與第 5 句都是做例。

(B) 有許多自止云謂詞可以與介詞合用而帶有賓語, 如第 5 句 *bark at the owner of the manger* = 吠那槽的主人。非有 *at* 在 *bark* 字之後, 則為錯誤。

(C) *Like* = 愛; *are like* = 像。這分別切須記好, 不然犯了詞不達意的毛病。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 26—30).

1. Some people go to the barbershop for a hair cut, some for a shave, and some for both.
2. The barber puts a hair-cutting cloth over his

- customer and first uses the hair clippers to clip the hair, and then a pair of scissors to cut or trim it.
3. After he has finished it, he offers his customer a handmirror and asks, "Is this as you like it?"
 4. Before he shaves his customer, he works the soap in the shaving-dish to a lather with a brush, with which he then lathers the cheeks, the lips and the chin of his customer.
 5. He then sharpens his razor upon a strop, and shaves the beards of his customer.
 6. He sometimes massages his customer's face with an electrical apparatus and singes his hair.
 7. Sometimes he applies some liquid compound to give him a wet shampoo; and sometimes, some powder to give him a dry shampoo.
 8. In case of a wet shampoo, with hot air produced by an electric fan, he dries the hair after washing it with water.
 9. What is a "cat's-paw"?
 10. When one bears the brunt for some one else, the former is said to be the latter's cat's-paw. Here is the story of how we get this phrase "the cat's-paw".
 11. Once a monkey found some chestnuts in the fire, and as he was afraid of burning himself, he asked the cat to get them out.
 12. He promised the cat to have a grand dinner of chestnuts together, so the cat pulled the chestnuts out of the fire and burned her paws.
 13. But the monkey ate the chestnuts as they were pulled out by the cat, so the cat got nothing except burning her paws.

14. Once a dog took a nap on the straw of the manger of an ox, but soon the ox came back from his work and wanted to have his supper.
15. Enraged at being awakened from his nap, the dog barked at the owner of the manger and tried to bite when the latter tried to come near.
16. So we call any one who won't let other people have what he himself cannot enjoy, "the dog in the manger".

* * *

LESSON 31

Report for Work

- (1) Sô^ì you have come to report [rĭpôh't] for work.
- (2) Let me introduce [ĭn'trədū's] you to the staff [stahf].
- (3) Of course, you know Mr. Wang, our assistant manager [əsĭs'tənt mǎn'əjə], whom you met the other day in this room. (4) This is his office. (5) Mr. Wang, our new accountant [əkow'ntənt], Mr. Ting, reports for work today. (6) Now, let us go out and meet the staff outside. (7) If you have anything important, you may always come to me, or Mr. Wang, if I am not here.
- (8) Mr. Tsai, our new accountant, Mr. Ting, reports for work today. (9) Mr. Ting, Mr. Tsai is our cashier [kəshĭ'ə], but he has been keeping [kē'pĭng] our books [bōōks] ever since [sĭns] Mr. Chiu, our last accountant, left us.
- (10) Mr. Tsai, will you please ask all the staff to come here? (11) I am going to introduce Mr. Ting to them.

- (12) Mr. Tsai is one of the oldest members [mǎh'bez] of the staff. (13) If there is anything that you don't know, ask him.
14. At what hour do you have to report for work in the morning?
15. My office hours begin at nine, but I arrive at my office usually half an hour earlier.
16. And what time do you leave your office in the afternoon?
17. My office hours end at five, but usually I leave quarter of an hour earlier, and what are your office hours?
18. The same as yours [ūtz], with a two-hour interval [tōō'owr in'təvəl] at noon for lunch.

譯 文

(1) 這樣你已來(以報告爲工作)上工了。(2) 讓我介紹你給全體職員。

(3) 當然你認識王先生,我們的副經理,就是那一天你在這房間裏會過的。(4) 這是他的辦公室。(5) 王先生,咱們的新簿記員丁先生,今天上工了。(6) 現在我們到外邊會見外邊的職員。(7) 如果你有任何重要的事,你不論何時可來[找]我,或者[找]王先生,如果我不在。

(8) 蔡先生,咱們的新簿記員,丁先生,今天上工。(9) 丁先生,蔡先生是我們的司庫,但是自咱們前任的簿記員朱先生離開了咱們之後,他在記咱們的帳。

(10) 蔡先生,請你去請全體職員來這裏,好嗎?(11) 我將要介紹丁先生給他們。(12) 蔡先生是職員之中任事最久的一位。(13) 如果有任何你不知道的事,[可以]問他。

14. 早上你幾點鐘上工?
15. 我辦公的時間自九點鐘起,但是我平常早半點鐘到我的辦公所。
16. 又,下午你什麼時離開你的辦公所?
17. 我辦公的時間到五點鐘終止,但是平常我早一刻鐘離開,而你的辦公時間呢?
18. 與你的相同,而在中午有一個兩點鐘的停止以喫午飯。

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. report [rɪpɔ:t]: 報告;報到。
(動詞或名詞)——<i>report for work</i>: (爲工作報到),上工。 2. introduce [ɪn'trɒdʊ:s]: 介紹。
staff [stɑ:fi]: 職員(全體)。 3. assistant [ə'sɪs'tənt]: 幫助的;助手。(形容詞或名詞)
manager [mæn'dʒɜ:n]: 經理。——<i>assistant manager</i>: 副經理。 5. accountant [ə'kaʊntənt]: 簿記員,查帳員。 [庫] 9. cashier [kə:ʃɪə]: 主理納者,司
keep [kɛp]: (與 <i>books</i> 字連用時)記帳。 | <p>books [bʊks]: 帳簿。
since [sɪns]: (關於時間)自~時起。——<i>ever since</i> [ɛv'ə sɪns]: (永遠自~時起),自~時起一直到現在。 [真]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 12. member [mɛm'bɜ:]: 會員,人 15. office hours [ɒfɪs ɔ:z]: 辦公時間。
<i>the same as</i> ~: 與~相同。
yours [jɔ:z]: 你的。(獨立,不與名詞連用) 18. interval [ɪn'tɜ:vəl]: 相隔之時間。——<i>a two-hour interval</i>: 兩小時的間隙或間隔。 |
|--|--|

講 義

(A) *staff* 乃全體職員之總稱,這種名詞,在文法上叫“羣名詞”,可不變其形式而當單數或複數用。

(B) 第 6 句 *the staff outside* 的 *outside* 是一個放在名詞後邊的形容詞(注意“譯文”中字的順序)。

(C) 第 18 句全句當然是“*My office hours are the same: ~*”或“*They are the same: ~*”,但在會話上人們常用這簡句。

(D) 同句的 *a two-hour interval* 的 *two* 與 *hour* 兩字用連字號連成一半,所以 *hour* 用單數,不用複數。

練 習

背誦】

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
report	reported [-tɪd]	reported
introduce	introduce? [-st]	introduced
keep	kept [kɛpt]	kept
單 數	複 數	
manager	managers	
accountant	accountants [-ts]	
cashier	cashiers	
book	books [-ks]	
attic	attics [-ks]	
adverb	adverbs	
author	authors	
action	actions	
apparatus	{ apparatus apparatuses [-sɪz]	

- 【翻譯】 我將要到李先生家裏去。
 我的書在這裏，你的在哪裏？
 我沒有看見你自從上月月杪。

LESSON 32

Being Introduced to the Staff.

- (1) Here they come.
 (2) I am glad to see you all here. (3) I am glad to tell you that a new member is added to our staff. (4) Mr. Ting is our new accountant. (5) He begins his work

today and I hope all of you will co-operate [kō-ōp'ərāt] with him.

(6) Mr. Ting, this is Mr. Chen, he is our Chinese secretary [sĕk'rĕtrī]. (7) This is Miss Kao, our stenographer [stĕn-ōg'rĕfə]. (8) Mr. Chow is our salesman [s'ā'lzmən]. (9) Mr. Lo is our shipping [shĭp'ing] clerk. (10) Mr. Tsang is our buyer [bī'ə]. (11) Mr. Liu is our general [jĕn'ərəl] assistant. (12) A-ning is our messenger boy [mĕs'ɪnjə boi].

(13) This is all, but before you go back to your work, let me tell you once more, 'Co-operate!'

(14) Mr. Tsai, you may now hand over the books to Mr. Ting, and explain [ɪksplā'n] to him our accounting system [əkow'ntĭng sĭs'təm].

15. I want to see your Manager.

16. I am sorry, he is engaged [ɪŋgə'jd].

17. Is he? Well, I'll wait, I have an appointment with him.

18. Are you Mr. Wu?

19. Yes, here is my card [kɑ:d].

20. Then our manager has been waiting for you. He wants to keep his appointment with you, so he told me to tell all the callers [kaw'lɔz] that he is engaged.

譯 文

(1) 他們來了。

(2) 我很喜歡看見你們大家在這裏。(3) 我很喜歡告訴你們, 咱們職員添了一位。(4) 丁先生是咱們的新簿記員。(5) 他今天開始工作, 我希望你們大家都要與他合作。

(6) 丁先生,這位是陳先生,他是咱們的中文書記。(7) 這位是高小姐,咱們的打字員。(8) 周先生是咱們的賣貨員。(9) 羅先生是咱們的運貨管理員。(10) 張先生是咱們的進貨員。(11) 劉先生是咱們的總幫辦。(12) 阿靈是咱們的信差。

(13) 完了,但是在你們回去工作之前,讓我再對你們說一回“合作!”

(14) 蔡先生,現在你可把那些帳簿交給了丁先生,對他說明咱們帳目的系統。

15. 我要見你們的經理。
16. 對不起,有人與他談話。
17. 是嗎? 那麼我要等着,我與他有約。
18. 你就是吳先生嗎?
19. 是的,我的名片在這裏。
20. 那麼,咱們的經理已在等着你了。他要保守與你會晤,所以吩咐我告訴一切來探望的人,[說]有人與他談話。

生 字

co-operate [kō-ōp'ə-rā't, 注意
首兩音須分別讀明]: 合作。

secretary [sēk'rē-trī, 注意 a
字無音]: 秘書,書記。

stenographer [stēnōg'rēfē]:
速記打字員。

salesman [sā'z-mən]: 賣貨員;
跑街。(複數 -men [-mən, 或
-mēn])

ship [·hīp]: 船(名詞)(轉為)
運貨或轉運(云謂詞), shipping
shīp'ing]: 關於運貨的。(現在

分詞)——shipping clerk: 運貨管
理員。

10. buyer [bī'ē]: 普通買東西的人;
公司中專管買貨的人,進貨員。

11. general [jēn'ərəl, 或 jēn'rī]:
普遍的。

12. messenger [mēs'injə, 注意:第
二音是 sīn, 不是 sīng]: 送信人。
boy [boi]: 僕役。——messeng r
boy: 信差。

14. hand [hānd]: 交,付。——hand
over to: 移交(某人)

- explain [ɪkˈplɛɪn, ɛks-]: 說明。
 accounting [əˈkəʊntɪŋ]: 記帳, 會計。
 system [sɪˈtəm]: 系統。
16. engage [ɪŋəˈdʒ, 或 ɛn-]: 約; 從事。(過去時制及過去分詞 engaged [-d])
- engaged [ɪŋəˈdʒd, ɛn-]: 有約的; 有事(指與人談話)。
19. card [kɑːd]: 卡片, 名片。
20. caller [kɔːlə]: 探訪者, 求見者。

講 義

(A) 注意以下諸字與介詞的連用: is added to our staff; co-operate with him; hand over the books to Mr. Ting; have an appointment with him。 [後者卻是。

(B) messenger 與 messenger boy 的分別在這裏: 前者不一定是僕役, (C) "He is engaged" 普通是指他正在與人談話, 但有時可作別的意義解。

練 習

【背誦】

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
co-operate	co-operated [-tɪd]	co-operated
ship	shipped [-pt]	shipped
hand	handed [-dɪd]	handed
explain	explained [-nd]	explained
engage	engaged [-dʒd]	engaged

單數	複數	單數	複數
secretary	secretaries	messenger	messengers
stenographer	stenographers	boy	boys
salesman	salesmen [-mən, 或 mɛn]	system	systems
buyer	buyers	caller	callers
		card	cards [-dz]

【翻譯】 請你把你的事移交與伊。
 他在忙着嗎(有人與他談話嗎)?
 伊與我有一個很重要的約。

LESSON 33

Long Measures

(1) I work in a piece-goods [pě's-gōōdz] store. (2) We use the long measure [mēzh'ə] a good deal [dəi]. (3) There are three systems that we use: the old Chinese system, the English system, and the new Chinese system, which is called the Market Standard [mā'kit stān'dəd] system. (4) The old Chinese system has ten inches [in'chiz] to one foot [fōōt], while the English system has twelve inches to one foot, and three feet [.ēt] to one yard [yārd]. (5) The Market Standard system has ten inches to one foot, and three feet to one metre [mē'tə]. (6) One metre is equivalent [ikwiv'ələnt] to one yard and three point [point] three seven (3.37) inches, while one English foot is equivalent to about nine inches of the old Chinese system.

7. You'll [u] take this, all right, how many feet do you need?
8. I will take two metres.
9. Won't you have a look at some of our woollen goods [wōōl'en gōōdz]?
10. Won't you take a look at some of our new silk [silk]?
11. Have you some with stripes [strips]?
12. Show me some with other designs [dizi'nz], please.
13. Have you got something like this?
14. Well, we have something of the same design, but not of the same quality, shall I show it to you?
15. Is it all wool [wōōl]?
16. Oh yes, it is all wool, we fully guarantee [gāi'əntiə] that.

譯 文

(1) 我在布店裏工作。(2) 尺度我們用得很多。(3) 我們所用的有三個制度：舊的中國制，英國制，與新的中國制，那叫做市標準制。(4) 舊的中國制十寸等於一尺，而英國制十二寸等於一尺，三尺等於一碼。(5) 市標準制十寸等於一尺，而三尺等於一米突尺。(6) 一米突尺等於一碼又 3.37 寸，而一英尺等於舊中國制約九寸。

7. 你要這個，好，你需要幾尺？
8. 我買兩米突尺。
9. 你不愛看一看些我們的羊毛貨嗎？
10. 你不愛看一看些我們的新綢嗎？
11. 你們有些有紐條的嗎？
12. 請你拏些有別的花樣的給我看。
13. 你們有些像這個的嗎？
14. 唔，我們有些同花樣的，但是品質不同，我拏來給你看好嗎？
15. 這是全羊毛的嗎？
16. 當然，那是全羊毛的，這個我們完全擔保。

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <i>piece-goods</i> [i ɜ's-gōō:z]: (一塊一塊的貨), 布匹頭。 2. <i>measure</i> [mēzh'ə]: 量, 度。——
<i>long measure</i>: (長的度), 尺度。
<i>deal</i> [i:]: 一份, 許多。(複數極罕用)——<i>a good deal</i>: (一個好的一份), 許多。 3. <i>market</i> [mā't'kɪl]: 市, 市的。 | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. <i>standard</i> [stān'ded]: 標準, 標準的。(名詞或形容詞)——<i>Market Standard system</i>: 市標準制。 4. <i>inch</i> [ɪnch]: 寸, 英寸。(複數
<i>inches</i> [ɪn'chɪz]:)
<i>foot</i> [fōōt]: 尺, 英尺。(複數
<i>feet</i> [fēt])
<i>yard</i> [jārd]: 碼。 |
|---|---|

- | | |
|---|--|
| 5. metre, 或 meter [mē'tə]: 米突尺, 呎, 公尺。 | in]: 羊毛的。 |
| 6. equivalent [i'kwɪv/ələnt]: 等於。(係形容詞, 須有 is 或 be 的其他形式在前, 又有介詞 to 在後) | goods [gʊd̩z]: 貨物。 |
| point [pɔɪnt]: 點。 | 10. silk [sɪlk]: 絲, 綢緞。 |
| 7. you'll [ɪl]=you will. | 11. stripe [striː]: 條紋, 綫條。 |
| 9. woolen [wʊl/ən, 或 wʊl/- | 12. design [dɪzɪ'n]: 花樣。 |
| | 15. wool [wʊl]: 羊毛, |
| | 16. guarantee [gær'əntə//, 注意 u 無音]: 擔保。 |

講 義

(A) have a look 或 take a look 都是成語, 等於“看一看”, 照文法說來, look 是“名詞”, 是 have 或 take 的“賓語”。

(B) ten inches to one foot 的 to 之用法借自數學比例, 可譯作“等於”。

練 習

【背誦】

現在時制		過去時制		過去分詞	
guarantee		guaranteed		guaranteed	
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
store	stores	stripe	stripes	stripe	stripes
measure	measures	design	designs	design	designs
market	markets	wool	wools	wool	wools
standard	standards	broth	broths [-ths 或 -dhs, 多種的湯]	broth	broths [-ths 或 -dhs, 多種的湯]
inch	inches [ɪn/'tʃɪz]	brick	bricks	brick	bricks
foot	feet	bathroom	bathrooms.	bathroom	bathrooms.
yard	yards	backyard	backyards	backyard	backyards
metre	metres	basement	basements	basement	basements
goods	goods	point	points	point	points
silk	silks (綢緞衣服)				

LESSON 34

Weight Measures

(1) I work in a grocery [grō'serī], and we use the weight [wāt] measure a good deal. (2) We, too, have three systems. (3) Both the new and the old Chinese systems have sixteen ounces [ow'nsīz] to one catty [kāt'ī]. (4) The English system has sixteen ounces to one pound [pownd].

(5) One Market Standard catty equals [ē'kwəlz] 500 grammes [grāmz], and two catties, one kilogramme [kīl'ō-grām]. (6) One English pound is equal to about twelve ounces of the old Chinese system, and two point two naught [ɔawt] five (2.205) pounds, to one kilogramme.

7. Give me some mushrooms [mūsh'rōōmz].
8. Fresh [frēsh] or in tins [tīnz]? We have very nice fresh mushrooms, which have just arrived, and are not dear, only _____ per catty.
9. All right, give me half a catty, and show me some corn beef [kōrn bēf].
10. Here it is, madam, this is half-pound tin, and that four-ounce tin.
11. Quarter of a pound, is it net [nēt] or gross [grōs]?
12. Funny [fūn'ī], it is not stated [stā'tīd] here. However, we can weigh [wā] it. See, it's net.
13. Get me some butter [būt'ə].
14. In tins or fresh?
15. Give me a half-pound tin, _____ brand, please.

譯 文

(1) 我在食物雜貨店裏工作，衡度我們用得很多。(2) 我們也有三種制度。(3) 中國制，新的與舊的，都是十六兩等於一斤。(4) 英國制是十六兩一磅。

(5) 市斤等於五百公分，兩市斤等於一公斤。(6) 一英磅等於中國舊制約十二兩，2.205 磅等於一公斤。

7. 給我些菇。
8. 新鮮的還是在(罐頭中的)罐頭的? 我們有些很好的鮮菇，新到的而又不貴，只———斤。
9. 好，給我半斤，再拏些醃牛肉。
10. 就在這裏，太太，這是半磅罐的，而那是四兩罐的。
11. (一磅四分之一)四兩是淨重還是總重? [淨重。
12. 奇怪，這裏沒有注明。雖然，我們可以稱稱看。看呀，是
13. 給我些牛奶油。
14. 罐頭的還是新鮮的?
15. 給我一個半磅罐，請拏———牌子的。

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. grocery [grō'səri 或 grō'srī]: 食物雜貨店。(常用複數) weight [wā]: 重量。——<i>weight measure</i>: 衡度。 3. ounce [əʊns]: (斤兩的) 兩。(簡寫作 <i>z.</i>) atty [-ā/ī]: 斤。 4. pound [paʊnd]: 磅。(簡寫作 <i>lb.</i>, 複數 <i>lbs.</i>) | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. equal [ē'kwel]: 等於。(云謂詞，亦可作形容詞用) gramme, 或 gram [grām]: 格蘭姆，公分。(簡寫作 <i>g.</i>) kilogramme, 或 kilogram [ki'lōgrām, 不論如何拼法，讀音全同]: 公斤，尅。(簡寫作 <i>kg.</i>, 但說時常用 <i>kilo</i>, 或 <i>kilos</i> [ki'lō 或 ki'lōz]) |
|---|---|

6. naught [nawt]: 無物,零。
 7. mushroom [mūsh'room]: 蕈。
 8. fresh [frēsh]: 新鮮。[菌,菇]。
 tin [tīn]: 罐頭。
 9. corn [kōrn]: 醴。
 11. net [nēt]: 淨,除淨的。
 gross [grōs]: 總的;未除淨的。
 12. funny [fū'vī]: 奇怪的。
 state [stāt]: 陳述,記載,說明。
 weigh [wā]: 稱,權重。
 13. butter [būt'ə]: 牛乳酪(俗稱“奶油”)。

講 義

(A) 注意 equal 的兩種用法: (1) 當云謂詞用時無須他物。如: (2) 當形容詞用時與 equivalent 字同一用法。

(B) gramme, metre 都是法國字,這種的拼音法是依照原文,但 meter, gram 是英文的拼法。

(C) tin 字原來是“錫”,鍍在鐵板上便成“馬口鐵”,也叫 tin,罐頭是用馬口鐵做成,所以也叫做 tin;但美國人叫它為 can。

(D) net 與 gross 非專指重量,雖在課文中應作“淨重”與“總重”解。

練 習

【背誦】

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
state	stated	stated
weight	weighed [wād]	weighed

單數	複數	單數	複數
grocery	groceries [-rīz]	mushroom	mushrooms
ounce	ounces [-sīz]	tin	tins
weight	weights [-ts]	basin	basins
catty	catties [-tīz]	brush	brushes [-shīz]
pound	pounds [-z]	barn	barns
kilogramme	kilogrammes	bargain	bargains

【翻譯】 4.41 磅等於二公斤。(把三種不同的說法譯出)

幾市尺等於一碼?

你不愛看一看我們的新貨嗎?

LESSON 35

"Here we Go 'round the Mulberry Tree"

1. Here we go 'round [rownd] the mulberry tree [mül'-brî trē],
The mulberry tree, the mulberry tree,
Here we go 'round the mulberry tree,
So early in the morning.
2. This is the way we wash our clothes [klōdhz],
Wash our clothes, wash our clothes,
This is the way we wash our clothes,
So early Monday morning.
3. This is the way we iron [i'ən] our clothes,
Iron our clothes, iron our clothes,
This is the way we iron our clothes,
So early Tuesday morning.
4. This is the way we mend [mënd] our clothes,
Mend our clothes, mend our clothes,
This is the way we mend our clothes,
So early Wednesday morning.
5. This is the way we sweep the floor,
Sweep the floor, sweep the floor,
This is the way we sweep the floor,
So early Thursday morning.
6. This is the way we dust [düst] our table,
Dust our table, dust our table,
This is the way we dust our table,
So early Friday morning.
7. This is the way we scrub [skrüb] the floor,
Scrub the floor, scrub the floor,

This is the way we scrub the floor,
So early Saturday morning.

8. This is the way we go to church [churĉh],
Go to church, go to church,
This is the way we go to church,
So early Sunday morning.

譯 文

1. (這裏我們去週圍)現在我們繞着桑樹走,
繞着桑樹走,繞着桑樹走,
現在我們繞着桑樹走,
(這樣)很早地在早上。
2. (這是那樣子我們洗我們的衣服)我們是這樣地洗衣服,
洗衣服,洗衣服,
我們是這樣地洗衣服,
很早地在星期一早上。
3. 我們是這樣地燙衣服,
燙衣服,燙衣服,
我們是這樣地燙衣服,
很早地在星期二早上。
4. 我們是這樣地補衣服,
補衣服,補衣服,
我們是這樣地補衣服,
很早地在星期三早上。
5. 我們是這樣地掃地板,
掃地板,掃地板,

我們是這樣地掃地板，
很早地在星期四早上。

- 6 我們是這樣地拂桌子，
拂桌子，拂桌子，
我們是這樣地拂桌子，
很早地在星期五早上。

7. 我們是這樣地揩桌子，
揩桌子，揩桌子，
我們是這樣地揩桌子，
很早地在星期六早上。

8. 我們是這樣地到禮拜堂去，
到禮拜堂去，到禮拜堂去，
我們是這樣地到禮拜堂去，
很早地在星期日早上。

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. 'round [raʊnd]: 週圍, 環繞。(乃 around 爲音節關係省去 a 字以減一音) | 法 klōz, 但不可如許多人讀成二音 klō(dh)z: 衣服。(無單數) |
| mulberry [mʌl'berɪ 或 mʌl'bi:]: 桑。——mulberry tree: 桑樹。 | 3. iron [i'ən, 注意 r 無音]: 熨, 燙。 |
| 2. clothes [kləʊðz, 或如舊式的讀 | 4. mend [mɛnd]: 補。 |
| | 6. dust [dʌst]: 灰塵; 掃(塵)。 |
| | 7. scrub [skrʌb]: 擦, 揩。 |
| | 8. church [tʃɜ:ʃ]: 禮拜堂。 |

講 義

(A) Here we go 的 here 並不是說“在這裏”只是一種口頭語叫人家注意我們開始一種的動作; 這用法與 go 連用, 最普遍的成語是 Here goes ~。

(B) iron 原來的意義是“鐵”, 借用以指“熨斗”, 再轉爲“熨燙”。

(C) 不消說這詩當然是兒童遊戲時唱的, 一面唱, 一面跳舞, 或洗衣服, 等等。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 31—35):

1. In our office there are a manager, an assistant manager, a cashier, an accountant, a stenographer, a Chinese secretary, a salesman, a buyer, a shipping clerk, a general assistant, and a messenger boy.
2. What are your office hours?
3. At what hour in the morning do you have to report for work?
4. How long an interval do you have at noon?
5. At what hour do you leave the office?
6. What is it you want? Do you want to buy something from us? I'll take you to our salesman then.
7. No, I have something to sell, I'll see your buyer.
8. If your manager is engaged, I'll see your cashier first, it's something about the account.
9. Here is my card, take me to your assistant manager, I have an appointment with him.
10. What are the three systems of long measures which we use in a piece-goods store?
11. And what are the three systems of weight measures that we use in a grocery?
12. In long measure, as in weight measure, the three systems that we use are: the old Chinese system, the English system, and the new Chinese system which is also called the Market Standard system.
13. How many inches are equal to one foot?
14. I must ask first whether you mean the English inches and foot, or the Chinese.
15. How many feet are equal to one yard?

16. One English foot equals how many inches in Chinese long measure?
17. One English foot is equal to about nine inches of the old Chinese system, while three Market Standard feet are equal to one metre, and one metre is equivalent to thirty-nine point three seven (39.37) English inches.
18. One Market Standard catty is equal to ~~500~~ hundred grammes, i.e. two catties are equal to one kilogramme, which is equal to two point two naught five (2.205) pounds.
19. There are sixteen ounces to one catty, both in the old and the new Chinese systems, and there are sixteen ounces, too, to one pound.
20. Butter, fresh or in tins?
21. Fresh, half a pound, please.
22. Give me some corn beef, half-pound tin, please.
23. Here it is, madam.
24. Half pound, gross or net?
25. Gross, madam, here is another brand, one tin is quarter of a pound net.
26. Is this all silk (wool)?
27. Yes, it is guaranteed all silk (wool).
28. Won't you have (take) a look at our new stock?
29. You want some with stripes? Certainly we have them. Here they are.
30. Look, how nice the design looks!
31. She washes her clothes and then irons them.
32. Sweep the floor before you dust the table and chairs.
33. Sister, won't you mend this for me?

34. Come on, let's scrub the floor together.
 35. We pass by a mulberry tree as we go to the church.

* * *

LESSON 36

Prepositions, Conjunctions and Interjections

(1) When we want to mention many things together, or to say many things about them, we have to join them with another class of words, the **conjunction** [kən'jʌŋk'shən].

(2) For example, in this sentence—*Johnny and I study and play together, because we are good friends*—the first *and* joins a noun and a pronoun which stand for two persons, *John y* and *I*; the second *and* joins two verbs which express two actions, *study* and *play*; while *because* joins the two statements [stā'timənts], *Johnny and I study and play together*, and *we are good friends*. (3) Other examples of conjunctions are: *or, nor, yet, but, however, therefore* [dhār'fɔr], *as, if, though, unless, that, than*, etc.

(4) When we need a word to show the relation [rīiā'shən] between [bīt'wē'n] words, we use a **preposition** [prēp'əzīsh'ən]. (5) **Prepositions** are used with nouns or pronouns, which come after them and are called their **objects**, to form **prepositional** [prēp'əzīsh'ənəl] phrases to modify other words. (6) **Prepositional phrases** are used as **adjectives** or **adverbs** and are called **adjective** or **adverbial** [əd'ver'bīəl] phrases. (7) This example—*The boy in the black shirt runs for his life*—has two prepositions *in* and *for*. (8) *In* shows the relation between the *boy* and the *shirt*; *for* shows the relation between *runs* and *life*. (9) *Shirt* is the **object**

of *in*; *the* and *black* are two adjectives modifying the object *shirt*; and *in the black shirt* is a prepositional phrase used as an adjective to modify the noun *boy* and is called an adjective phrase. (10) *Life* is the object of *for*; *his* is a possessive pronoun modifying the noun *life*; and *for his life* is a prepositional phrase used as an adverb and is called an adverbial phrase. (11) Other examples of prepositions are: *of*, *at*, *by*, *after*, *inside*, *below*, *into*, *on*, *over*, *above*, *before*, *till*, *until*, *from*, *off*, *to*, *except*, *excepting*, *besides*, *under*, etc.

(12) When we have some strong feeling [*fē'liŋ*] to express, we use interjections [*in'təjɛk'shənz*], as: *alas* [*ələh'ɔ*], *aha* [*ah-hah'*], *ah* [*ah*], *hallo*, *oh* [*ō*], etc.

譯 文

(1) 我們要在一起提及許多的事物或說許多關於它們的話時，我們須用另一類的字來連絡，即“連續詞”。(2) 例如，在——王納與我在一起讀書與遊戲，因為我們是好朋友——這一句中，第一個“與”字把那代表“王納”和“我”的一個名詞與一個代名詞連絡起來，第二個“與”字連絡那兩個表明“讀書”與“遊戲”行為的動詞，而“因為”連絡“王納與我在一起讀書與遊戲”和“我們是好朋友”這兩個陳述。(3) 連續詞的別的例是：或是，也不是，然而，但是，雖然，所以，既然，如果，雖則，除非，這樣，比，等等。

(4) 我們需要一字以指明字與字間的關係時，我們用介詞。(5) 介詞與在它們後面而叫做它們的“賓語”之名詞或代名詞合用，成為“介詞短語”，用以變動他字的意義。(6) “介詞短語”是當做“形容詞”或“狀詞”用的，也叫做“形容詞短語”或“狀詞短語”。(7) 這個例——那在黑襯衣中的童子，為他

的生命而跑——中有兩個介詞，“在～中”與“爲”。(8)“在～中”指明“童子”與“襯衣”間的關係；“爲”指明“跑”與“他的生命”的關係。(9)“襯衣”是“在～中”的“賓語”，“那”與“黑”是兩個“形容詞”形容着那“賓語”，“在那黑襯衣中的”是一個“介詞短語”當做一個“形容詞”用，形容名詞“童子”，而叫做一個“形容詞短語”。(10)“生命”是“爲”的“賓語”，“他的”是一個“所有格代名詞”形容着那名詞“生命”而“爲他的生命”是一個“介詞短語”當做一個“狀詞”用，而叫做一個“狀詞短語”。(11)介詞的其他的例是：的，在，由，在後，在內，在下，入內，在上，在上，在上，以前（或在前），至，直至，自，不相連接，以，除非，除非，此外，在下面，等等。

(12) 我們有強烈的情緒以表現時，我們用“感歎詞”，如：壞了，哈哈，吓，喂，啊，等等。

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. conjunction [kənjʊŋkʃən, 注意 nk=ngk]: 連詞, 連詞。
<i>stand for</i> : 代表。 | əneɪ]: 屬於介詞的。 |
| 2. statement [stə'tmeɪnt]: 記載。 | 6. a:verbial [ə'vɜ:bɪəl]: 屬於狀詞的。 |
| 3. therefore [dɪ'hæ'fɔ:]: 所以。 | 12. feeling [fē'lɪŋ]: 感覺, 情感。 |
| 4. relation [rɪ'leɪʃən]: 關係。 | interjection : [ɪn'tɛjəkʃən]: 感歎詞。 |
| 4. relation between [bɪ'twɛ'n]: 兩者之間。 | alas [ə'lɑ:s]: 壞了, 事情不好了。 |
| preposition [prɛp'ɔ:zɪʃən]: 介詞。 | aha [ah-hah]: 哈哈, 原來如此! |
| 5. prepositional [prɔ:p'ɔ:zɪʃən]: | ah [ah]: 吓。 |
| | oh [o:]: 啊。 |

講 義

(A) 在普通的用法上, *between* 只指在兩人或兩件東西之間, *among* 在兩個以上的人或物之中間。

(B) 法載第 5 句各詞在英文句中與在中文句中位置之不同。

(C) 第7句舉例 The boy in the black shirt runs for his life = “那個穿着黑襯衣的童子逃命”；但因為這一來和原句的結構不同了，所以爲文法分析的關係，才不得已如譯文中照字面那樣翻譯。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	iron	ironed [i'ænd]	ironed
	mend	mended [mɛn'dɪd]	mended
	scrub	scrubbed [skrʌbd]	scrubbed

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
mulberry	mulberries	ball	balls
tree	trees	brand	brands
church	churches [-tʃɪz]	blind	blinds
conjunction	conjunctions	blanket	blankets
statement	statements	bed-cover	bed-covers
relation	relations	barber	barbers
preposition	prepositions	barbershop	barbershops
feeling	feelings	beard	beards
interjection	interjections	bock	bocks
building	buildings	boy	boys

【翻譯】	他很不好。	這並不貴，就其品質而論。
	伊爲要看你而來。	這什麼價錢？

LESSON 37

How Words are Classified

(1) We have learnt [lɔ:nt] something about the nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, conjunctions,

prepositions, and interjections. (2) These are the eight parts of speech, i.e., eight classes of words. (3) However, there are many words which may be used as more than one part of speech. (4) We shall give below a few examples.

A Noun used as an Adjective

- (5) This house is built of (6) And it has *brick* walls.
bricks.

A Noun used as a Verb

- (7) Here is a *stamp* (8) *Stamp* [stāmp] it here,
[stāmp]. please.

An Adjective used as a Noun

- (9) He is a *good* man. (10) The *good* are always
happy.

An Adjective used as a Pronoun

- (11) *That* pen is good. (12) *That* is a good pen.

An Adjective used as an Adverb

- (13) This is an *early* flower. (14) He comes *early*

A Preposition used as a Noun

- (15) I am *outside* the house. (16) The *outside* of the house
looks very nice.

A Preposition used as an Adjective

- (17) The table-cloth [tā'bl- (18) The dinner was *over*.
klōth] is *over* the table.

A Preposition used as an Adverb

- (19) The pencil is *in* the drawer. (20) Come *in*.

An Adverb used as a Noun

- (21) I had it *once*. (22) *Once* is enough for me.

An Adverb used as a Conjunction

- (23) He walked *before*. (24) He walked a long way *before* he found this house.

(25) So we see a word has to be classified according [ə'kɔ:rdɪŋ] to how it is used.

譯 文

- (1) 我們已學到些關於名詞,代名詞,云謂詞,形容詞,狀詞,連續詞,介詞,和感歎詞的東西。(2) 這些是八品詞,就是八類的字。(3) 雖然,有許多的字可當(比一類較多的)多類的詞用。(4) 在這裏我們將舉幾個例:

名詞作形容詞用

- (5) 這間房子是用磚蓋成的。(6) 而它有磚牆。

名詞作云謂詞用

- (7) 這裏有一張郵票。(8) 請把郵票黏在這裏。

形容詞作名詞用

- (9) 他是一個好人。(10) 好人時常是快樂的。

形容詞作代名詞用

- (11) 那枝筆很好。 (12) 那是一枝好筆。

形容詞作狀詞用

- (13) 這是一朵早花。 (14) 他來的早。

介詞作名詞用

- (15) 我在這屋子之外。 (16) 這屋子的外邊看起來很好看。

介詞作形容詞用

- (17) 那檯布在桌上。 (18) 正餐已完。

介詞作狀詞用

- (19) 那鉛筆在抽斗裏。 (20) 裏邊來罷。

狀詞作名詞用

- (21) 一回我有了它。 (22) 於我，一回已夠了。

狀詞作連續詞用

- (23) 他在前邊走路。 (24) 在他找到這屋子以前，他走了很長的路。

(25) 所以我們看出一個字須依它如何使用而被類分。

生 字

1. learnt [lɛrnt]: 學。(learn 的過去時制及過去分詞之又一式)
 7. stamp [stæmp]: 郵票。(名詞)
 8. stamp [stæmp]: 黏貼票。(動詞)

25. according [ə'kɔ:diŋ]: 依照
 17. table-cloth [tə'bl-kloθ]: 桌布。 (常與 to 連用)

講 義

(A) 把形容詞當名詞用時須把 the 字冠在這形容詞之前。這形容詞常常當複數的名詞用，當然也可當單數用。

(B) 第 21 句的“一回”實等於“從前”。

(C) 第 22 句乃是表示不滿意的話，一回已够了，我不願有第二回同樣的經驗。

(D) 狀詞 according 之後必須有 as 或 to，而與 to 連用為較常見。

練 習

【背誦】 Once is enough for me.
 Give me a five-cent stamp, please.
 Change the table-cloth.

現在時制		過去時制	過去分詞	
stamp		stamped [-pt]	stamp	stamped
單 數	複 數		單 數	複 數
stamp	stamps		clerk	clerks
table-cloth	table-cloths [-dɪz]		colour	colours
ceremony	ceremonies		change	changes
ceiling	ceilings		case	cases
comb	combs [kɒmz]		class	classes

【翻譯】 依這花樣做一個。 你看見誰？
 好人(用形容詞代)很快活。 哪一隻球是好的？

LESSON 38

Phrases

(1) Phrases may be used as any parts of speech, as in the following sentences,

Noun Phrases: (2) *The Kaiping [ki'miŋ] Book Company [kūm'pəni]* is very enterprising [ɛn'tɛprɪzɪŋ]. (3) *The Anfu Club [ah'nfoō-klüb]* exists [ɪgzɪsts'] no more.

Pronoun Phrases: (4) We love *one another*. (5) They hate *each other*.

Verb Phrases: (6) I *have done it*. (7) He *is coming*. (8) The window *is broken* [brō'kn].

Adjective Phrases: (9) A man of *courage* [kūr'ɪj] does not shrink [shrɪŋk] from difficulty [dɪf'ɪkəlti]. (10) The bottom [bɒt'əm] of *the tub* [tüb] fell off [fɛl ɔf].

Adverbial Phrases: (11) We go home *in the evening*. (12) We receive our salaries *by the end of each month*. (13) He came here *once in a while*.

Conjunctive [kənjŋk'ti:] Phrases: (14) I walk slowly *so that* I may see more things. (15) You study *in order that* you may get higher salary. (16) *Either* you or I must go.

Preposition Phrases: (17) I do not go out today *because* of your coming to see me. (18) He did it *in spite* [spɪt] of all sorts [sɔrts] of difficulties.

Interjection Phrases: (19) *Good gracious* [grā'shes], what have you done? (20) *Oh my*, what shall I do?

譯 文

(1) 短語可當任何一類詞用，如下列諸句。

名詞短語：(2) 開明書店是很進取的。(3) 安福俱樂部已不存在。

代名詞短語：(4) 我們彼此相愛。(5) 他們彼此相恨。

去謂詞短語：(6) 我做完了這事。(7) 他來了。(8) 窗門打破了。

形容詞短語: (9) 勇敢的人不見難而退。(10) 桶底脫去了。

狀詞短語: (11) 我們晚上回家。(12) 我們於每月底領到我們的薪水。(13) 他有時偶然一來。

連續詞短語: (14) 我慢慢地走,以使我可看較多的東西。(15) 你讀書爲的要使你可以得到較高的薪水。(16) 或你或我必須去。

介詞短語: (17) 今天我不出去,因爲你來看我。(18) 儘管有一切的困難,他仍做它。

感歎詞短語: (19) 啊呀,你做出什麼事來! (20) 啊啊,我將做些什麼呢?

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. company [kəm'pənɪ]: 公司。 | 13. once in a while [wʌns ɪn ə wʰaɪl]: (一次在一個時期之中), 有時,偶然一次。 [這裏 |
| enterprising [ɛn'tɒprɪzɪŋ]: 進取的。 | whɪl]: (一次在一個時期之中), 有時,偶然一次。 [這裏 |
| 3. club [klʌb]: 俱樂部。 [在。 | 14. so that [sə'dæt]: 以使,使,使 |
| exist [ɪgzɪst', 或, ɛ_zɪst']: 存 | 15. in order that [ɪn ɔr'ə dæt]: |
| 4. one another [wʌn ə_ʌn'ðə]: 彼此,互相。 | 爲要使。 |
| 8. break [breɪk]: 打碎。(過去分詞 broken [brəʊ'kn]) | 17. because of [bɪkəʊz'əv]: 因爲。 |
| 9. courage [kʊr'ɪdʒ]: 勇敢。 | 18. spite [spɪt]: 惡意,妨害。—in spite of [ɪn spɪt'əv]: (在~的妨礙之中),儘管有~的妨礙仍然。 |
| shrink [ʃrɪŋk]: 縮,縮回。 | sort [sɔrt]: 種類。 |
| difficulty [dɪf'ɪkəlti]: 困難。 | 19. gracious [grə'siəs]: 慈悲的。 |
| 10. bottom [bɒtəm]: 底。 [難關。 | good gracious [gʊd, ɪ grə' he]: (好的,慈悲的),天哪,啊呀。 [啊! |
| tub [tʌb]: 桶,盆。 [脫去。 | 20. oh my: 吓,我的(天哪)! 啊啊! 啊 |
| fall off [fɔl ɔf]: (從下離開)。 | |

講 義

(A) shrink 常與 from 連用。

(B) so that 與 in order that 意義相同。

(C) *In order that* 與 *in order to* 意義也同，不過有這個分別：*in order that* 的後邊須有一個子句(有主語與述語)，而 *in order to* 之後邊則只須一個無限式的云謂詞，及與這云謂詞有關係的字。

(D) *sort* 一字最常用於 *all sorts of* 這短語中。

(E) *Good gracious! Oh my!* 都是英國美國的人呼喊上帝的感歎詞，如我們呼天一樣，只是末了沒有把“上帝”(God [gɒd]) 的名呼出來。

(F) 注意 *preposition phrases* 是幾個介詞合成的，*prepositional phrases* 是介詞與名詞合成的；前者仍是當介詞用，後者是當形容詞或狀詞用。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	exist	existed [-tɪd]	existed
	shrink	shrank [-kt]	shrunk

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
company	companies	cupboard	cupboards
club	clubs	chest	chests
difficulty	difficulties	complement	complements
bottom	bottoms	case	cases [-sɪz]
tub	tubs	customer	customers
sort	sorts	cloth	cloths
candle	candles	cat	cats
condition	conditions	chestnut	chestnuts
curtain	curtains	claw	claws
calligraph	calligraphs	end	ends

【翻譯】 我偶一為之。

雖有種種難關，你仍須盡你所能的做。

他這樣做是為要使你快樂。

天哪，你叫我怎樣做才好？

我們學文法，以使我們可造正確的句子。

LESSON 39

The Thirsty Fox and the Grapes

(1) A Fox [fōks] was walking in a hot summer day. (2) He was thirsty, when he came into an orchard [ōr'ched], where a vine [vīn] was. (3) He saw a bunch [būnch] of grapes [grāps] hanging down from the vine.

(4) "Ah," said he, "how nice these grapes are, just ripe [jüst rīp] enough. (5) I will get them, they are just the thing to quench [kwēnch] my thirst [thīrst]."

(6) So he took a few steps [stēps] back, ran a little and jumped, but he just missed them. (7) He tried again, and again he missed them.

8. What kind of fruit [frōot] did the Fox see in the orchard?
9. He saw a bunch of grapes, hanging down from the vine.
10. Did he try to get the grapes? What for?
11. He tried to get the grapes to quench his thirst, for the day was hot and he was thirsty.
12. How did he try to get them, and did he succeed?
13. He ran and then jumped to get them, but he failed [fāld], so far as we know.
14. Did he succeed finally?
15. We don't know yet, however, we shall see in the next lesson if he succeeded.

譯 文

(1) 一個炎暑的夏日，一隻狐狸在走路。(2) 他很口渴，走入一個果園中，在那裏有一顆葡萄樹。(3) 他看見一串葡萄吊在葡萄樹上，

(4) “吓，”他說，“這些葡萄何等的好呀，熟得恰好。(5) 我要採下它們，它們正是可以解我口渴的東西”。

(6) 所以他退後幾步，跑了少許的路而跳，但是他恰好不中。

(7) 他再試而再不中。

8. 在那果園中，那狐狸看見那一種的果子？
9. 他看見一串葡萄吊在葡萄樹上。
10. 他試要採那葡萄嗎？要做什麼用？
11. 他試要採那些葡萄以解渴，因為那天很熱而他口渴[得很]。
12. 他怎樣地試要採牠們，又他成功了嗎？
13. 他跑然後跳以採它們，但是他失敗，至我們所知道的一點為
14. 他終於成功了麼？ [止。
15. 我們還不知道，雖然在下一課我們將看見他是否成功。

生 字

- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. fox [föks, k 只呼口氣]: 狐狸。 | 6 step [stöp]: 步。 |
| 2. orchard [ör'ched]: 果園。 | 8. fruit [frööt, i 無音]: 果子。 |
| vine [vin]: 葡萄樹。 | 10 what for? [whöt fôr]: (什麼為?) 為什麼? 做什麼用處? 為何? |
| 3. bunch [tünch]: 串, 珠。 | 13. fail [fäl]: 失敗。 |
| grape [gräp]: 葡萄。 | so far [sö fār]: (這樣遠), 至此一點為止。 |
| 4 just [jüst]: 恰好。 | 15. if [if]: 是否。 |
| 5. quench [kwänch]: 止(渴)。 | |
| thirst [thirst]: 口渴。(名詞) | |

講 義

(A) 這隻狐狸，在故事中，我們當是一個人，能說話的，所以它的代名詞用“他”而不用“它”。再，故事中主人公的名字(如本課中 fox)常以大寫字母起首。

(B) 注意: vine 是“葡萄樹”，而 grapes 是“葡萄”(果子)。

(C) take a few steps bac 直譯為“取幾步向後”，意即“退後幾步”。

(D) 注意: What for? = Why?

(E) if 在第 15 句中的用法等於 whether; 但是在這意義中的 if 只有兩個用法: (1) 如第 15 句; (2) 如第 15 句而加 or not 於其末 (if he succeeded or not), 但是不能仿 whether or not he succeeded 而說 if or not he succeeded.

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制 quench fail	過去時制 quenched [-cht] failed [-ld]	過去分詞 quenched failed
------	------------------------	---	----------------------------

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
orchard	orchards	fox	foxes [-sɪz]
vine	vines	fish	fish, fishes [-ʃɪz]
grape	grapes	frame	frames
step	steps	flower	flowers
fruit	fruits	field	fields
expression	expressions	form	forms
example	examples	flame	flames

【翻譯】	你要看誰?	他是不是一個好人?
	你看誰的書?	伊要的什麼?

LESSON 40

Is the Grape Sour?

- (1) He tried again and again, but he never succeeded.
 (2) Finally he was forced to give it up.
 (3) This was what he said, as he walked away: (4) "I don't quite care [kəɪ] for grapes anyway, besides, I am sure, these grapes must be sour [saʊr]."

(5) So nowadays [now'edāz] when one says a thing is no good simply [sīm'plî] because he can't get it, we often say: (6) "The grape is sour to him, that's all." (7) Sometimes in a case like this, we ask: (8) "Is it really no good, or is the grape sour?"

9. Did the Fox succeed in getting the grapes?
10. No, he didn't, he was forced to go away without any of these grapes to quench his thirst.
11. What did he say about them?
12. He said that he didn't care for them and that he was sure that they must be sour.
13. Did he speak the truth [trōōth]?
14. Surely [shoor'lî] not, when he wanted to get the grapes and thought he could get them, he said they were ripe and were just the thing to quench his thirst.
15. Why then did he say that he didn't care for them, and that they were sour?
16. He said it because he couldn't get them.
17. When you fail to get something, don't say *the grapes are sour*.

譯 文

(1) 他試了又試,但是他永不成功。(2) 終於他被迫作罷。
 (3) 這是他走開的時所說的話:(4) “無論如何我不十分愛葡萄,還有一層,我確知道這些葡萄一定是酸的。”

(5) 所以現在如果一個人說一件東西不好,只因為他不能得到它,我們常常說:(6) “葡萄於他是酸的,(這是一切)原來如此而已。”(7) 在一個像這樣的實例中,我們有時間道:(8) “那真的不好呢,還是葡萄是酸的?”

9. 狐狸採葡萄[這一件事]成功了麼?
10. 不,他不[成功],他被迫離此他去,沒有這些葡萄的任何幾粒以解他的口渴。
11. 關於它們,他說什麼?
12. 他說他不愛它們,又他確知道這些葡萄是酸的。
13. 他說出真情麼?
14. 一定地不,在他要採那些葡萄而想他能夠取到它們時,他說它們熟得恰好,正是來解他口渴的東西。
15. 那麼爲什麼他說他不愛它們,又[說]它們是酸的呢?
16. 他說這個因爲他不能得到它們。
17. 你不能得到某物時,勿說葡萄是酸的。

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>4. <i>care</i> [kār]: 注意。——<i>care for</i>: [kār.ə]: (注意爲~),愛,好。</p> <p>5. <i>nowadays</i> [now'ə.dāz]: 現在,當今之世。</p> | <p><i>simply</i> [sīm'pli]: 簡單地, 祇,僅。</p> <p>13. <i>truth</i> [trūθ]: 真情,真理。</p> <p>14. <i>surely</i> [shoor'li]: 一定的,無可疑議地。</p> |
|---|--|

講 義

(A) 把第 4 句拿來與第 12, 15 兩句,或是把上課第 4, 5 兩句拿來與本課第 14 句細細的比較,我們可以看出: (1) 在直接引用句(上課第 4 和 5 兩句與本課第 4 句)中的云謂詞是現在時制,而在間接引用句(本課第 12 和 14, 15 諸句)云謂詞跟着主語的云謂詞變成過去時制; (2) 直接引用句中的第一人稱,一到間接引用句中,便變成與間接引用句的主語同一人稱; (3) 第三人稱不變; (4) 於間接引用句之前須加 *ibat* 字。由直接引用句變到間接引用句的規則當然不止這四點;但是現在把這四點已够了。

(B) 但是注意第 12 句(間接引用句) *they must be sour* 的 *must be* 與第 4 句(直接引用句)的 *must be* 絕對相同。

(C) 這狐狸明明說了兩句話而第 16 句卻用 *it* 不用 *them*, 因爲是把他所說一切的話包括起來;

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 36—40):

1. We join words or statements together with **conjunctions**.
2. We show the relation of one word to another with **prepositions**.
3. A **preposition** takes a **noun** or **pronoun** as its **object**.
4. A **preposition** and its **object** form a **prepositional phrase**.
5. A **prepositional phrase** is used as an **adverb** or an **adjective**, therefore it is also called an **adverbial** or an **adjective phrase** according to how it is used.
6. We express our strong feelings with **interjections**.
7. **Nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, conjunctions, prepositions, and interjections** are the eight parts of speech.
8. A word is classified as any of the eight parts of speech according to how it is used, for some word may be used as many parts of speech.
9. **Phrases** may be used as any part of speech.
10. Can you tell the difference between a **preposition phrase** and a **prepositional phrase**?
11. Yes, a **preposition phrase** is a group of words used as a *preposition*, while a **prepositional phrase** is a **preposition** with its **object** used as *an adjective* or *an adverb*.
12. What do you mean by "sour grapes"?
13. Don't you know its meaning? I'll tell you a story then.
14. Once a fox was walking in a hot summer day, and he was thirsty,

15. He came into an orchard and saw a bunch of grapes hanging down from a vine.
16. He said to himself that those grapes were just ripe enough and were just the thing to quench his thirst.
17. Therefore, he tried to get them.
18. He took a few steps back, ran, and jumped for them: but he missed them.
19. He tried again and again, but he failed and was forced to go away without any of the grasp.
20. He then said that those grapes were sour.
21. Do you get the meaning of "sour grapes" now?
22. Yes, I understand it now, thank you.

* * *

LESSON 41

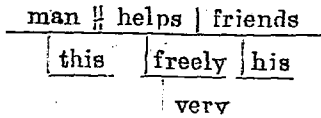
Analyzing a Sentence

(1) This is the way to analyse [än'əlī] a sentence with the help of diagram [dī'egrām]. (2) First, pick out the subject and the predicate of the sentence. (3) Next, draw [draw] a horizontal line [hör'izōn'tl lin] and draw above it two vertical [vēr'ikl] lines. (4) Then place the subject on the left, and the predicate on the right, of the vertical lines. (5) Take this sentence—She sleeps—and you have this diagram: she || s'leeps.

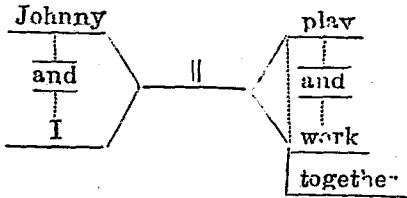
(6) The complement of a verb is placed on the same line after the verb, and separated [sēp'ərātīd] from it by one line. (7) This is the diagram of this sentence—He eats rice: he || eats | rice (8) Here is the diagram of another sentence—She is good: she | is \ good (9) The

word *good* modifies the subject, that is why the line that separates it from the verb is inclined [ɪnklɪ'nd] toward [təʊd] the subject.

(10) A modifier is always placed below the word which it modifies, and is connected to it with a line. (11) Here is an example: This man helps his friends very freely [frɪ'li].



(12) When we have a compound [kɔm'pəʊnd] subject (i.e., a subject consisting [kənsɪs'tɪŋ] of two or more nouns or pronouns) or a compound predicate (i.e., a predicate consisting of two or more verbs or verb phrases), or both, like this sentence—Johnny and I play and work together—we analyse it this way:



譯 文

(1) 這是以線圖的幫助分析句子的方法。(2) 首先揀出那句子的主語與述語。(3) 其次畫一條橫線再畫兩條直線在它上面。(4) 然後放主語於那兩條直線之左旁，又置述語於右旁。(5) 採這個句子——伊麗登——你就有這個線圖：(圖見正文，不復舉，以下同)。

(6) 一個云謂詞的補足語是放在同一條線上, 在云謂詞之後, 而被一線分開於云謂詞。(7) 這是這句子——他喫飯——的線圖。(8) 這裏有另一句——伊很好——的線圖。(9) 這“好”字形容着主語, 所以那[條]隔開他與云謂詞的線是斜向那主語的。

(10) 那“變動者”總是放在[那意義]被它所變動的字之下, 而被一條線連於這字。(11) 這裏有一個例——此人大量地幫助他的朋友。

(12) 我們有一個複合主語(就是一個含有兩個或更多的名詞或代名詞的主語)或是一個複合述語(就是一個含有兩個或更多的云謂詞或云謂詞短語的述語), 或兩者皆備時, 如這一句——壬納與我一同工作與遊戲——我們這樣地分析它。

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. analyse [ˈænəˈlɪz]: 分析。
diagram [dɪˈeɪrəm]: 線圖。</p> <p>3. draw [draʊ]: 繪圖。
horizontal [ˌhɒrɪˈzɒntl]: 地平線的, 橫的。
line [laɪn]: 線。
vertical [vɜːˈtɪkl]: 垂直的。</p> <p>6. separate [səˈpeɪt]: 分開, 隔開。(云謂詞)</p> | <p>9. incline [ɪnˈklaɪn]: 傾斜。
toward [təʊəd, 或 təɪ, ɪn-
wɔːd, twɔːd, tɔːwɔːd]: 向</p> <p>11. freely [friːli]: 自由的, 不拘束的, 大量的。</p> <p>12. compound [kəmˈpaʊnd]: 複雜的。(形容詞)
consist [kənˈsɪst]: 含有, 包括。
——consist of: 含有, 合~而成。</p> |
|---|---|

講 義

(A) 第 4 句是 place the subject on the left of the vertical lines and the predicate on the right of the vertical lines. 一句之簡, 注意 left 與後邊的點號。

(B) 第 5 句終於 If you take this sentence—She sleeps—you have this diagram. 這種句子頗常見, 特別在談話時。

(C) 注意: 第 11 句的 very 是變自 freely 的, 所以放在 freely 之下。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	care	cared	ca ed
	analyse	analyse d	analysed
	draw	drew [drōō]	drawn [drawn]
	sep arate	separated	separated
	incline	inclined	inclined
	consist	consist ed	consisted

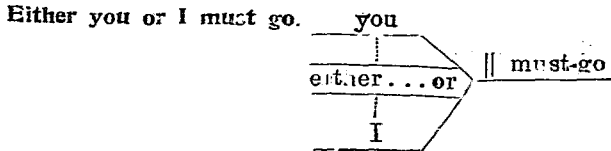
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
digram	diagrams	farmer	farmers
line	lines	fortune	fortunes
function	functions	fan	fans
truth	truths [-ths, 或 dhz]	fool	fools
favour	favours	way	ways

- 【翻譯】** 你好嗎？ 我很好。
 你將於下星期六回家嗎？
 他不是一個中國人嗎？
 你們不懂我的英文嗎？

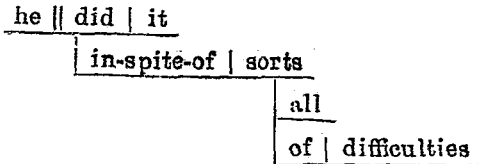
LESSON 42

Pr. positional Phr ses

(1) In analysing a prepositional phrase, we must separate the preposition from its object, as we do in separating the transitive verb from its object. (2) All other kinds of phrases are, however, to be treated [trə'ti:] as single [sɪŋ'gl] words, and the words in a single phrase are to be joined with a hyphen [hi'fən] or hyphens. (3) Let us take,



He did it in spite of all sorts of difficulties.



Good gracious, what have you done?

good-gracious | ? you || have-done | what

(6) An interjection has no grammatical connection [grə-mā 'i:kəl kəŋk'ʌbən] with the sentence in which it appears [ə, ɛr'z], so we place it beside [bɪsɪ'd] the diagram of the sentence.

(7) When a part of a sentence is understood, we have to supply [səplɪ'] it in the diagram. (8) This is the diagram of Come here:

(you) come
here

(9) And this is the diagram of I will buy you a book:

I will-buy book
(for) you a

譯 文

(1) 分析一個含有介詞的短語時，我們（分開介詞自它的賓語）把介詞與它的賓語分開，如我們之分開他動云謂詞與它的賓

語一樣。(2) 其他各種的短語即須(被待如)當做單字,而一個短語中的字須用連字號連起來。(3) 讓我們自第三十八課中取一句作例。——

(4) 讓我們再分析幾個自那課[取來的例]。—— (5) 嚴格地說,只有第一個線圖是對的,但是“已不”當做一個短語[用]是極常見的,所以我們可以當它(如)是一個字,如第二個線圖。(6) 感歎詞與它自身所在的句沒有文法上的關聯,所以我們放它在那句的線圖旁邊。

(7) 如果一句的一部分是略去了,我們須(供給它)把它補出來,在線圖中。(8) 這是“Come here”的線圖。—— (9) 這是“I will buy you a book”的線圖。——

生 字

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 2. treat [trɛt]: 處理,待遇。 | 或 -k]: 文法的,屬於文法的,合於文法的。 |
| 3. single [sɪŋ'g:l]: 單的,獨一的。 | connection [kə.nɛk'shən]: 接連關係。 |
| hyphen [hɪ'fən, 或 hɪ'fɑ]: 連字號(-)。 | appear [ə'pɛr]: 實現,出現。 |
| 5. strictly [strikt'lɪ]: 嚴格地。 | beside [ɪ'saɪ'd]: 在旁,在~之旁。 |
| correct [kə'rekt]: 對的,不錯。 | supply [sə'plɪ]: 供給。 |
| 6. grammatical [ˌɡræ.mə'tɪkəl, | |

講 義

(A) single words 的 single 既為“單一的”而 words 又用複數,好像不語,其實這只等於許多的單字。

(B) strictly speaking 的 speaking 是現在分詞當做狀語用。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	treat	treated [-tɪd]	treated
	supply	supplied [-ɪ'd]	supplied

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
hyphen	hyphens	harm	harms
connection	connections	hole	holes
glass	glasses (玻璃杯)	handle	handles
guest	guests	hand-mirror	hand-mirrors
guide	guides	instance	instances
group	groups	kitchen	kitchens
hall	halls	kettle	kettles

【翻譯】 你上星期六不是在你叔父家裏嗎？ 是，我上星期六不在他家裏。

我不可以到樓上去嗎？ 是的，你不可到樓上去，你須停留在樓下。

LESSON 43

They Killed a Deer

(1) Once there was a hunt [hünt] in a forest [förfist].

(2) A lion [li'en], a fox, a jackal [jäk'awl], and a wolf [wöolf] were the hunters [hün'töz]. (3) They hunted [hün'tid] all day long, and finally killed [kild] one deer [där]. (4) Then they began to divide the game [gām] of their hunt.

(5) "Divide the deer into four parts," commanded [kəmah'did] the Lion. (6) So the Fox, the Jackal and the Wolf skinned [skind] the deer, dressed [dröst] it, and divided it into four portions [pür'shənz], and then presented [prizen'tid] them to the Lion.

7. In the above story, who were the hunters, and where d'd they hunt?

8. The hunters were a lion, a fox, a jackal, and a wolf, and they hunted in a forest.
9. When did they hunt?
10. They hunted one day, long ago.
11. What was their game?
12. They hunted down and killed a deer, which was their game.
13. How did they divide their game, and who divided it?
14. At the Lion's command, the Fox, the Jackal, and the Wolf skinned the deer, dressed it, and divided it into four portions.
15. Did each of them get a portion?
16. That we shall see in the next lesson.

譯 文

(1) 一回在樹林中有一次狩獵。(2) 那些獵人是一隻獅子,一隻狐狸,一隻胡狼與一隻豺狼。(3) 他們狩獵了終日,終於殺死了一隻鹿。(4) 那時他們起手分他們狩獵的野味。

(5) “把那鹿分成四份,”獅子命令着。(6) 於是那狐狸,胡狼,與豺狼剝那鹿的皮,整理它,把它分成四份,然後呈獻它們於獅子之前。

7. 在上邊的故事裏誰是獵人,又他們在什麼地方打獵?
8. 那些獵人是一隻獅子,一隻狐狸,一隻胡狼,與一隻豺狼,他們在一個樹林中打獵。
9. 他們在什麼時候打獵?
10. 有一天,很久以前他們打獵。
11. 他們的獵味是什麼?
12. 他們獵得而殺死一隻鹿,這鹿是他們的獵味。

13. 他們怎樣地分他們的獵物,又誰分它?
14. 在獅子命令之下,那狐狸,胡狼,與豺狼剝那鹿的皮,整理它,又分它為四份。
15. 他們每人都得到一份嗎?
16. 那個我們將於下一課裏看出。

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. hunt [hʌnt]: 狩獵。(作云謂詞或名詞用)
forest [fɔːrɪst, 美國人讀 fɔːr-ɛst]: 樹林。 2. lion [lɪʃən]: 獅子。
jackal [dʒæk/awl]: 胡狼。
wolf [wʊlf]: 豺狼。
hunter [hʌnɪtə]: 獵人。 3. all da / long: 全日。
killed [kɪlɪd]: 殺死, 弄死。
deer [dɪr]: 鹿。 | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. game [gæm]: 獵物。 5. command [kə.nəh'nd, 英國人讀 kɔmənd]: 命令。(作名詞或云謂詞用)——<i>at the lion's command</i>: 在獅子的命令[之下]。
skin [skɪn]: 皮;(轉為)剝皮。
dress [drɛs]: 整理(用於宰殺禽獸時,指取出其中肝,肺,心,腸,諸臟腑,而清理之及同類的工作)。
portion [pɔːrʃən]: 份。
present [prɪzənt]: 呈獻,陳列。 |
|--|---|

講 義

(A) 第 6 句中,指鹿的代名詞,先用 *it*, 後用 *them*, 似乎不一貫; 但! 這用法的理由如下: 在未分成四份之時只是一隻鹿,所以代名詞用 *it*; 已分成四份之後用 *them*, 以指這四份的鹿肉。

(B) 第 1) 句含有兩個詢問句; 前後兩子句云謂詞構造的不同是由於主語的不同。第一子句的主語是“人稱代名詞”, 所以在詢問句云謂詞的構成一如普通的詢問句; 第二個子句的主語是“詢問代名詞”, 所以其云謂詞的構造一如“敘述句”。

(C) *at ~'s command* 亦可作 *at the command of ~*, 意義全同。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	hunt	hunted	hunted
	command	commanded	commanded

skin	skinned	skinned	skinned
dress	dressed [-st]	dressed	dressed
present	presented	presented	presented
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
latch	latches	mat	mats
life	lives [livz]	mattress	mattresses
lace	laces [-siz]	meaning	meanings
mug	mugs [-gz]	maid	maids [-dz]
mirror	mirrors	monkey	monkeys [-kiz]
modifier	modifiers	wolf	wolves [-vz]

【翻譯】 我可以讀這本書嗎？ 是，你可以讀。 不，你不可讀。
 我必須到辦公所去嗎？ 是，你須。 不，你不須去，如果你不愛。
 你必須做這些練習嗎？ 我可做，也可不做，它們。

LESSON 44

The Lion's Share

(1) The Lion then stepped forward [stēpt fōr'wəd] to divide the meat [mēt]. (2) He stood in front of the meat and said: "(3) I am King of Beasts [bēsts], so the first portion belongs [bīlōngz'] to me. (4) The second quarter is mine, because I am your judge [jū]. (5) As a partner [pārt'nə] in the hunt, I am entitled [īntī'tld] to the third portion. (6) As for the last quarter, I should like to see who dares [dārz] touch [tūç] it."

(7) One by one the partners of the hunt went away, leaving the King of Beasts to enjoy his "lion's share

[sl.ār].” (8) Going away with his tail [tāl] between his legs, the Fox growled [grow'd] to himself: (9) “One may share the labour [lā'bə], but not the reward [rīwōl'd], of the great [grāt].”

- 10 Who got the meat, why?
11. The Lion got all the meat, because he was their king, their judge and their partner of the hunt, which entitled him to three portions of the meat, and finally because he was the strongest among them and no one dared to touch the last portion of the meat.
12. Do you think what the fox said is true? Is it true that one may share the labour of the great, but not the reward?
- 13 Yes, it is true in most cases, but not always.
14. Do you understand the phrase “lion's share” now?
15. Yes, it means all.
16. No, it usually means only the largest and best part.

譯 文

(1) 那時獅子走上來分那肉。(2) 他立在肉的面前，說道：“(3) 我是獸王，所以第一份是屬於我的。(4) 第二份是我的，因為我是你們的審判官。(5) 我以狩獵夥伴[的資格]，應該享有第三份。(6) 至於末一份(四分之一)，我倒要看看誰敢摸一摸它。”

(7) 那些狩獵的人員一個個走開了，留下那獸王去享受他的“獅子的領額”。(8) 那狐狸夾着他的尾巴(在他的足中)走開，猩猩對自己說：(9) “一個人[只]可與大人物們分工作，但不能分到報酬。”

10. 誰得到那肉，為什麼緣故?

11. 那獅子得到一切的肉，因為他是他們的王，他們的密判官與他們狩獵中的夥伴，這是使他享有那肉的三份，而最後因為他是他們內中最有力的，沒有一個敢去摸一摸那肉的最末一份。
12. 你以為那狐狸所說的是真的嗎？真的一個人〔只〕可以分擔大人物們的工作而分不到報酬嗎？
13. 是，在大多數的實例中，那是真的，但不是永遠如此。
14. 現在你曉得“獅子的份額”這短語的意義了嗎？
15. 曉得，那指一切。
16. 不對，平常祇指那最大與最好的部分。

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. step [stɛp]: 踏, 走, (云謂詞)
forward [fɔːrwɔːd]: 向前。
meat [mi:t]: 肉。</p> <p>3. beast [bi:st]: 野獸。
belong [bi:lɔŋ]: 屬於。</p> <p>4. judge [ʤʌdʒ]: 審判官。</p> <p>5. as [æz]: 做, 當做~而論。
partner [pɑːtnə]: 合夥者, 夥伴。
entitle [ɪnɪˈtɪl, 或 ɔn-]: 應有, 應享; 使應享有。</p> <p>6. as for: 至於。</p> | <p>dare [dɛə]: 敢</p> <p>touch [tʊtʃ]: 摸, 觸。</p> <p>7. share [ʃeə]: 份額 (名詞); 分得 (云謂詞)。</p> <p>8. tail [teɪl]: 尾巴。
growl [grɔʊl]: 作狼嗥聲, 咆哮; 喃喃不平。
labour, 或 labor [ləˈɔː]: 工, 工作。
reward [rɪwɔːd]: 報酬。
great [grɛt]: 大, 偉大; (借用指) 大人物們。</p> |
|---|---|

講 義

- (A) King of Beasts, 因為是複號, 所以兩個重要的字都用大寫字母起首。
- (B) 第 9 句與第 12 的附句, 意義全同, 雖則句的構法不同。
- (C) labour 與 labor 音同義亦同; 前者在英國人喜常用後一拼法, 英國人喜歡用前一拼法。
- (D) 注意: “一切的肉”不是 all meat, 是 all the meat.

(E) 本單第 14 句 the phrase “lion’s share”, 與第 42 課第 5 句 the phrase “no more”, 的 lion’s share 與 no more 都是把 phrase 所指的重述一遍使較明瞭。這種的構造在文法上叫做“複述法”。當然“複述法”不只限於 phrase 字之後, 也不一定須用“引號”來標明它。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	step	stepped	stepped
	belong	belonged	belonged
	entitle	entitled	entitled
	dare	dared	dared
	share	shared	shared
	touch	touched	touched
	growl	growled	growled

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
meat	meats	object	objects
beast	beasts	owner	owners
judge	judges [-jɪz]	pig	pigs
partner	partners	plate	plates
tail	tails	pane	panes
reward	rewards	porch	porches
neighbour	neighbours	purpose	purposes
noun	nouns	person	persons
orange	oranges [-jɪz]	ox	oxen [ɒk's , 或 ɒk'sən]
observation	observations		

【翻譯】 你有沒有一枝筆？ 是，我有。
 他將要於月底回家，是不是？ 不，他將於後天回家。
 你不愛(願意)同他回去嗎？ 不，我愛
 你下午要出去買東西嗎？ 不，我下午不出去。

LESSON 45

"Little Shepherd, Come, Play your Flute"

(I)

Little shepherd [slǝp'əd], come, play your flute [flōt], (1)

The sheep's [shēps] in the meadow [mǎi'ō], the kid's (2)

[kīdz] near [nǝr] the brook [brōok],

What! is this the way you tend [tënd] your sheep, (3)

You Sleepy Head, fast asleep [fahst əslǝ'p]? (4)

(II)

1. Who has seen the wind? (5)

Neither I nor you; (6)

But when the leaves [lǝvz] hang trembling [hǎng (7)

trǝm'blīng],

The wind is passing through. (8)

2. Who has seen the wind? (9)

Neither you nor I; (10)

But when the trees bow [bow] down their heads, (11)

The wind is passing by. (12)

譯 文

(一)

小牧人呵，來，來吹你的笛， (1)

羶羊在草地上，小羊在溪邊， (2)

怎麼！這就是你牧羊的法子嗎， (3)

你這瞌睡蟲，深睡着？ (4)

(二)

1. 誰會看見風呢? (5)
 我不會,你也不會; (6)
 但樹葉飄然下垂時, (7)
 風是正在穿過。 (8)
2. 誰會看見風呢? (9)
 我不會,你也不會; (10)
 但樹木低下頭來時, (11)
 風是正從[他們]旁邊經過。 (12)

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. little [lɪtəl]: 小,小的。 | near [nɛər]: 近。 |
| shepherd [ʃɛp'hɔ:l, h 無音]:
牧羊的人。 | brook [brʊk]: 小溪,小河。 |
| play [plɑ:]: (與樂器合用時) 吹,
彈,奏。 | 3. tend [tɛnd]: 看守,照顧。 |
| flute [flʊt]: 笛。 [形] | 4. fast [fɑst]: 深(音睡眠)。 |
| 2. sheep [ʃɛp]: 綿羊。(單複數同) | asleep [əslɛp]: 在睡着。 |
| meadow [mɛd'əʊ]: 田野,草場。 | 7. leaf [li:f]: 葉子。(複數 leaves
[li:vz]) |
| kid [kɪd]: 小羊。(sheep's 與
kid's 在此處不是作“綿羊的”
與“小羊的”解,乃 sheep is 與
kid is 之簡) | hang [hɑŋ]: 下垂。 |
| | tremble [trɛm'bl]: 震動,戰慄。
(現在分詞 trembling [trɛmbl-
ɪŋ]) |
| | 11. bow [bəʊ]: 彎 鞠躬。(云謂調) |

講 義

- (A) 第 3 行的 what 是一個感歎詞,不是詢問代名詞。
 (B) You Sleepy Head, 是直接叫小牧人的,但在文法上叫做“稱呼名格”,
 與全句的構造沒有文法上的關係。
 (C) fast asleep 兩字可說是複述 the way 所含的意義,也可說是形容着
 Sleepy Head 的。
 (D) 第 6 與第 10 兩行都是簡句,把整個述句 have seen the wind 省去。

~~REVIEW~~

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 41—45):

1. When we analyse a sentence, we separate the subject from the predicate, and in the predicate we separate the complement from the predicate verb, we also separate the modifiers from the words which they modify.
2. When we analyse a sentence with the help of diagram, we use lines to separate these different parts of a sentence and also to show their relations and connections.
3. One day four hunters—a lion, a fox, a jackal, and a wolf—hunted in a forest.
4. They hunted all day long, and finally hunted down and killed one deer.
5. At the Lion's command, the three other partners of the hunt skinned the game of their hunt, dressed it, and divided it into four portions, which they then presented to the Lion.
6. The Lion stepped forward and stood in front of the meat.
7. He said that he was the King of Beasts, so he ought to have the first quarter; he was their judge, therefore he was entitled to the second share; and as a partner of the hunt, he was entitled to the third portion.
8. "As for the last quarter," he said, "I should like to see who dares touch it."
9. So, one by one, the partners of the hunt went away.
10. The fox, going away with his tail between his legs, growled to himself: "One may share the labour, but not the reward, of the great."

11. From this story we get the phrase, "the lion's share", which means the largest and best part.
12. Once there was a little shepherd, who could play flute very well.
13. One day he took the sheep and the kid to the meadow, and fell asleep himself.
14. Then came his friend who wanted to play with him.
15. His friend came and saw the sheep in the meadow and the kid near the brook.
16. His friend called out to him:
"Little shepherd, come, play your flute,
The sheep's in the meadow, the kid's near the
brook."
17. His friend t'en found out that he was sleeping, and cried to him:
"What! is this t'e way you tend your sheep,
You Sleepy Head, fast as eep?"
18. Nobody has seen the wind, but we know the wind is passing, by the trembling leaves or the bowing heads of the trees.

* * *

LESSON 46

A Bird in Hand is Worth Two in Bush

(1) Once upon a time there was a fisherman [fish/o-men]. (2) One day he went to fish [fish], and from early

in the morning till late in the afternoon, he caught nothing.

(3) However, he caught, at last, one small fish.

(4) The Fish begged the fisherman for its life. (5) "I am small now," it said, "if you want to sell [səl] me, you can't get much, and if you wish to eat me, I am hardly [hā'dli] more than one mouthful [mow'thfūl]. (6) So please let me go. (7) By and by I shall become a big fish, then it will be worth [wérth] while either to sell me or to cook me for food. (8) Please do let me go now."

(9) This was the fisherman's answer: (10) "But where shall I find you, when you have grown up? (11) No, as the old saying goes, 'A bird [bīrd] in hand is worth two in bush [bōōsh],' I will not let you go."

12. What is a fisherman, do you know?
13. Isn't a fisherman one who catches fish for his living?
14. Does a fisherman always catch fish?
15. He always tries to, but he does not always succeed [səksē'd].
16. What happened [hāp'ənd] to the fisherman in this story?
17. He fished all day long, and at last he caught only one small fish.
18. What happened then?
19. The small fish begged the fisherman to let it go.
20. For what reason [rē'zn]?
21. There were two reasons. (22) The real [rēl] reason was that it wanted to save [sāv] its life. (23) But the reason given to the fisherman was that it was small and was not worth while to keep either for food or for sale [sāl]. (24) It, therefore, asked the fisherman to

- let it go, and to wait until it should become a big fish, when it would be worth while to have it either for sale or for food.
25. Did the fisherman listen to him?
26. No, he asked the fish where he could catch it again.
27. What did he mean by a *bird in hand is worth two in bush*?
28. That saying means what we have now, however little, is better than what we may or may not get later, however much.

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>once upon a time</i> [wʊnʌpən'taɪm]: (一回在一個時期之上), 有一回。 | 11. <i>old saying</i> [ɔld sə'ɪŋ]: (舊話), 俗語。—— <i>as the old saying goes</i> : (依俗語[講]去), 俗云。 |
| fisherman [fɪʃ'mən]: 漁人。 | <i>bird</i> [bɜ:d]: 鳥。 |
| 2. <i>fish</i> [fɪʃ]: 魚; 捕魚。(名詞或動詞) | <i>bush</i> [bʊʃ]: 灌木。 [成功。] |
| 4. <i>beg for cn.'s life</i> : 求餘命。 | 15. <i>succeed</i> [sək'sɛd, k 只呼口氣]: |
| 5. <i>sell</i> [sɛl]: 賣。 | 16. <i>happen</i> [hæp'n]: 發生, 遭逢。 |
| <i>hardly</i> [hɑ:dli]: 未必。 | 20. <i>reason</i> [rɛ'zɔn]: 理由。—— <i>for what reason?</i> 爲什麼理由? 有什麼理由? |
| <i>mouthful</i> [mɔw'tʃfʊl]: 滿口, 一口。 [久。] | 22. <i>real</i> [ri'ol]: 真的。 [理由?] |
| 7. <i>by and by</i> [bi ən bi]: 少頃, 不久。 | <i>save</i> [sæv]: 救。 |
| <i>worth</i> [wɜ:θ]: 值, 值得。—— | 23. <i>sale</i> [sæl]: 賣 (名詞)。—— <i>for sale</i> : 出賣。 [爲。] |
| <i>worth while</i> [wɜ:θ wɪl]: 值得。 | 27. <i>mean by</i> ~: 這~的意義, 這~意。 |
| <i>for food</i> : 當食物。 [得。] | 28. <i>however little</i> : 無論如何的少。 |
| 10. <i>grown up</i> : 長成, 成年。 | <i>however much</i> : 無論如何的多。 |

講 義

(A) *worth* 是形容詞, 但只可當述語形容詞用, 如 *It is worth while*。又 *worth* 與 *while* 之間可插入 *your, my, his* 等代名詞, 如 *It is worth your while* ~。

(B) happen 之後須有 to 字,才可接賓語,如: What happened then? 但 What happened to him?

(C) the reason given to ~ 的 given 乃是過去分詞當形容詞用。雖然 the reason given to ~ 實等於 the reason [which was] given to ~, 不過此種構造法是極平常的,分析全句時可以不必把刪去的部分補足,而只把 given 當做一個形容詞已够。

(D) 仔細比較 5, 6, 7, 8 諸句與第 23, 24 兩句, 又第 10 句與第 23 句, 便可以看出: 前後諸句所說的話意義同, 而格式不同。前者叫直接引用語, 後者叫間接引用語, 而其不同處有三點: (1) 把間接引用句放在“說”字之後, 而在其前加一 that 字。(2) 人稱變了; (3) 時制也變了。直接引用語中的第一人稱一到間接引用句, 便變成與主句的主語同一人稱; 直接引用句的現在時制變成過去時制。第 5 句 I am small 到第 23 句變成 it was small; 又第 7 句的 I shall ~ it will 變成 it should ~ it would。由於 it will 變成 it would, 可以看出直接引用句中的第三人稱與間接引用句中仍舊是第三人稱, 不變。

(E) 第 24 句中的 it should ~ it would, 在文法上叫做“過去的將來時制”。這名詞——過去的將來時制——初看去似乎不通; 但如果說明它的用法, 便可以看出其中並沒有矛盾的地方。例如, 自我們故事中的小魚在求那漁人時看去, 它長大時當然屬於將來, 但那個“將來”自我們現在看去, 不是已經過去了嗎? 在此種用法中, 只須把 shall 變成 should, will 變成 would, 人稱的關係可以不管。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	bow	bowed	bowed
	hang	hung [hŭng]	hung
	play	played	played
	tend	tended	tended
	tremble	trembled	trembled
	fish	fished [-shŭ]	fished [-shŭ]
	sell	sold [sōld]	sold [sōld]
	succeed	succeeded	succeeded
	happen	happened	happened
	save	saved	saved

單數	複數	單數	複數
brook	brooks	flute	flutes
kid	kids	leaf	leaves
meadow	meadows	shepherd	shepherds
sheep	sheep	fisherman	fishermen
mouthful	mouthfuls	bird	birds

【造句】 用以下各字或短語造句：

- | | |
|---------------|---------------------|
| (1) happen | (3) for what reason |
| (2) by and by | (4) all day long |

LESSON 47

The Squirrel and the Lion

(1) Once there was a lion in a certain forest. (2) He employed [ɪm'plɔɪ'd] a squirrel [skwɪr'əl] to work for him. (3) The Squirrel was to work for the Lion as long as the Lion wanted him and was to get a wagon-load [wəg'ən-lɒd] of nuts [nʌts] for the work.

(4) So the Squirrel worked, and worked, and worked. (5) He worked from early in the morning till late in the night. (6) When he had nothing in particular to do, he was sent [sɛnt] to gather [gə'dh'ə] nuts. (7) He saw other squirrels eating nuts, but he—well, he was sent to gather nuts, and he was a faithful [fə'thɪfʊl] worker. (8) He always hoped that, as he was such a faithful and good worker, the Lion would soon release [rɪlɪ's] him from the work and given him his due [dū]. (9) Ah, he thought,

when that time comes, I shall enjoy my nuts—a wagon-load of nuts!

(10) But the Lion did not do so until the Squirrel was old and weak and could not do his work well. (11) When the Lion released him, he was, as was agreed upon, given a wagon-load of large, fine nuts. (12) But he had lost his teeth. (13) He could not crack [kräk] the nuts, and, of course, could not enjoy them.

14. The Squirrel was fair [fär] to the Lion, but was the Lion fair to the Squirrel?
15. Yes, so far as the agreement [əgrə'mənt] is concerned [kənsə'nd], but it wasn't [wöz'n] quite fair to the Squirrel.
16. Why?
17. Because according to the agreement the Lion could keep the Squirrel working as long as he wished, and because the Lion did give him one wagon-load of nuts, we must say that he did live up to the agreement.
18. Since the Lion lived up to the agreement, how then was it not quite fair to the Squirrel?
19. Because the agreement itself [itsəlf] was not quite fair, the Squirrel had to work as long as the Lion wanted him, and the Lion didn't have to pay him as much as he wanted.

生 字

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 2. employ [ɪmploɪ', ɔɪm-]: 僱, 僱用。 | 車, 滿一車。 |
| squirrel [skwɪ'ɜ:]: 松鼠。 | nut [nʊt]: 樹子(如栗子等)。 |
| 3. as long as~: 如~一樣長久。 | 6. send [sɛnd]: 送, 使。——was |
| wagon-load [wəg'ən-lɔ:]: 一 | sent: 被送。 |
| | gather [gædh'ə]: 採集, 收集, 拾。 |

7. **faithful** [fai'θfəl]: 忠誠的。 **concern** [kənsɛn'a]: 關涉。
 8. **release** [ri:li:s]: 釋放。 —so far as ~ is concerned:
 due [dju:]: 應得之款。 只關於~,關於~的話。
 11. **as was agreed up n**: 如約。 **wasn't** [wɔz'nt, 或 wɔzn', 除
 12. **crack** [kræk]: 使破裂。 非在句末或特別重讀時, t 音不讀
 14. **fair** [faiə]: 公道的。 出]: was not 之簡。
 15. **agreement** [əgre'mənt]: 合 17. **live up to**: 履行某種義務。
 同,條約,條件。 19. **itself** [itsɛlf]: 它自身。

講 義

(A) was (或 were, am, are, is) to 含有過去的將來時制(或將來時制)的意味,又含有應盡 to 後所邊敘述的行爲之職務的意義。

(B) 第7句的下半句 but he—well, . . . worker 的意思是: “但是他呢? 吓,他是被派來拾樹子的,而他是一個忠誠的工作者。”

(C) 第9句雖沒有直接引號,但實際上即等於直接引用的句子。

(D) as was agreed (11) 與 as he wanted (19) 的 as 是代名詞帶有連帶它的子句與主句之效用。在前一子句之中, as 是 was agreed 的主語,而在後一子句中,它是 wanted 的賓語。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	employ	employed	employed
	send	sent	sent
	gather	gathered	gathered
	release	released	released
	crack	cracked	cracked
	concern	concerned	concerned

單數	複數	單數	複數
squirrel	squirrels	wagon-load	wagon-loads
nut	nuts	due	dues
agreement	agreements	kitchen	kitchens
tooth	teeth	itself	themselves

king	kings	kettle	kettles
latch	latches	life	lives
lace	laces [-sɪz]	mug	mugs
mirror	mirrors	modifier	modifiers
mind	minds	mat	mats

【造句】 將以下的字及短語各造成一詢問句：

- | | |
|-------------|-------------------|
| (1) release | (3) as long as |
| (2) due | (4) as was agreed |

LESSON 48

Naming One's Relations (I)

(1) A Chinese meets an Englishman. (2) The Chinese asks the Englishman: "Would you kindly explain to me your system of naming [nā'mǐng] one's relations?" (3) The Englishman answers: "Why, certainly, our system is much simpler than yours, which is very hard for us to understand." (4) The Chinese urges [ŭ'jǐz] him to explain it at once. (5) And the Englishman explains it this way.

"(6) My father's brothers are my uncles, and their wives [wǐvz], my aunts. (7) My mother's brothers are my uncles too, and their wives are also my aunts.

"(8) My father's sisters are my aunts, and their husbands [hūz'həndz], my uncles. (9) My mother's sisters are also my aunts, and their husbands, my uncles.

“(10) My brothers and I are my uncles' and aunts' nephews [nĕf'ūz]. (11) My sisters are their nieces [nĕ'siz].

“(12) My father or mother is my parent [pār'ent], I am their child [chīld], so is my sister. (13) My parents' fathers and mothers are my grandfathers [grän'fah'dhez] and grandmothers [grän'mūdh'əz]. (14) My grandparents' [grā:'pār'ents] fathers and mothers are my great grandfathers and great grandmothers. (15) I am my grandparents' grandson [grän'sūn], my sister, their granddaughter [gran'daw'tə], and we are their grandchildren [grän'chīl'drən]. (16) I am my great grandparents' great grandson, my sister, their great granddaughter, and we are their great grandchildren.”

(17) The Chinese says, “That is confusing [kən'fū'z-īng], very confusing, indeed. (18) Here is our system. (19) See, it's so much more accurate [āk'ūrīt].

“(20) My father's elder brother is my *po-fu* (伯父), his younger brother is my *shu-fu* (叔父). (21) My *po-fu*'s wife is my *po-mu* (伯母), and my *shu-fu*'s wife, my *shu-mu* (叔母). (22) My mother's brothers are my *chiu-fu* (舅父), and their wives are my *chiu-mu* (舅母), or *chin* (姪).

“(23) My father's sisters are my *ku-mu* (姑母), and their husbands, my *ku-chang* (姑丈), or *ku-fu* (姑夫). (24) My mother's sisters are my *i-mu* (姨母), and their husbands are my *i-chang* (姨丈), or *i-fu* (姨夫).

“(25) I am a *chih-erh* (姪兒) of my *po-fu*, *po-mu*, *shu-fu*, *shu-mu*, *ku-mu*, and *ku-chang*, and my sisters are their *chih-nu* (姪女). (26) I am a *wai-sheng* (外甥) of my *chiu-fu*, *chiu-mu*, *i-mu*, and *i-chang*, and my sisters are their *wai-sheng-nu* (外甥女).

“(27) My father's father and mother are my *chu-fu* (祖父) and *chu-mu* (祖母), while my mother's father and mother are my *wai chu-fu* (外祖父) and *wai chu-mu* (外祖母), etc. (28) My sister and I are our *chu-fu* and *chu-mu's* *shien-tse* (孫子) and our *wai chu-fu* and *wai chu-mu's* *wai-shen* (外孫)

“(29) True, the Chinese system is more complex and harder to understand, but, you see, it is so much more accurate.”

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. name [nām]: 命名, 稱呼。 | grandparents [ʔrǎn ^h pāi ^h -
əits]: 祖父母, 外祖父母。 |
| one's [wūnz]: 人的, 任何人的。 | great grandfather: 曾祖父, 外
曾祖父。 [外曾祖母。 |
| relat'on [rǎlǎ' ^h ət]: 關係; (轉
爲) 有關係的人, 即親戚。—— <i>nam-
ing one's relations</i> : 親戚間的稱 | great grandmother: 曾祖母,
15. grandson [grǎn'sūn]: 孫, 外孫。 |
| 4. urge [ʔɿj]: 催促, 慫恿。 [呼。 | granddaughter [grǎn'daw' ^h -
tə]: 孫女, 外孫女。 |
| 6. wives [wivz]: wife 的複數。 | grandchildren [grǎn'chil' ^h -
drən]: 孫 外孫 (不分男女)。 |
| 8. husband [hūz'tənd]: 丈夫。 | 16. great grandparents: 曾祖父
母, 外曾祖父母。 |
| 10. nephew [ǝ 'ū, 或 nǝv'ū]: 姪
兒, 外甥。 | great grandson: 曾孫。 |
| 11. niece [nēs]: 姪女, 外甥女。 | great granddaughter: 曾孫女。 |
| 12. parent [pǎi'ənt]: 父或母。 | 17. confusing [kən'fuz'zɿŋ]: 混亂。 |
| child [chī.ǎ]: 子或女。(複數
child'en [et'il'drə'ɿ]) | 19. accurate [æk'ɹɪt]: 準確。 |
| 13. grandfather [-rǎn'fǎb'dhə]:
祖父, 外祖父。 [祖母, 外祖母。 | 29. complex [kōw'plək's]: 複雜。 |
| grandmother [gran'mū.ǎl'ə]: | |

講 義

(A) 第一句裏用 a Chinese, an Englishman, 是很廣泛的說出一個中國人與一個英國人。以後便指定是第一句中所說的那個英國人與那個中國人, 所以用 the Chinese, the Englishman。這是指出事物來時普通引用 a (an) 與 the 的法子。

(B) 如果要把第 21 句 of my *chiu-fu, chiu-mu, i-mu, i-chang* 改成為 's 記號,不必每個名詞的後面加 's, 只須於末一字的後面加上 's 已够了。

(C) "True, that ~" = "It is true that ~".

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	name	named	named
	urge	urged	urged

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
relation	relations	nephew	nephews
husband	husbands	niece	nieces [-siz]
meaning	meanings	mattress	mattresses
monkey	monkeys	orange	oranges
neighbour	neighbours	maid	maids
object	objects	manger	mangers
noun	nouns	observation	observations
wife	wives	owner	owners

【造句】 用以下諸字或短語各造一句:

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| (1) considering the quality | (4) something important |
| (2) cost you | (5) in particular |
| (3) shopping | |

LESSON 49

Naming One's Relations (II)

(1) The Englishman then continues to explain the English system of naming one's relations. "(2) All my

uncles' sons and daughters are my cousins [kǔz'nz]. (3) We have first cousins, second cousins, etc. (4) My first cousins' fathers or mothers are my father's or my mother's brothers or sisters. (5) My second cousins' grandfathers or grandmothers [grǎn'fah'dhəz ôr grǎn'müdh'ez] were my grandfathers' or my grandmothers' brothers or sisters. (6) My third cousins' and my great grandfathers and great grandmothers were brothers or sisters. (7) So you see the ordinal [ôr'dīnl] numbers added to the word, cousins, shows how many generations ago the cousins' ancestors [ǎn'sistəz] were brothers and sisters."

(8) The Chinese then explains the Chinese system regarding cousin this way.

"(9) My *po-fu's* sons and my *shu-fu's* are all my *tang-hsiung-ti* (堂兄弟), or *tsung-hsiung-ti* (從兄弟) and their daughters are my *tang-tzu-mei* (堂姊妹) or *tsun-tzu-mei* (從姊妹). (10) My *ku-mu's* sons are my *ku-piao hsiung-ti* (姑表兄弟), and her daughters, my *ku-piao tzu-mei* (姑表姊妹). (11) My *i-mu's* sons are *i-piao hsiung-ti* (姨表兄弟), and her daughters are my *i-piao tzu-mei* (姨表姊妹). (12) My *ku-piao* or *i-piao hsiung-ti* are also called *chung-piao hsiung-ti* (中表兄弟), and my *ku-piao* or *i-piao tzu-mei* are also called *chung-piao tzu-mei* (中表姊妹). (13) We have a way of telling how closely related [klô'slî rīlā'tīd] the *tang-hsiung-ti* are, but we don't pay much attention [ətēn'shən] to the relations on mother's side for many generations."

(14) The Englishman further explains the English system this way. "(15) When a boy and a girl are married, they become man and wife, and the following relations obtain [əbtā'n].

(16) The man's father and mother become her father-in-law and mother-in-law respectively [fah/dhərīnlaw ən mūd'h'ərīnlaw, rīspək'tivli], and she becomes their daughter-in-law [dāw'tərīnlaw]. (17) Her husband's brothers and sisters become her brothers-in-law [brūdh'əzīnlaw] and sisters-in-law [sīs'təzīnlaw] respectively, and she herself becomes their sister-in-law [sīs'tərīnlaw]. (18) The wives of the brothers are sisters-in-law to each other.

(19) Similarly [sīr'īləli], the wife's [wifs] father and mother become his father-in-law and mother-in-law, and he becomes their son-in-law [sūn'īnlaw]; her sisters and brothers, his brothers-in-law and sisters-in-law; and he himself becomes their brother-in-law [brūdh'ərīnlaw]. (20) The husbands of the sisters are brothers-in-law to each other."

(21) The Chinese says, "Yes, that is very simple, but is rather confusing to us. (22) The husband's father and mother are the wife's *weng* (翁) and *ku* (姑) respectively, while the wife's father and mother are the husband's *yo-fu* (岳父) and *yo-mu* (岳母) respectively.

"(23) A wife should, according to the Chinese custom [kūs'təm], address [ədrēs'] her husband's brothers and sisters as her children have to address them. (24) Similarly, a husband should speak of his wife's brothers and sisters as his children have to address them. (25) That's why the wife addresses her husband's brothers as *po* or *shu*, his sisters as *ku*, while the wife's brothers and sisters are spoken of as the husband's *chiu* and *i*."

生 字

2. **cousin** [küz'n]: 中表兄弟姊妹, 或堂兄弟姊妹。
3. **first cousin**: 從兄弟姊妹, 或表兄弟姊妹。
second cousin: 再從兄弟姊妹, 或從表兄弟姊妹。
7. **ordinal** [õr'di:nl]: 循次序的。
number [nũm'hø]: 數目, 數目字。——**ordinal number**: 序數。
ancestor [ãn'sistø]: 祖先。
13. **closely** [klõ's i]: 相近地。
relate [liã't]: 關連, 使有關連。
attention [ə.ðn'si'õ i]: 注意。(名詞)——**pay attention to** ~: 注意某事。
15. **man and wife**: 夫妻。
obtain [õbtã'n]: 取得; (轉爲) 有, 通行。(此字極罕作“通行”解, 並且只在此類句中始可)
16. **father-in-law** [fah'dhərɪn-law]: 翁, 公公; 岳父, 丈人。
mother-in-law [m:ðdn'ərɪn-law]: 姑, 婆; 岳母, 丈母。
respectively [rɪspɪk'ɪvli]: 依循次序, 前者對前者, 後者對後者。
daughter-in-law [law'ərɪn-law]: 媳 媳婦。
17. **brother-in-law** [brʌðh'ə ɪn-law]: 大兄, 大弟; 內兄, 內弟, 姊丈, 妹夫; 襟弟兄。
sister-in-law [sɪs' ə. ɪnlaw]: 夫之姊妹; 妻之姊妹; 妯娌, 嫂孀, 弟婦。
18. **son-in law** [sũ 'ɪnlaw]: 婿, 女婿。
19. **similarly** [ɪm'ɪləli]: 同樣地。
should [s:ɔðd]: 應該。
22. **custom** [kũs'ʌəm]: 風俗。
address [ædrɛs]: 招呼, 稱呼。

講 義

(A) 第 9 句 and my *shu-fu's* = and my *shu fu's* sons; 這種省略句法很常看見。

(B) *respectively* 的用法值得仔細說明, 我們可取第 16 句來做例。這句話是說男人的父親與母親變成女人的爲與姑, 前者對前者, 後者對後者。祇有兩組的名詞, 每組的名詞不顯於兩個, 前後關係相對時, 始可用此字, 許多人即在只有一組的名詞時也用此字, 那是錯誤的。

(C) 關於與 *in-law* 合組所成的字的讀音應當注意這一點: *in-law* 如果是與單數的 *father* 等連合, 便與 [r] 連讀作 [-rɪn-] 音; 如果與複數的 *fathers* 連合便與 [z] 連讀作 [-zɪn-] 音。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	relate	related [-tɪd]	related
	obtain	obtained	obtained
	address	addressed [-st]	addressed

單 數

cousin
grandfather
grandmother
number
ancestor
attention
custom
father-in-law [-rɪn-]
mother-in-law
daughter-in-law
brothers-in-law
sister-in-law
son-in-law

複 數

cousins
grandfathers
grandmothers
numbers
ancestors
attentions
customs
fathers-in-law [-zɪn-]
mothers-in-law
daughters-in-law
brothers-in-law
sisters-in-law
sons-in-law

【造句】 用以下諸字及短語各造一否定句：

- | | |
|-------------|------------------|
| (1) succeed | (3) however much |
| (2) save | (4) for sale |

LESSON 50

“Mary Had a Little Lamb”

- I. Mary had a little lamb [læm], (1)
Its fleece [fiːs] was white [waɪt] as snow, (2)

- And everywhere [ɛv'riwhār] that Mary went, (3)
 The lamb was sure to go. (4)
- II. It followed her to school one day, (5)
 Which was against [əgā'nst] the rule; (6)
 It made the children [chīl'drən] laugh and play (7)
 To see the lamb in school, (8)
- III. And so the teacher [tē'chə] turned it out [tūrnd
 ɪt_ɔvt] (9)
 But still it lingered [lɪŋ'gəd] near; (10)
 And patiently [pā'shəntli] waited about, (11)
 Till Mary did appear. (12)
- IV. "Why does the lamb love [lūv] Mary so?" (13)
 The eager [ə'gə] children cry [krī]. (14)
 "Why, Mary loves the lamb, you know," (15)
 The teacher did reply [rīplī']. (16)

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. lamb [læmb, b 無音]: 小羊。</p> <p>2. fleece [flēs]: 羊毛(羊身上的毛, 或一隻羊一次剪下來的毛)。</p> <p>white [waɪt, 或 wīt]: 白。</p> <p>3. everywhere [ɛv'riwhār, 或 wār]: 各處, 不論何處。</p> <p>6. against [əgā'nst]: 違背。</p> <p>7. child [chīld]: 兒童(不分男女)。(複數 children [chīl'drən])</p> <p>9. teacher [tē'chə]: 教員。</p> | <p>turn [tūrn]: 旋轉; 使轉向。——
turn ~ out: 逐出。</p> <p>10. linger [lɪŋ'gə]: 逡巡; 留戀。</p> <p>11. patiently [pā'shəntli]: 耐心。
about [əbəv't]: 四周, 附近。</p> <p>12. appear [əpē'r]: 出現; (轉為)
13. love [lūv]: 愛。 [來到]</p> <p>14. eager [ə'gə]: 熱心的。
cry [krī]: 高聲呼叫。</p> <p>16. reply [rīplī'] 回答。</p> |
|--|--|

講 義

- (A) 第 2 行 was white as snow=was as white as snow.
 (B) 第 6 行的 which 是指第 5 行所敘述的事, 並不是指第 5 行中的任何字。

(D) 第 12 行的 did appear 與第 16 行的 did reply 並非要特別鄭重引起人家的注意，乃是因為音節的關係，而有這種的構造。

(E) 第 14 行的 cry 在時間上當然不對，但是為要與第 16 行的 reply 呼韻的關係，不得不如此用法。如果要避免這個錯誤，可把 cry 變成 cried 而把第 16 行的 did reply 變為 then replied。 「四行。

(E) 愛迪生發明留聲機器時，第一片的收音盤所收的便是本來的 1, 2, 3, 4

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 46—50)

1. A fisherman always tries to catch fish, but does not always succeed.
2. The fisherman in our story succeeded in catching only one small fish, although he worked all day long.
3. The fish begged the fisherman to let it go and to wait until it grew bigger when it would be worth while to have it either for food or for sale.
4. But the fisherman would not listen to it, he asked where he could find it again, if he should let it go then.
5. "A bird in hand is worth two in bush," he said.
6. Once a Lion employed a Squirrel to work for him, and the agreement was that the Squirrel was to work for the Lion as long as he wanted him, and when the Squirrel was released of the work, he was to be given one wagon-load of nuts.
7. The Squirrel was a faithful worker, so the Lion kept him working until he could not do his work well.
8. He was then given the wagon-load of nuts, which he had gathered when he had nothing to do; but he had lost his teeth and could not crack the nuts.
9. So far as the agreement was concerned, both lived up

- to it, but the agreement itself was not quite fair.
10. For the Squirrel had to work as long as the Lion wanted him, and the Lion did not have to pay him as much as he wanted.
 11. Here are the names of one's relations: grandparent, grandfather, grandmother; great grandparent, great grandfather, great grandmother; grandchild, grandson, granddaughter; great grandchild, great grandson, great granddaughter; parent, father, mother, uncle, aunt; child, son, daughter, nephew, niece; brother, sister, cousin, first cousin, second cousin; etc.; husband, wife; father-in-law, mother-in-law; brother-in-law, and sister-in-law.
 12. The Chinese system is more complex but accurate, while the English system, simpler but rather confusing.
 13. Mary had a little lamb, whose fleece was as white as snow.
 14. Everywhere that Mary went, the lamb was sure to go, and so it followed Mary to the school one day.
 15. The children in the school, seeing the lamb in their school, laughed so much that the teacher had to turn it out, but the lamb patiently waited for Mary.
 16. When the school was over, out came the teacher, Mary and the other children, who were surprised to see that the lamb loved Mary so much.
 17. Then the teacher told them that it was because Mary loved the lamb.
- * * *

LESSON 51

Indirect Objects

(1) We have studied one kind of object, the **direct object**, and we shall study a few more kinds of objects in this and the next lessons. (2) We shall begin with the **indirect** [in'dirɛktʃ] object.

(3) We have seen how some **transitive verb** affects two objects at the same time, as in—I buy *him* a *book*. (4) In this example, the action of buying affects two objects, *him* and *book*. (5) *Book* is directly affected by it, and is called the **direct object**, while *him* is indirectly [in'dirɛktʃli] affected by it, and is called the **indirect object**. (6) The **indirect object** may be expressed in yet another way, i.e. by making it the object of a preposition, and placing the whole prepositional phrase after the direct object, thus I buy a *book* for *him*. (7) Let's take a few more examples.

(8) I make *you* a pair of new boots [būts].

(9) I make a pair of new boots for *you*.

(10) He wrote *me* a letter.

(11) He wrote a letter to *me*.

(12) We said that **intransitive verbs** do not take objects.

(13) But there are some which do take a peculiar [pikū'lyə] kind of object, the **cognate** [kōg'nāt] object. (14) Here are a few examples. (15) She laughs a hearty *laugh*. (16) He lived a long *life*. (17) We shall fight [fi:t] a good *fight*. (18) In the above examples, *laugh*, *life*, and *fight* in italics are cognate objects.

(19) Now, let us analyse some of the examples given above.

(8) I make pair	(9) I make pair
(for) you	for you
a	a
of boots	of boots
new	new
(15) she laughs laugh	(17) we shall-fight fight
heartily	good
a	a

生 字

2. *indirect* [ɪn'dɪrɛkt^l, 或 -dɪ-, 或 -də-, 又第一第三兩音還可以同樣地重讀]: 間接的。——*indirect object*: 間接賓語。
3. *object* [ɒb'ʤɛkt]: 物, 東西, 人。
5. *indirectly* [ɪn'dɪrɛkt^llɪ, 或 -dɪ-, 或 -də-]: 間接地。
8. *boot* [bʊt]: 英人指鞋, 美人指靴。(常用複數 *boots*; “一雙鞋(靴)”=a pair of boots)
14. *peculiar* [pɪkjuː'ljə-, 或 -ləɪ-]: 奇特的, 特別的。
- cognate* [kɒg'nɑ:t]: 同源的。——*cognate object*: 同源賓語。
18. *fight* [fɪt]: 爭鬪, 爭。
19. *italics* [ɪ'tælɪks]: 意大利式(即斜體字)。

講 義

(A) *direct*, *directly*, *indirect*, *indirectly* 等四字中之 *di*, 英國人多讀 [dɪ], 亦有與美國人相同讀為 [dɪ] 的; 在我國似乎讀 [dɪ] 的人多, 至於讀 [də] 的人, 無論在那一國都很少。

(B) *object* 作“物”解時, 同時可以指人。本課中此字有時作“物”解, 有時作“賓語”解, 請注意辨別。

(C) 注意英人與英人用 *boots* 字時所指的物之不同。英人要說“靴”時於 *boots* 之前加一 *high* 字。

(D) “同源賓語”只將云謂的意義重述一遍, 有如我們中文的“打一打”, “笑一笑”。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	fight	fought [fawt]	fought
	turn	turned	turned
	linger	lingered	lingered
	appear	appeared	appeared
	cry	cried	cried
	reply	replied	replied
	love	loved	loved
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
boot(極罕用)	boots	lamb	lambs
fleece	fleeces	child	children
teacher	teachers	pig	pigs
plate	plates	pane	panes
porch	porches	pomade	pomades
purpose	purposes	practice	practices
person	persons	place	places [-sɪz]
predicate	predicates	paragraph	paragraphs
pronoun	pronouns	pleasure	pleasures
position	positions	pot	pots
picture	pictures	pie	pies
powder	powders	paw	paws

LESSON 52

Prepositional Verbs

(1) We may also make an intransitive verb take an object by placing a preposition after the verb. (2) In this way, a verb and a preposition form a phrase; the phrase is

生 字

2. *prepositional verb*: 含有介詞的
云謂詞短語。 [補足語。
prepositional complement: 介詞
4. *think over*: 細想, 熟思。
matter [mæt'ə]: 事, 事情。
6. *look after*: 照顧。
baby [bɑ'bi]: 孩子, 嬰孩。
7. *rely* [ri'lɪ]: 依賴, 靠。(常與 on
連用)
9. *adverbial object*: 狀詞賓語。
11. *mile* [mi:l]: 英里。
15. *wide* [waɪd]: 闊。
17. *analysis* [ə'næl'ɪsɪz]: 分析。
(複數 *analyses* [ə'næl'ɪsɪz])

講 義

(A) 注意: 含有介詞的云謂詞短語, 在英文中稱 *prepositional verb*, 並沒有 *phrase* 字樣。

(B) 此種構造, 自止云謂詞加介詞當他動云謂詞用, 在英文上佔有極重要的地位。讀者須隨時留地留心注意, 不可以其在文法上只佔半課而忽略之。因為能盡地運用此種構造, 則所認識之字雖少, 可說的話卻很多, 而且能很好地習用英語。

(C) 注意作狀詞用的賓語, 實非賓語, 只類似之耳, 在分析圖中樂於於狀詞。而第 14, 15 兩句的亦是狀詞, 因為它們限制着形容詞。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	rely	relied [-i'd]	relied
	study	studied	studied

單 數

object
indirect object
cognate object
part of speech
predicate nominative
penny

複 數

objects
indirect objects
cognate objects
parts of speech
predicate nominatives
{pennies (指一個一個的辨士)
{pence (指價格或總額而言)

matter	matters
prepositional verb	prepositional verbs
adverbial object	adverbial objects
analysis [-sɪs]	analyses [-səz]
baby	babies [-ɪz]
mile	miles
foreigner	foreigners

【造句】 用以下短語各造一句：

- (1) look for (3) look over (5) think over
 (2) look after (4) rely on

LESSON 53

Foreign Countries and Peoples

(1) Last night we invited [ɪnvi'tɪd] a few foreigners [fɔr'ɪneɪz] to a dinner at a restaurant [rɛs'terɒnt]. (2) Mr. Frits [frɪts] is a German [jɛr'mən], as he came from Germany [jɛr'mənɪ]. (3) There was one Indian [ɪn'dʒən], Mr. Nadir [nah'dɛr], who came from India [ɪn'dyə]. (4) There was one Filipino [fɪlɪ'pɛ'nō], who has a Spanish [spæn'ɪʃ] name, because the Philippines [fɪl'ɪpɛnz] were under the Spanish rule [rɔl] for a long time. (5) One of our guests was an Italian [ɪtəl'yən], a Mr. Mussolini [mʊsɔlɪn'i], though he has no connection whatsoever [whɔt'sɔvɛ'ə] with the great fascist leader [fæʃ'ɛst lɛ'dɛ] of Italy [ɪ'təli]. (6) There was Mr. Shaw [ʃaw] the Irishman [ɪr'ɪʃmən], who came not from Ireland [ɪr'ɛnɪ] but from England [ɪŋ'ɡlænd].

(7) My brother made a mistake [mīstāk], and introduced him to Mr. Nadir as a Scotch [skōch]. (8) He hotly protested [hōt/lī prōtēs'tīd] that he was not even a British [brīt'īsh], not to say an Englishman. (9) My brother apologized [əpōl'əjīzd] and I explained him the difference [dīf'rəns] between a British and an Englishman. (10) A British may be an Englishman, a Scotch, or a Welsh [wēlsh]. (11) I also explained to him that though no Scotch or Welsh likes people to call him an Englishman, yet we may call him a British or a Britisher [brīt'īshə].

(12) We will make a table [tā'bl] of the names of these places as well as the names of the peoples living [līv'īng] in them, we have learned so far. (13) We'll also give adjectives derived [dīrī'vd] from the names of these countries.

PLACE	PEOPLE	ADJECTIVE
China [chī'nə]	Chinese	Chinese
Europe [ūr'əp]	European	European
Great Britain [grāt brīt'ən].	British, or Brit- isher	British
England	English, or Eng- lishman	English
Scotland [skōt'lənd]	Scotch, or Scot	Scotch, or Scot- tish [skōt'īsh]
Wales [wālz]	Welsh	Welsh
Ireland	Irish [īr'īsh], or Irishman	Irish
Germany	German	German
Italy	Italian	Italian

Spain [spæn]	Spanish, or Spaniard [spæn'jəd]	Spanish
India	Indian	Indian
The United States of America [dhə ūni'tid stəts əv ʊəmə'r'ikə]	American	America
The Philippine Islands [dhə fil'i-pēn i'ləndz]	Filipino	Philippine

生 字

1. invite [inv'it]: 請。
foreigner [fɔr'ɪnə]: 外國人。
restaurant [rēs'tɔ:ŋ, 或 rēs'tɔ:rənt]: 餐館, 飯店, 酒樓。
2. Fritz [fɪts, 注意 tz 變成 ts 音]: 人名。
German [jɛr'mən]: 德國人; 德國的。
Germany [jɛr'mani]: 日耳曼。
3. Na'ir [nah'di:]: 人名。
Indian [in'dyən]: 印度人; 印度的。
India [in'dyə]: 印度。 [人。
4. Filipino [fil'ipə'nɔ:]: 菲律賓人
Spanish [spæn'ɪʃ]: 西班牙的。
Philippines [fil'ipē:z, 或 -pi:z]: 菲律賓。
rule [ru:l]: 管理, 統治。
5. Italian [i'tæl'jə:n]: 意大利人; 意大利的。 [黑尼 (人名)。
Mussolini [mʊsə'sɔ:lin'i]: 墨索利尼。
whatsoever [whət'sɔ:v'ə]: 不論為何的, 任何的。
- fascist [fæʃ'ɛst]: 法西斯, 意大利極權的 (黨員)。
leader [li'də:]: 領袖。
Italy [i'teɪli, 或 i'ti:, 如音後一音時須讀得特別清楚]: 意大利。
6. Shaw [ʃaw]: 人名。 [利。
Irishman [i'rɪʃmən, 或 i'rɪʃmən]: 愛爾蘭人。
Ireland [i'rə:nd]: 愛爾蘭。
England [ɪŋ'gʌn]: 英格蘭, 英國。
7. mistake [mɪ'steɪk]: 錯誤。
Scotch [skɔtʃ]: 蘇格蘭人; 蘇格蘭的。
8. hotly [hɔtli]: 熱烈地, 急迫地。
protest [prə'test]: 抗議。
British [brɪt'ɪʃ]: 不列顛人; 不列顛的。
9. apologize [əpɔ'lɔ:ʒɪz]: 賠不是。
difference [dɪf'rəns]: 不同處。
10. Welsh [wɛlʃ]: 威爾斯人; 威爾斯人的。 [人。
11. Britisher [brɪt'ɪʃə:]: 不列顛

12. **table** [tā'bl]: 表。
country [kü'tri]: 國。
as well as: 也,與,和。
live [līv]: 生活,活着。
13. **derive** [dīrī'v]: 得來。
China [chī'ne]: 中國。
Europe [ū'ē]: 歐洲。
Great Britain [grāt brit'ən]: 大不列顛。
Scotland [skō'tlən]: 蘇格蘭。
Scottish [skō'fīsh]: 蘇格蘭的。
- Wales** [wālz]: 威爾斯。
Spain [spān]: 西班牙。「人」。
Spaniard [spān'yei]: 西班牙人。
Irish [ī'rīsh, 或 ī'rīsh]: 愛爾蘭人;愛爾蘭的。
The United States of America [dhe ūnī'tī.d.stāt.əv əmōr'ikə]: 美洲合衆國,美國。「輿」。
island [ī'lənd, 注意 s 無音]: 島。
The Philippine Islands: 菲律賓羣島。

講 義

(A) 本課生字雖然特別多,但那些人名是不必去記它們的。又,其中有幾個字雖然有三四個字,實際上是由同一字根變出來的,所以實在並不多。

(B) 第 5 句 *one* 是主語,所以敘述謂詞用 *was*, 初學英文的人常弄錯,以為 *guests* 是主語,其實 *of the guests* 只不過是限制代名詞 *one* 的一個形容詞短語而已。

(C) 第 8 句 *not to say an Englishman* = “更不是一個英國人”。這種的句法在英文中很常見。

(D) 注意 *The United States of America*, *The Philippine Islands* 的 *the*, 為別的地名所無的,而在它們卻不可或缺。

(E) 注意 *The United States* 的 *tie* 讀 [dhe]。 *the* 字在元音之前時必須讀 [dhī] 或 [dhē], 但因為“長音 u”是輔音 [y] 與 [ū] 合成,故仍讀 [dhe]。

(F) *y* 與 *i* 的不同見第一冊第七課,第 29 頁。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	invite	invited	invited
	protest	protested	protested
	apologize	apologized	apologized
	live	lived	lived
	derived	derived	derived

單數	複數	單數	複數
restaurant	restaurants	German	Germans
Indian	Indians	Filipino	Filipinos
Italian	Italians	fascist	fascists
difference	differences	Britisher	Britishers
table	tables	country	countries
American	Americans	European	Europeans
Scot	Scots	mistake	mistakes [-ks]
Irishman	Irishmen	Chinese	Chinese
Spaniard	Spaniards	leader	leaders
【造句】	(1) for a while	(3) party	
	(2) welcome	(4) shoes	

LESSON 54

More Foreign Countries and Peoples

(1) When we were taking our dinner, we talked about France [frəns], the great French [frɛntʃ] writer. (2) We also talked about Russia [rʊʃiə] and the Russians [rʊʃiənz]. (3) From the Russians our talk drifted [drɪftɪd] to Korea [kɔriə] and Japan [jəpən], and the Koreans [kɔriənz] and the Japanese [jəpənɪz]. (4) Then we talked about France and Indo-China [ɪndəʊtʃiːnə] and the Indo-Chinese [ɪndəʊtʃiːnɪz], particularly about the Annamese [ənəˈmɛz] and Annam [ənəˈm]. (5) We also talked about Burma [bɜːmə] and the Burmese [bɜːmɪz], about Siam [siəm] and the Siamese [siəˈmɪz]. (6) We talked about Malaya [məˈlɑːjə] and the Malays [məˈlɑːz], about Java

[jäh've] and Holland [höl'end], and the Javanese [jäv'-enə'z] and the Dutch [düch], too. (7) Then we talked about the Latin [lä't'in] Americans of Central [sən'trəl] and South America, as well as the Canadians [kənä'dyənz] of Canada [kän'ədə]. (8) Finally our talk ended with Australia [awsträ'lyə] and South Africa [äf'rikə] in both of which places we find some oversea [ö'vesə'] Chinese, too, besides the Australians [awsträ'lyənz] and the South Africans [äf'rikənz].

(9) We will now make another table of the names of the places, the peoples living there, and adjectives derived from them.

PLACE	PEOPLE	ADJECTIVE
France	French, <i>or</i> Frenchman [frēnch'men]	French
Russia	Russian	Russian
Japan	Japanese	Japanese
Korea	Korean	Korean
Indo-China	Indo-Chinese	Indo-Chinese
Annam	Annamese	Annamese
Burma	Burmese	Burmese
Siam	Siamese	Siamese
Holland	Dutch	Dutch
Java	Javanese	Java, <i>or</i> Javanese
Malaya	Malay	Malay, <i>or</i> Malay- an [məlä'yən]
Canada	Canadian	Canadian
Latin America	Latin American	Latin American
Central America	Central American	Central American

South America	South American	South American
North America	North American	North American
Australia	Australian	Australian
Africa	African	African
South Africa	South African	South African

生 字

1. **France** [frɑːns]: 法蘭西(國名); 佛郎士(人名)。 [大。
French [frɛnʃ]: 法國的 法國
Russia [rʊʃiə]: 俄國。
Russian [rʊsiə]: 俄國的; 俄國人。
 3. **drift** [dri:t]: 飄流, 趨向。
Korea [kəˈeɪ]: 高麗; 朝鮮。
Japan [jəˈpæn]: 日本。
Korean [kəˈriːən]: 高麗人; 高麗的。
Japanese [jəˈpəneɪz]: 日本人; 日本的。
 4. **Indo-China** [ɪnˈdō-çiːnə]: 印度支那。
Indo-Chinese [ɪnˈdō-çiːnəɪz]: 印度支那人; 印度支那的。
Annamese [ənˈæməɪz]: 安南人; 安南的。
Annam [ənˈæm]: 安南。
 5. **Burma** [bɜːrˈmɑː]: 緬甸。
Burmese [bɜːrˈmeɪz]: 緬甸人; 緬甸的。
Siam [siːəm], 或 siˈæm]: 暹羅。
Siamese [siˈəməɪz]: 暹羅人; 暹羅的。
 6. **Malaya** [məˈlɑːjə]: 馬來亞(即馬來半島及其附近的島嶼)。
Malay [məˈləɪ]: 馬來人。
Java [jəˈvɑː]: 爪哇。
- Javanese** [jəˈvəneɪz]: 爪哇人; 爪哇的。
Holland [bɔɪˈlənd]: 荷蘭。
Dutch [dʌʃ]: 荷蘭人; 荷蘭的。
 7. **Latin** [læˈtɪn]: 拉丁(民族)的。
 ——**Latin American**: 拉丁美洲(即自美國以南的美洲中部及南美洲)的人; 拉丁美洲的。
central [sɛnˈtrəl]: 中央的, 中部的。——**Central America**: 美洲中部。
South America: 南美洲。
Canadian [kənəˈdiən]: 坎拿大人; 坎拿大的。
Canada [kənəˈdɑː]: 坎拿大。
Australia [əwˈstrɔːljə]: 澳洲。
Africa [æfˈrɪkə]: 非洲。——
South Africa: 南非洲。
oversea, 或 **overseas** [ɔːˈseɪ], 或 ɔːˈveseɪz]: 海外的。——
oversea (overseas) Chinese: 華僑。
 [洲的; 澳洲人。
Australian [əwˈstrɔːljəɪ]: 澳洲的; 澳洲人。
African [æfˈrɪkən]: 非洲的; 非洲人。——**South African**: 南非洲的; 南非洲人。 [國人。
 (表) **Frenchman** [frɛnʃmən]: 法國人。
Malayan [məˈlɑːjən]: 馬來亞人; 馬來亞的。
Latin America: 拉丁美洲。

講 義

(A) France 同時是國名又是人名，但其讀音無差異，雖然就中文的名看來，似乎不同音。

(B) Korea, Korean 註音雖作 [kə'rɔɪ'] 與 [kəri'ɔn]，實則 $\bar{\alpha} = \bar{i}\bar{\alpha}$ ，因為說 Korean 時，人們常把 [ə] 音放低，所以把它註成 [kəri'ɔn]。

(C) “拉丁美洲”這名詞似乎須加以說明。南歐的民族稱不拉丁民族，西班牙民族即其一例。美洲自美國以南從前歸屬於西班牙，至今人種、語言、文化仍是西班牙人佔優越地位，所以美國人稱其地為拉丁美洲，其人民為拉丁美洲人。

(D) 形容詞 oversea 與 cross-seas 同義，用法亦同，並不是單數與複數的關係，因為形容詞，除了 this, that 複數作 there, those 外，不因單數或複數而變其字形。

(E) 民族形容詞前加 the (如第 6 句 the Dutch) 指全國的人民，若指一個或數個荷蘭人則用 Dutchman, Dutchmen。注意：Chinese, Japanese, Indo-Chinese, Annamese, Burmese, Siamese, Javanese 等字單數複數同形；Irishman, Frenchman, Dutchman 等字變複數時，只將 -man 改為 -men，讀音相同；Russian, Korean, American, Canadian, Australia, African, Scot, Spaniard, German, Malay 等字變複數時加 -s。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	drift	drifted [-tɪd]	drifted
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
Australian	Australians	African	Africans
question	questions	roof	roofs [-fs]
robin	robins	rule	rules
riddle	riddles	razor	razors

【造句】 用以下的字及短語各造一句：

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| (1) all day long | (4) cat's-paw |
| (2) briskly | (5) compensate |
| (3) stand on ceremony | |

LESSON 55

Foreign Peoples and Languages

(1) We learned in the last two lessons, the names of many places. (2) Each place has one name, which cannot, generally speaking, be used for another place. (3) The name of a person also cannot, generally speaking, be used for some other person. (4) The name of some thing also cannot be used for another thing, e.g. [ə'jəʊ], the Great Wall, or the Grand Canal [grɑːn'kənəl]. (5) Such a **noun**, i.e. a **noun** used for only one particular person, place, or thing, is called a **proper** [pɹɔːpə] **noun**. (6) A **noun** that is the name of one class of things is called a **common noun**, e.g. ink [ɪŋk], eraser [ɪ'æzə], etc. (7) In other words, a **common noun** is the name of a group of things, which are of the same nature [nə'tʃə].

(8) A **proper noun** always begins with a **capital letter** [kæp'ɪtəl lɛtə], while a **common noun** begins with a **small letter**. (9) However, sometimes a **common noun** begins with a **capital letter** too. (10) The names of the peoples [pɛ'pəlz] derived from the names of the countries are sometimes **proper nouns** and sometimes **common nouns**. (11) When such a name is used as the name of the people as a whole, it denotes [dɪnə't] one particular people, hence it is a **proper noun**. (12) But when it is used to denote any individuals [ɪn'dɪvɪd'ʊəlz] of that particular people it is a name common to any individuals in that group, so it is a **common noun**. (13) In the latter case, though it is a **common noun**, it begins with a **capital letter** too.

(14) The language [ˈæŋɡlɪʃ] used by the people is also a proper noun. (15) Here is a list [lɪst].

People	Language	People	Language
Chinese	Chinese	Russian(s)	Russian
European peoples	the European languages	Japanese	Japanese
English	} English	Korean(s)	Korean
Scotch		Indo-Chinese	{ Indo-Chinese
Welsh			{ French
Irish		Annamese	Annamese
Australian(s)		Burmese	Burmese
American(s)		Dutch	Dutch
Filipino(s)		Javanese	{ Dutch
Spanish	} Spanish		{ Malay
Latin American(s)		Malay(s)	{ English
German(s)	German		{ Malay
Italian(s)	Italian	Gandian(s)	{ English
Indian(s)	Hindustani		{ French
French	French	African(s)	the African languages
		Siamese	Siamese

(16) The adjectives derived from proper nouns are called **proper adjectives**, and they begin with **capital letters** too.

生 字

2. *generally speaking*: 依普通情境而講。
4. *e.g.* (乃拉丁字 *exempli gratia*

之簡,但讀作 [ɪˈɡʌl], 或 [fəˈrɪɡ-zəhˈmplɪ]): 例如。
the Great Wall: 長城。

- canal [kə'næl/]: 人工造成的河。
the Grand Canal: [ðə grænd kənæl/]: 運河。
5. *such a noun*: 一個這種的名詞。
proper [prɒp/ə]: 固有的, 獨有的。——*proper noun*: 專有名詞。
6. *common noun*: 通用名詞。
ink [ɪŋk]: 墨水。
eraser [ɪrə'zə]: (擦字的) 橡皮。
7. *nature* [nə'tʃ.ə]: 性質。
8. *capital letter* [kæpɪ'tl lɪtʃə]: 大寫字母。
small letter: 小寫字母。
10. *people* [pi:'pl]: 人民; 民族。
11. *denote* [dɪnə'ti]: 指。
12. *individual* [ɪn'dɪvɪdʒ'uəl]: 或 i.'dɪvɪj'ʃəl]: 個人。 [文字。
14. *language* [læŋg'wɪʃ]: 語言。
15. *list* [lɪst]: 單, 目錄。
- (表) *European languages, the*: 歐洲各國的語言文字。
German: 德語, 德文。
Italian: 意大利語, 意大利文。
Hindustani [hɪn'dʊstɑn'i, 或 -tɑh'nɪ]: 印度語言文字。
Spanish: 西班牙語言文字。
French: 法國語言文字。
Russian: 俄國語言文字。
Japanese: 日本語言文字。
Korean: 高麗語言文字。
Indo-Chinese: 印度支那的語言文字。
Annamese: 安南語言文字。
Burmese: 緬甸語言文字。
Dutch: 荷蘭語言文字。
Malay: 馬來語言文字。
African languages, the: 非洲各民族語言文字。
Siamese: 暹羅語言文字。

講 義

(A) 嚴格地講, 有的人名或地名是相同的, 但這是罕有的事, 所以我們應依普通的情形而講。

(B) 注意: *the Great Wall* 與 *the Grand Canal*, 都是一個形容詞與一個通用的名詞合併而成的, 所以前邊有個 *the* 字。

(C) 嚴格地說, “通用名詞”一語, 不甚準確, 因為這一類的名詞並非絕對地通用, 只通用於它所指該類的東西。

(D) *people* 有兩個意義: (1) “人”, 無單數; (2) “民族”, *people* 為單數, *peoples* 為複數。

(E) *individual*, 在美國讀 [ɪn'dɪvɪj'uəl] 的人多。

(F) 澳洲的土人, 菲律賓人等等當然仍舊是講他們的土話; 我們這裏所講的乃指政府所公認的語言文字。

(G) 菲律賓的人除去他們的土語而外, 他們還說英語和西班牙語, 不過說英語的佔大半。

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 51-55):

1. A person, or some other living thing, which is indirectly affected by the action of the transitive verb is called an indirect object.
2. The indirect object usually comes before the direct object, but is sometimes placed in a prepositional phrase and the whole phrase comes after the direct object.
3. Intransitive verbs usually do not take objects, but there are exceptions.
4. Some intransitive verbs take objects which have the same meaning as the verbs, such objects are called cognate objects.
5. We also add prepositions (called prepositional complements) after intransitive verbs to form prepositional verbs, which take objects.
6. Nouns may also be placed after intransitive verbs, as objects are placed after transitive verbs, to do the work of adverbs, and they are called adverbial objects.
7. Nouns may also be placed before predicate adjectives to modify them, and these are also called adverbial objects.
8. Names of places and persons are called proper nouns, when each of them denotes one particular person or place.
9. Adjectives derived from them are called proper adjectives.
10. Proper nouns and words derived from them begin with capital letters.
11. We need not review the last three lessons so far as the proper nouns and words derived from them are con-

cerned, provided that you read again the tables contained in the three lessons.

* * *

LESSON 56

A Dinner

(1) Let us go back to our dinner. (2) As there were many foreigners, we had foreign [fɔi'ɪn] food.

(3) We asked our guests to order [ɔr'də] à la carte [ah lah kɑr'te], but they preferred [pɹifɛr'd] to order *table d'hôte* [tah'bl dō't], and so *table d'hôte* we had.

(4) We had many courses [kɔr'sɪz] in the dinner.

(5) Our guests said that there were more courses than what they had for a dinner when they were in their own countries [kūn'trɪz].

(6) First, the *hors d'œuvres* [ɔr'dœvr] were served, then the soup. (7) Next came the fish, then some meat and chicken. (8) With the meat and chicken we had potatoes [pətā'tōz] and other vegetables. (9) We had salad [sāl'əd] too, and, of course, there were bread and butter [brɛd ən bʊtɚ] all the while. (10) Finally we had our pudding [pʊd'ɪŋ], fruit, and coffee, and the dinner was over.

(11) Not all of us, however, had the same food, for we changed whatever [whɔtɛv'ə] course any one of us didn't like for something else. (12) One of us did not like fish, while another dared [dɑr'd] not eat pork. (13) A third preferred sausage [sɔs'ɪj] to beef steak [stāk], and I changed my pudding for pie.

(14) We tipped [tɪpt] the waiter [wɑː'teɪ], i.e. we gave the waiter some money as tip [tɪp], before we went out.

生 字

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 2. foreign [fɔːrɪn]: 外國的。 | bread [brɛd]: 麵包。 |
| 3. order [ɔː'dɔː]: 定(指定菜定貨)。 | butter [bʊtə]: 牛奶油 奶油。 |
| à la carte [ah la kɑːt]: 點菜, 零點。 | ——bread and butter: 牛油麵包。 |
| prefer [prɪfəˈfɛr]: 寧願。 | 10. pudding [pʊdɪŋ]: 布丁(給蛋糕之上加以甜醬)。 |
| table d'hôte [tah'bldɔːt]: 全餐(茶館所定好的)。 | 11. whatever [whətəvə]: 任何的。 |
| 4. course [kɔːs]: 一道食物。 | 12. dare [dɑː]: 敢。 |
| 5. country [kʌn'trɪ]: 國。 | 13. sausage [sɔːsɪdʒ]: 臘腸。 |
| 6. hors. d'oeuvre [hɔː'dɛvʊvɔː, 或 ɔː'dɛvʊvɔː]: 菜盤。 | steak [stɛk]: 炙肉片。——beef steak: 牛排。 |
| 8. potato [pə'teɪtəʊ]: 洋山薯。 | 14. tip [tɪp]: 酒資, 付酒資。(名詞或云謂詞) |
| 9. salad [sələd]: 生菜。 | waiter [wɑː'teɪ]: 侍役, 西崽。 |

講 義

(A) à la carte, table d'hôte, hors d'oeuvre 等是法文字, 只須認識它們, 不必強記。

(B) table d'hôte 原指旅館裏共餐的桌子, 後來借用指在桌上的全餐, 再後來便指任何選定的全餐。

(C) hors d'oeuvre 雖譯為“菜盤”, 但不一定是製過的菜子, 有時也有鹹魚, 鹹肉等。

(D) salad 雖譯為“生菜”, 但不一定是生菜, 有時是生蝦, 生雞, 肉等與生菜。

(E) bread and butter = 牛油麵包(即塗以牛油的麵包), 並非“麵包與牛油”, 請注意。

(F) change A for B = 以 A 換 B。prefer B to A = 寧愛 B 不願得 A。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	denote	denoted	denoted
	order	ordered	ordered

	prefer	preferred	preferred
	dare	dared	dared
	tip	tipped	tipped
單數	複數	單數	複數
canal	canals	ink	——
individual	individuals	language	languages [-jɪz]
list	lists	potato	potatoes
sa'ad	salads	course	courses
country	countries	pudding	puddings
sausage	sausages [-jɪz]	steak	steaks
waiter	waiters	quilt	quilts
question	questions	roof	roofs
robin	robins	rule	rules
riddle	riddles	razor	razors
[造句]	(1) on my right	(4) on my left	
	(2) waiter	(5) change ~ for ...	
	(3) prefer ~ to ...		

LESSON 57

Object Complements

(1) We have two sample [sə'lɪmpl] sentences here. (a) You will find it; and (b) You will find it good. (2) When you compare [kəmpeɪ] them, you will find that in sentence (a), the speaker [spɪkə] tries to make his listener [lɪs'nɜ] feel confident [kɒn'fɪdənt] of finding it, whatever that may be; but, in sentence (b), the speaker asks the listener to try something and see for himself that it is good. (3) So, you see, in sentence (b), *good* is a complement to complete the meaning of the verb and at

生 字

1. **sample** [sah'mpl, 美國人讀 sām'pl]: 樣子, 貨樣, 樣品。
 2. **compare** [kə.ʌpɑɪ', 或 kəm-pāɪ']: 比較。
speaker [spɪ'keɪ]: 說話的人。
listener [lɪs'nə]: 聽話的人。
confident [kɒn'fɪdnt]: 相信, 自信。
try and see: 試一試而看出。
for yourself: (爲你自己), 親自。
3. *object complement*: 賓語補足語。 [足語。
 5. *subjective complement*: 主語補
 8. **consider** [kən'sɪd'ə, 或 kən-sɪd'ə]: 想, 視爲, 當作。
 13. **granduncle** [grænd'ʌŋg'l̩]: 伯祖, 叔祖, 等。
 15. **choose** [tʃoʊz]: 選擇, 舉。(過
 去時制 chose [tʃoʊz], 過去分詞
 chosen [tʃoʊzn])

講 義

(A) 第 5 句有兩個 *inclined*, 第一字爲過去分詞當形容詞用, 第二字乃被動態的謂語短語中之一字。

(B) 第 5 句的構造比較複雜, 茲譯之如左: “注意那斜線斜向右旁, 若非在那述語形容詞的實例中之斜向左旁, 這個述語形容詞與述語主格有時 [也] 叫做主語補足語”。

(C) 7, 8, 13, 14, 19, 21 諸句的構造我們不曾學過, 所以現在把它們譯在左邊: (7) 這酒 使我快活。(8) 我們以爲這 [是] 重要的。(13) 我叫他叔父。(14) 他們舉我 [做] 他們的領袖。(20) 咱們使他去。(21) 我聽見他說的。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	compare	compared	compared
	consider	considered	considered
	choose [tʃoʊz]	chose [tʃoʊz]	chosen [tʃoʊzn]
	refer	referred	referred

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
speaker	speakers	listener	listeners
leader	leaders	soap	soaps
shipper	shippers	ship	ships

sea	seas	silk	—
salesman	salesmen	shade	shades
stock	stocks	skein	skeins

【畫線圖】 分析以下諸句：

- (1) I killed a dog. (3) He makes her happy.
 (2) She is his wife. (4) The boy is ill.

LESSON 58

A Busy Day

(1) Today is a busy day for me. (2) I have been down town [town] doing my shopping and a few other things.

(3) I bought many pairs of shoes and boots [bʊts] for the children as well as for myself. (4) I bought them slippers [slɪp'əz] too. (5) I bought many kinds of cloths to make clothes for my brothers and myself.

(6) While in the city [sɪ'ti], I took my watch to the watchmakers [wɔtʃ'mā'keɪz] to have it repaired. (7) I also got a cabinet-maker [kæb'ɪnɪt-mā'keɪ] to come to repair our chairs.

(8) When I came home, I found the lock [lɔk] of our back door out of order, so I immediately [ɪmɪ'diətli] went to get a locksmith [lɔk'smɪt:] to repair it. (9) Next, I took all the shoes that needed repair to the shoemakers [ʃu'ə-mā'keɪz]. (10) Then I sent for our tailor [tā'ɪə] and gave him the measures of the clothes to be made.

11. A watchmaker does not make watches, he repairs them, he repairs clocks too.

- 12 But a shoemaker both makes shoes and repairs them.
- 13 Cabinet-makers make cabinets [kăb'ínits] and other kinds of furniture [fêr'nichə] as well as repair them.
- 14 A tailor may make new clothes or mend old ones.
- 15 A locksmith repairs not only locks but also many other things.

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>2 town [ow]: 市鎮;小城。——
down town: 城內 市內。</p> <p>4 slippers [lī] 'o-]: 拖鞋。</p> <p>6 city [sīt]: 城市;大城。</p> <p>watchmaker [wəch' . ə'kə]:
鐘錶匠,修理鐘錶的人。</p> <p>7 cabinet-maker [kăb'ínit-
u ə' . ə]: 細木匠,家具製造者。</p> <p>8 lock [lɔk]: 鎖鑰。
out of order: (秩序之外),壞了。
immediately [im' . i' . jə' . di,
- . ət-]: 立刻。
locksmith [lɔk'smith]: 修理
鎖鑰的人;銅匠。</p> | <p>9. repair [rīpāi']: 修理。(名詞)
shoemaker [shoo'mă'kə]: 鞋
匠。 [來。]</p> <p>10. send for: (差[人去]爲),召;叫~
tailor [tă' . ə]: 裁縫。
measure [mī'zə]: 量度;(此處
專指)尺寸。
repair [rīpāi']: 修理。(名詞)</p> <p>13. cabinet [kăb' . i' . it]: 櫥櫃等家
具。
furniture [fêr'nichə]: 家具。
—kinds of furniture: 各種家
具。</p> |
|--|---|

講 義

(A) while in the city = hile I was in the city. 這種的句法是很普遍的。

(B) have it repaired = “使它被修理”。在文法上講, it 是 have 的賓語,而 repaired 是過去分詞當做形容詞用,形容着 it。

(C) clothes to be made = clothes which are to be made。但分析時可不必把 which 補出,只把 to be made 當做形容詞,短語已够了。

(D) 注意第 11 句是三個子句併成的複合句,但是一個連續詞也沒有;這種的句法只限於子句短而之間的關係已很明顯的。

練 習

【背誦】	單 數	複 數
	object complement	object complements
	subjective complement	subjective complements
	short story	short stories
	shade-guide	shade-guides
	cabinet-maker	cabinet-makers
	locksmith	locksmiths [-ths]
	watchmaker	watchmakers
	shoemaker	shoemakers
	granduncle	granduncles

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
stomach	stomachs [-ks]	speech	speeches
kind	kinds	sill	sills
language	languages	(boot)	boots
individual	individuals	city	cities
town	towns	repair	repairs
(slipper)	slippers	measure	measures
lock	locks	sentence	sentences
tailor	tailors	sieve	sieves
cabinet	cabinets	son	sons
subject	subjects	stand	stands

【造句】 試以下列短語造成詢問句：

- (1) electric fan out of order
- (2) sent for an accountant
- (3) as well as

【畫線圖】 分析本課 6, 第 8 兩句,

LESSON 59

This House Needs Repair Now

(1) This house was built several [sěv'ɾel] years ago, and is being repaired now. (2) We have carpenters [kār'pīntəz], masons [mā'snɪz] and painters [pā'ntəz] to repair it.

(3) The windows, doors, door sills, wooden floor, etc. are being repaired by the carpenters.

(4) The roof, the ceilings, and parts of the walls have been repaired by the masons, by whom the bedrooms are now being repaired.

(5) The dining-room and the parlour [pār'lə] are being painted [pā'ntɪd] by the painters. (6) After that, the doors, windows, etc. will be painted too.

(7) When the house is repaired, we shall change our furniture. (8) For the downstairs, all will be changed, from the parlour and dining-room sets [səts] to the stand in the hall for umbrellas, overshoes [ə'veʃhōʊz], coats, and hats. (9) For the upstairs, we shall keep the old pieces [ə'si:z] as they are still good. (10) However, we shall add [əd] a few pieces to my bedroom set.

11. A carpenter works with his tools [tūlz] on wood; he makes furnitures and the woodwork [wūd'wɜrk] of a house.
12. A mason works with his tools on lime [līm], mortar [mɔrtə], plaster, bricks, tiles, etc.; he builds walls, covers the house with roof, paves the floor with square tiles.
13. A painter uses his brush and paint to paint the woodwork and furniture of the house; or he may paint pictures.

14. Who made the curtains?
 15. We bought the cloth and made them ourselves, we did not let tailors make them.

生 字

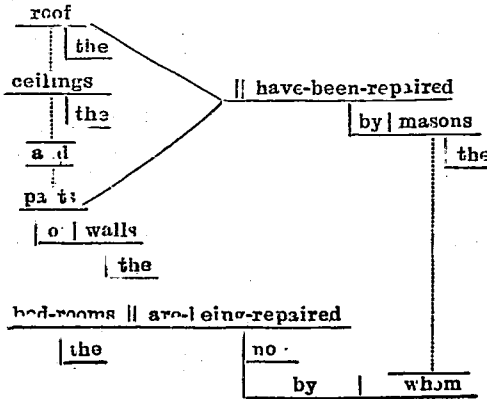
- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. several [səv'ərəl, 第二個 e 無音]: 幾個, 幾。</p> <p>2. carpenter [kɑr'pɪn'tə]: 木匠。
 mason [mə'sɒn, o 無音]: 泥水匠,
 painter [peɪn'teɪ]: 油漆匠, 畫家。</p> <p>3. door sill: 門限, [客廳。
 5. parlour, 或 parlour [pɑr'lə]:
 paint [peɪnt]: 油漆, 畫油, 漆原料, 畫圖彩色。(名詞或動詞)</p> | <p>8. set [sɛt]: 組, 套, 副。
 overshoes [oʊ'ə:ʃu:z]: 套鞋 (即雨天套在鞋外穿者)。
 9. piece [pi:s]: 一塊, 一件。
 10. add [æd]: 加, 添。
 11. tool [tu:l]: 工具。
 woodwork [wʊd'wɜ:k]: (房屋上之)木工。
 12. lime [li:m]: 石灰。
 mortar [mɔr'tə]: 灰泥。</p> |
|---|--|

講 義

(A) parlour 與 parlour 全同, 英人喜用前一拼法, 美人喜用後一拼法。

(B) 注意 is (或 are) being repaired = “正在被修理”。

(C) 第 4 句的構造似乎須加以說明: 它的附句與主句是用 whom 字連起來的, 而 whom 字又在子句中當狀況短語之一字, 把它分析起來, 便有如下的線圖。



練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	repair	repaired	repaired
	paint	painted	painted
	add	added	added

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
settee	settees	sofa	sofas
scroll	scrolls	sheet	sheets
saying	sayings	carpenter	carpenters
mason	masons	painter	painters
door sill	door sills	parlour	parlours
paint	paints	set	sets
tool	tools	piece	pieces

- 【造句】 (1) painters not only . . . but also . . .
 (2) are being . . .

【畫線圖】 分析本課第 1, 第 7 兩句。

LESSON 60

"Twinkle, Twinkle, Little Star"

(I)

Twinkle [twɪŋg'l̩k], twinkle, little star [stɑː],	(1)
How I wonder [wʌn'də] what you are [ɑː]!	(2)
Up above the world [wɜːld] so high [ˈaɪ],	(3)
Like a diamond [dɪ'əmənd] in the sky [skɑɪ].	(4)
Twinkle, twinkle, little star,	(5)
How I wonder what you are!	(6)

(II)

Oh, look at the moon! (7)

She is shining up there [dhār]. (8)

See, mother, she looks (9)

Like a lamp in the air [t̄r] (10)

Last week she was smaller (11)

And shaped [shāp̄t̄] like a bow [bō]; (12)

But now she's grown bigger, (13)

And round [rownd] like an O [ō]. (14)

—*Eliza Lee Follen.* (15)

(III)

The clouds are scudding [skū'ĩng] across [əkrōs']
the moon; (16)

A misty [mīs'tī] light is on the sea; (17)

The wind in the shrouds [shrowdz] has a wintry
tune [wīn'trī tūn], (18)

And the foam [fōm] is flying free [fī'ĩng frē]. (19)

—*Bayard Taylor.* (20)

生 字

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. twinkle [twĩngkl]: 閃爍。 | 詞-shaped, 被形成) |
| star [stār]: 星。 | bow [bō]: 弓。 |
| 2. wonder [wūn'de]: 疑惑而欲知其詳。 | 13. she's [shēz]=she has, 伊已。 |
| 3. world [wērl'd]: 世界, | 14. round [rownd]: 圓的。 |
| high [hī]: 高。 | 15. <i>Eliza Lee Follen</i> [i'elīzə lē fōl'ən]: 人名。 |
| diamond [di'əmənd]: 金剛鑽。 | 16. scud [skūd]: 飛奔。 「越過。 |
| 12. shape [shāp̄]: 使形成。(過去分 | across [əkrōs', 或 ə'raws']: |

17. **misty** [mɪs'ti]: 霧罩的。
 18. **shroud** [ʃraʊd]: 橫槓索。
winty [wɪn'tri]: 冬天的。
tune [tʃn]: 聲調。
 19. **foam** [fɔ:m]: 浪花。
- fly [fli]: 飛。
 free [frē]: 自由的 (此處作“離開的,分離的”解)。
 20 *Bay rd Taylor* [bā'ɑ:d tɑ'lə]:
 人名(美國十九世紀的文人詩家)。

講 義

(A) 第一首詩是十九世紀的一位女作家著的,伊的名現在忘記了。此處所選的僅其第一節。倘有二三節,但不像這一節的受大眾的歡迎。據說,作者因為著了許多同此一類給兒童讀的詩歌,被伊父親(一個牧師)禁鎖在一間房中,失去了自由許久。第二首的著者為何時何國人均不詳。

(B) *the wind in th. shrouds* 指從許多的橫槓索中吹過而作的“聲音”,不然,便不能有音調。

(C) *the foam is flying free*, 不用 *freely*, 因為這 *free* 是要形容着 *foam* 的,指這些浪花飛離那些波浪,如果用 *freely*, 則 *freely* 字是要形容着浪花自由地飛奔了。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to L.L. 56—60):

1. Once we invited many foreigners to a dinner at a restaurant, and as our guests were foreigners, we had foreign food.
2. We ordered our dinners *table d'hôte*, and not *à la carte*, because our guests insisted on it.
3. However, we changed whatever courses we didn't like for what we liked.
4. We had the *hors d'oeuvres* and then the soup, after which came fish, meat, beef steak, sausage, chicken, and salad, and finally ended with pudding or pie, fruits, and coffee or tea.
5. We tipped the waiter, i.e. we gave him some tip, before we came out.

6. Sometimes an object is not enough to complete the meaning of a transitive verb, and we have to put an adjective, a noun, or a verb to complete it.
7. The adjective, noun, or verb used in such a way is called an object complement.
8. The predicate nominative and the predicate adjective which we have studied are sometimes called the subjective complements.
9. In analysing such sentences, the line that separates the subjective complement from the predicate verb is inclined toward the left, while the line that separates the object complement from the object is inclined to the right.
10. A sentence containing an object and an object complement which is a noun must be carefully distinguished from one containing a direct and an indirect objects.
11. The object and the object complement always refer to the same person, place, or thing, while the direct and the indirect objects always refer to two different persons, places, or things.
12. The direct object, the predicate nominative, the predicate adjective, the prepositional complement, and the object complement are the five kinds of complements.
13. Are you going down town?
14. Yes, to do my shopping, is there anything that I can do for you?
15. Would you take this watch to repair for me?
16. Why, certainly, to which watch-maker?
17. Any one will do.
18. What, you are back already? What have you got?
19. I bought overshoes, boots, slippers, and cloths to

- make clothes, but I also got a tailor to make our clothes, will you please go to get a locksmith and our shoemaker?
20. Houses are built and repaired by carpenters, masons, and painters.
 21. Masons work with lime, mortar, plaster, bricks, and tiles to build walls, cover roofs, and pave floors.
 22. Carpenters work with tools and wood to make furniture and the woodwork of a house.
 23. There are two kinds of painters: one that paints furniture and the woodwork of a house, the other that paints pictures, though they both use paints and brushes.
 24. Do you like to get a bedroom (dining-room, parlour) set? Here is an eleven-piece set, nicely made, strong, and at reasonable price too.
 25. When a little star twinkles, it looks like a diamond in the sky, doesn't it?
 26. When is the moon shaped like a bow, and when, like an O?
 27. The clouds scud across the moon, and the light on the sea is misty; the wind, passing through the shrouds, makes a wintry tune, while the foam flies free.

* * *

LESSON 61

A Letter

(1) My name is Lu Tsc-pin, and I have a friend whose name is Hw'ung I-kung. (2) I live in House 14, Lane [lā·] 173, Avenue Foch [äy'īnū fesh], Shanghai

[hǎng'hi²], while I-kung lives in 154, The Bund [dhe būnd], Canton [kān'tōn']. (3) I have not heard from him for a long time, so I wrote him. (4) My letter was written in a familiar tone [fəmīl'yə tōn], for we are intimate [in'timīt] friends. (5) Here is my letter.

(6) 14/173, Avenue Foch,
Shanghai,

(8)

(7) June 9, 1941.

DEAR [dēf] I-KUNG,

(9) Poor correspondents [kōr'ispōn'dents], both of us! (10) Haven't heard from each other for ages [ā'jiz]. (11) Well, these few lines are just to let you know that I am still alive [əlī'v] and in this world.

(12) There isn't much that I can tell you which will be news to you, as your sister left this city for the South only last month.

(13) There isn't much to tell either about ourselves [owr'ēlvz] or about our friends. (14) However, I am sending you a snapshot [snǎp'shōt] of ours [owrz], which will speak for us better than I can. (15) You see, the children have grown quite much recently [rē's tli]. (16) As for us, we are still the old, old selves [sēlvz].

(17) With best wishes [wīsh'is],

(18) Yours sincerely [sīnsēr'li],

LU TSO-PIN

生 字

2. lane, [lān]: 巷,弄。
avenue [āv'inū]: 大道(通常不
與有欄)。

Foch [fōsh, 或 fōsh]: 福煦(法
國當代名將)。——Avenue Foch:
福煦路(乃以路名紀念福煦將軍)。

- Shanghai [shǎng'hí', 或 shǎng'hí]: 上海。
- bund [dhe bünd]: 江邊之街道, 灘。——*The Bund*: (廣州) 黃埔路。(上海) 黃浦灘, 外灘。
- Canton [kǎn'tóu' 或 kǎ-tón']: 廣州。 「不拘禮節的。」
4. familiar [fə'mil'yə]: 熟識的, tone [tón]: 音調, 語氣, intimate [in'timít]: 親密的。
8. dear [dɛr]: 親愛的。
9. correspondent [kɔr'ispɔn'dənt]: 寫信的人, 互相通信的人。
10. age [áj]: 世, 年代。——*for ages* [á'jiz]: (過了許多年代), 很久。
11. *these few lines*: 這幾行(字)。
alive [elí'v]: 活着。
12. *leave for ~*: 到~(地方)去。
the South: 南方。
13. *our-selves* [owr'sɛlvz'']: 我們自己, 咱們自己。 「的照像。」
14. *snapshot* [snǎp'shɔt]: 自己拍
ours [owrz]: 我們的, 咱們的。
(用法與 *yours, mine* 等字同)。
15. *recently* [rɛ'sntil]: 近日。
16. *self* [sɛlf]: 自身。(複數 *selves* [sɛlvz])——*still the old, old self* (或 *selves*): 依然故我。
17. *wish* [wísh]: 願望。(此處作名詞用)——*with best wishes*: 願此問安(對親密的朋友用的)。
18. *sincerely* [sínsɛr'li]: 真誠的。
——*Yours sincerely*: 你的真誠的[朋友]。

講 義

(A) 第 9 句是呼喊句之一種, 而把述語云謂詞省去; 如果是敘述句, 這句話應當這樣講: "Both of us are poor correspondents."

(B) 第 10 句主語當然是 *we*; 這種句法——把第一人稱的主語省去——在親密朋友的信中是常有的。

(C) 信札的構造我們將於 63 課研究。

練 習

【背誦】

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
lane	lanes	self	selves
avenue	avenues	myself	ourselves
tone	tones	wish	wishes
age	ages	strop	strops
shaving-dish	shaving-dishes	bund	bands
correspondent	correspondents	straw	straws

- 【造句】 (1) leave for . . .
 (2) neither . . . nor
 (3) the former . . . while the latter . . .

LESSON 62

A Reply

(1) After I wrote the letter, I folded [fō'ldɪd] it and put it in an envelope [ɛn'veləp]. (2) Then I wrote his name and address [ɔdrēs'] on it and mailed [māɪd] it. (3) That's to say, I took it to the post [pōst] office and bought an eight-cent stamp [stāmp], stuck [stʌk] it on the envelope, and then dropped [drɒpt] it into the letter box [bɒks].

(4) In a few days the letter reached [rɛcht] my friend, and in a few more days I received his reply.

(5) Here it is.

(6) 154 The Bund,
Canton,

(8)

(7) June 22, 1941.

DEAR TSO-MIN,

(9) Glad indeed was I, when I received, a few days ago, your letter and your family [fām'ɪli] picture.

(10) It was rather kind of you to send me the picture.

(11) Indeed, your children have grown quite much.

(12) I am sorry I can't say the same of mine.

(13) However, I have some news for you. (14) Ho Li-tse, our mutual [mü'tʃəl] friend, has been in love with Miss T. S. Chen for some time, and they are now

engaged [ɪŋgā'jd]. (15) The marriage [mār'ij] will take place, I believe, some time this autumn.

(16) Mr. Su Chu-chai, another mutual friend of ours, has recently got a promotion [prəmō'shən], and with an increase [ɪn'krēs] of salary, of course. (17) But with all that, his engagement [ɪŋgā'jmənt] to Miss Yeh was broken. (18) So that's the end of their romance [rōmäns'].

(19) Last year you promised to come to our city this year for vacation [vəkā'shən]. (20) When can you arrange to leave your office? (21) Please write me about it, when you have something definite.

(22) Yours sincerely,

HWANG I-KUNG

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. fold [föld]: 摺。 | 的。—— <i>family picture</i> : 全家的 |
| envelope, or envelop [ɛn'və-
löp]: 信封。 | 照相, 全家福。 |
| 2. address [ədrēs']: 住址。 | 10. <i>kind of you</i> : (你很仁慈), 承蒙。 |
| mail [māl]: 寄信, 付郵。 | 12. of [öv, ɔv]: 關於。 |
| 3. post [pöst]: 郵政。—— <i>post
office</i> : 郵政局。 | 14. <i>mutual</i> [mūt'üel, 美國人讀
mū'chüel]: 公共的。 |
| stamp [stämp]: 郵票 (名詞);
蓋印 (云謂詞)。 | love [lüv]: 愛情, 戀愛。(名詞)
—— <i>in love with</i> ~: 與某人發生
戀愛。 |
| stick [stäck]: 黏着。(過去時
制及過去分詞 <i>stuck</i> [stüek]) | engage [ɪŋgā'j, 或 ɔn-]: 訂約;
(轉爲)訂婚。 |
| drop [dröp]: 使落下。—— <i>drop
~ into</i> : 將~投入。 | 15. <i>marriage</i> [mār'ij]: 結婚。 |
| box [böks]: 盒, 箱。—— <i>letter
box</i> : 信箱。 | 16. <i>promotion</i> [prēmō'shən]: 提
陞, 陞級。 |
| 4. reach [rēch]: 達到。 | increase [ɪn'krēs]: 增加。(名
詞)—— <i>increase of salary</i> : 加薪。 |
| 9. family [fän'ili]: 家庭; 家庭 | 17. <i>with all that</i> : 雖然如此。 |

- engagement [ɪŋgə'jmənt, ən-]: 約會, 許約; (轉爲) 婚約, 訂婚。——*the engagement is broken*: 解除婚約。
18. romance [rɒməns/, 或 rə-]: 情史, 豔事。
19. vacation [və'keɪʃən]: 休假, 假期。

講 義

(A) 第 9 句也是呼稱句, 要使讀者曉得他所講的接到照像的快樂, 不是一種口頭語, 是實實在在的快樂, 所以把 glad 放在前面而加上 indeed 一字以描寫他的快樂, 再將 was 放在 I 之前, 以引起讀者的注意。

(B) marry 與 marriage (結婚, 嫁娶), 男女適用, 不像我們的分爲“(男)娶”,“(女)嫁”。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	fold	folded	folded
	mail	mailed	mailed
	stamp	stamped [-m(p)t]	stamped
	drop	dropped [-pt]	dropped
	reach	reached [-cht]	reached
	stick	stuck	stuck
	engage	engaged [-jd]	engaged
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
envelope	envelopes	address	addresses
stamp	stamps	box	boxes
family	families	family picture	family pictures
marriage	marriages	promotion	promotions
increase	increases	engagement	engagements
romance	romances	vacation	vacations

【分析】 自本課課文中找出感歎詞以外的七個詞類, 各三字。

LESSON 63

Parts of a Letter

- (1) Now let us study the construction of a letter.
- (2) First of all come two lines of the address of the writer, and one line of the date [dāt] on which the letter is written.
- (3) This part of the letter—the address of the writer and the date—is called the *heading* [hěd'ing], and is followed by the *introduction* [in'trədük'shən] or *salutation* [säl'ütä'shən], i.e. "Dear So-and-So [sō'ənsō]". (4) Then comes the *body of the letter*, which ends with the *conclusion* [kənklōō'zhən], or *complimentary ending* [kōm'plīměn'terī ěn'ding], i.e. "With best wishes", "Yours sincerely", etc. (5) Below the complimentary ending or close [klōs], "Yours sincerely", or some similar phrase, the writer [rī'tə] signs [sīnz] his name, which is called his *signature* [sīg'nīchə]. (6) In a friendly [frěnd'li] letter, the full name and address of the receiver [rīsē'və] of the letter do not appear. (7) On the envelope, we write the name and address of the receiver, but sometimes we put down the name and address of the sender [sěn'də] too. (8) Whatever is written on the envelope is called the *superscription* [sū'pěskrīp'shən].
- (9) The heading of the letter is placed [plāst] at the upper right corner [kōr'nə]. (10) Below it at the left is the introduction or salutation, without [wīdhow't] the full name and address of the receiver of the letter. (11) Then comes the body of the letter, which may be divided into paragraphs. (12) If the complimentary ending begins with "With best wishes", etc., the phrase begins as one of

the paragraphs. (13) "Yours sincerely", etc., however, must begin with another line below it and farther to the right. (14) Directly below it the writer signs his name.

(15) On the envelope, the name and address of the sender are written at its upper left hand corner. (16) The name of the sender is preceded: [ˈprɪsədɪd] with the word "From" or "Sender:", or such phrase as "If not delivered [dɪlɪvəd] within [wɪðɪn] 5 (or: 10) days, return [rɪˈtʌrn] to..." (17) The name and address of the receiver of the letter are written in the lower half of the envelope and a little to the right.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>2. date [dæt]: 日期(年月日)。</p> <p>2. heading [hɛdɪŋ]: 標頭 寄信人住址及寄信日期。</p> <p>introduction [ɪn'trɔʊʃən]: 引子。</p> <p>salutation [sæl'ju:tə'si:ən]: 招呼; 稱呼。</p> <p>Said-So [sə'dəʊsə]: 某某。</p> <p>4. conclusion [kə'klu:ʒən] 結尾, 結束。</p> <p>complimentary [kəm'plɪməntəri]: 恭維的。——complimentary ending [ɔn'dɪŋ]: 恭維的結尾。</p> <p>5. complimentary close [kəm'plɪməntəri kləʊz]: 恭維的結尾。</p> | <p>sign [saɪn]: 簽字。(云謂詞)</p> <p>signature [sɪɡ'nɪtʃə]: 簽字。(名詞) [簽的。]</p> <p>6. friendly [frɛndli]: 友誼的, 和</p> <p>receiver [rɪsɪvə]: 接收者。——receiver of a letter: 受信</p> <p>7. put down: (置下), 寫出。 [人。</p> <p>sender [sɛndə]: 寄者, 寄信人。</p> <p>8. superscription [suːpə'skrɪpʃən]: 封面字樣。</p> <p>9. corner [kɔ:nə]: 角, 竅。</p> <p>10. without [wɪðaʊt]: 沒有。</p> <p>16. precede [prɪsɪd]: 在前。</p> <p>deliver [dɪlɪvə]: 遞交。</p> <p>within [wɪðɪn]: 在...之內。</p> <p>return [rɪˈtʌrn]: 回; 退回。</p> |
|---|---|

講 義

(A) 與第 2 句同樣的構造(即述語置於主語之前而非詢問句), 我們已經講了許多次, 現在我們可以詳細說明一下。以狀詞或狀詞短語開頭的句子, 常須用這樣的構造; 又, 用這短語 *There* 與 *It* 做一句話的主語時, 也須用這種句法。

(B) 第 8 句的子句 whatever is written on the envelope 的 whatever = anything which; 所以這子句實際等於一個名詞與一個形容詞子句合在一起。但照現有的構造講, 那子句是名詞子句當主語用。

(C) It not delivered within 5 days, return to the if not delivered = if it can not be delivered. 全句的意義即: “如五日內無法投遞, 請退回交與~”(此處緊接寫着寄信人的姓名住址)。當然的, 退郵投遞的日數可由我們自定; 不過通常信札係五天或十天, 包裹一個月。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	sign	signed	signed
	deliver	delivered	delivered
	precede	preceded [-dɪd]	preceded
	return	returned	returned
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
date	dates	salutation	salutations
heading	headings	introduction	introductions
corner	corners	conclusion	conclusions
receiver	receivers	signature	signatures
sender	senders	superscription	superscriptions
complimentary	{ ending close	complimentary	{ endings closes

【造句】 用以下云謂詞各造一過去完了時制的句子:

- (1) break (2) meet (3) have (4) put

LESSON 64

Molly's Fine Dream

(1) Molly [mɔɪ'lɪ] was a farmer's daughter. (2) One day she was carrying [kær'iɪŋ] one pail [paɪ] of milk on

her head to the market. (3) She thought about what she should do with the milk. (4) This was what she thought:

(5) "I will sell the milk, and I shall certainly get a lot of [əldtəv] money for it [fərɪt].

(6) "With this money I will buy eggs [ɛgz], surely I shall be able to get two hundred eggs.

(7) "I will let the hens [hɛnz] sit on them, and without doubt [daʊt] three quarters of them will hatch [hæch], which means I shall have one hundred and fifty chicks [chɪks].

(8) "I will sell these chickens [chɪk'ɪnz] when they grow up, and then I shall have lots and lots of money.

(9) "With this money I will buy myself the prettiest [prɪt'ɪlɪst] new dress in the market, and I shall look so pretty in this new dress that all the young men in the village [vɪl'ɪdʒ] will want to marry me.

(10) "Then I will toss [tɔs] my head and refuse [rɪf'uz] them all."

(11) At this she tossed her head, and down came the pail, the milk, and all. (12) This was the end of Molly's fine dream [drēm].

生 字

1. Molly [mɒl'i]: 女人名。
2. carry [kæri]: 攜帶。
3. pail [paɪ]: 提桶。
5. lot [lɒt]: 多數, 多量, 衆多。——
a lot of: 許多。
6. egg [ɛg]: 卵, (特指) 鷄卵。
7. hen [hɛn]: 母雞。
sit on the eggs: 孵卵。
- doubt [daʊt]: 疑惑。——with-
out doubt: 無疑地。

- hatch [hæch]: 孵化。
- chick [chɪk]: 雛, 小鷄。 [鷄。
8. chicken [chɪk'ɪn]: 小雞, 童子
lots and lots of: 許多許多。
9. prettiest [prɪt'ɪlɪst]: 最美麗的。
(pretty 的最級)
- village [vɪl'ɪdʒ]: 村莊。
10. toss [tɔs]: 擡起, 昂起。
- refuse [rɪf'uz]: 拒絕。
12. dream [drēm]: 夢。

講 義

(A) 注意：自第 6 至第 10 句描寫 Molly 的思想一如她自言自語的口氣，所以用“引號”。

(B) 關於引號，注意這一點：自第 6 至第 10 句每段都有“開始引號”，而除了末段之末有“終止引號”外，其餘各段之末都沒有“終止引號”。這是引用數段文章或話語時的用法。

(C) 注意 I will 與 I shall 的用法及其意義的不同。will 與第三人稱的主語合用時其意義與 I shall 的 shall 同。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	carry	carried	carried
	sit	sat	sat
	hatch	hatched [-cht]	hatched
	toss	tossed [-st]	tossed
	refuse	refused [-zɪ]	refused

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
pail	pails	lot	lots
egg	eggs	hen	hens
doubt	doubts	chick	chicks
chicken	chickens	village	villages
dream	dreams	tile	tiles
towel	towels	temple	temples
toothbrush	toothbrushes	tree	trees
thread	threads	thought	thoughts
tea	teas (多種的茶)	trouble	troubles

【填字】 把 will 或 shall 填在下列空格中，使各句專指將來而不含有意志或願望：

- (1) We —— have our tea with them.
- (2) They —— not take tea with us.
- (3) Mr. Ting —— give you my address.
- (4) —— I came in?
- (5) —— you write him a letter?

LESSON 65

About Molly's Dream

(1) Molly, a farmer's daughter, was thinking of what she **should** do with the pail of milk which she was carrying.

(2) She **would** sell it and she **should** get a lot of money for it, she thought.

(3) She **would** buy eggs with the money, and she **should** get two hundred of them.

(4) She **would** make hens sit on them, and she thought three quarters of them **would** hatch, and she **should** have one hundred and fifty chickens.

(5) She **would** sell the chickens when they are grown up, and **should** have plenty [plɛn'ti] of money.

(6) With the money, she **would** buy the prettiest dress in the market, and then she **should** look, she thought, so pretty that all the young men in the village **would** want to marry her.

(7) She **would** then toss her head and refuse them all.

(8) And toss her head she did, and down came the pail, the milk, and all.

(9) This was the end of Molly's fine dream. (10) Pity the poor thing, she could not sell her milk now for any amount [əməʊnt] of money.

(11) Without any money she could not buy any egg, and without any egg, no chicken could be hatched.

(12) Without chickens she could not sell them and get the money to buy herself a pretty, new dress.

(13) Without her new dress she could not look so pretty that all the young men in the village would want to marry her.

(14) Without any young men wanting to marry her, she could not toss her head and refuse them all.

生 字

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 2. should [shōöd]: shall 的過去
時制。 | 5. plenty [plēn'tī, plēnty]: 許
多。(與 of 連用) [數目。 |
| 4. hatch [häch]: 孵。 | 10. amount [əməw'nt]: (銀錢的) |

講 義

(A) 本課的 should 與 would 的用法全是過去的將來時制，讀時切須把本課的課文與前課的課文合在一起細細地比較。

(B) 在 any 之後的名詞，單數複數均可用，參看第 11 至 14 句；但在 every 之後的名詞則只可用單數。

(C) 第 8 句 And toss her head she did, 係因欲加重語氣而把 tossed 變為 did toss, 又把 toss her head 放在 she did 之前，使讀者更加注意。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 61—65):

1. A letter consists of (1) the heading, which consists of (a) the address of the sender of the letter and (b) the date on which the letter is written; (2) the introduction or salutation, which consists of only the name of the receiver of the letter; (3) the body of the letter;

- in which you may say anything you like; (4) the conclusion, or complimentary ending or close; and (5) the signature of the writer of the letter.
2. The superscription is whatever is written on the envelope, which usually consists of (1) the name and address of the sender of the letter, and (2) the name and address of the receiver.
 3. If the letter is an important one, then you had better put this phrase before your name and address on the envelope: "If not delivered within 5 (or 10) days, please return to . . ."
 4. Where do you live?
 5. I live down the lane here.
 6. Where did he go?
 7. He will leave for the North next week.
 8. Oh, I thought he had left already.
 9. Yes, he had, but he has come back recently.
 10. Would you kindly mail this letter for me?
 11. If you have already put the stamp on, I will drop it into the mail box.
 12. In that case, I will have to go to the post office myself.
 13. Their romance ended in engagement, but their engagement did not end in marriage, it was broken.
 14. Are you in love?
 15. Certainly, I am engaged.
 16. Where have you been? I haven't seen you for ages.
 17. I have been away for some time, and I thought of writing you, but I am such a poor correspondent. I have been to Shanghai, Mr. Cheng asked me to give

- you this snapshot, it's his family picture, I believe.
18. Thanks awfully. Well, yes and no; it's a picture of his family and some of his friends. How is he?
 19. He is getting on fine, he has just got a promotion and an increase of salary.
 20. Oh, I'm glad to hear it.
 21. Tell me the story of Molly, the farmer's daughter.
 22. One day Molly was carrying a pail of milk to the market, and she thought what she would do with the milk.
 23. She would sell the milk and with the money she would buy two hundred eggs, on which she would make hens sit.
 24. When the chicks are hatched and grown up she would sell them, and with the money she would buy herself a pretty, new dress.
 25. She thought she should look so pretty in the new dress that all the young men in the village would want to marry her, and she would then toss her head and refuse them all.
 26. This she did and down came the pail, the milk, and all.

* * *

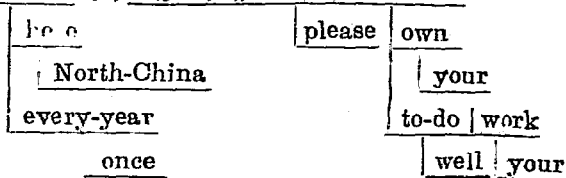
LESSON 66

Appositives

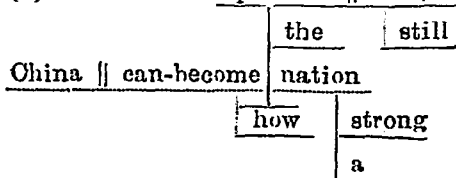
(1) We shall study in this lesson the appositives [əpəʒ'itɪvz]. (2) They are something with which you are already familiar,

(3) Sometimes we have to say what we mean more than once in different ways, in order to make it clearer to our listeners or readers [rē'dəz]. (4) Here are a few examples. (5) My brother, *Tsu-ching*, is a scholar [skōl'ə]. (6) He comes here, *North China*, once every year. (7) Please mind your own business [biz'nɪs], to do your work well. (8) The question how *China* can become [bikūm'] a strong [strɔŋg] nation [nā'shən] is still unsolved [ūn'sɔlv'd]. (9) In these examples, *Tsu-ching*, *North China*, to do your work well, and how *China* can become a strong nation repeat [rɪpē't] what the words that precede [prɪsē'd] them have already said and make it clearer. (10) They are called appositives, and are said to be *in apposition* [əp'əzɪʃən] with the words that precede them. (11) An appositive does the work of an adjective, and is diagrammed as a modifier of the word that goes before it. (12) Here are the analyses of three of the examples given above.

(6) he || comes (7) (you) || mind | business



(8) question || is \ unsolved



生 字

1. **appositive** [ə'pɔz'ɪtɪv]: 同列語, 同位語, 複述語。
3. **reader** [ˈɪːlə]: 讀者。
5. **scholar** [ˈskɔlə]: 學者。
6. **North China**: 華北, 中國北部, *once every year*: 每年一回。
7. **business** [ˈbɪz'nɪs]: 事務, 事。
8. **question** [kwɛ'stʃən]: 問題。
become [bɪkʊm]: 成爲。
strong [strɔŋg]: 強盛的。
- nation** [nə'shən]: 國家; 民族。
unsolved [ˈʌn'sɔlvd', 或 ʌn'sɔlvd, 或 ʌnsɔlvd', 須視全句的音調而定]: 不曾(被)解決的。
9. **repeat** [ˌɪpɪ't]: 重述。
precede [prɪsɛ'd, 或 prɛsɛ'd]: 居於~之前。
10. **apposition** [ə'pɔzɪʃən]: 同列, 同位。——*in apposition with*: 與~同列。

講 義

(A) 注意: *familiar with*, *in apposition with* 中介詞的用法。

(B) 注意: *business* 讀 [ˌɪː'nɪs], 非 [bɪ'ɪnɪs]; 讀 [bɪz'ɪnɪs] 時作“忙碌的情狀”解。

(C) 注意 *once every year* 譯成中文時適如分析綫圖中的“每年”居前, “一回”居後。

(D) 第 8 句的 *how* 爲 *can become* 的狀態詞, 同時又把這附句與主句連絡起來。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	become	became	become
	repeat	repeated [-tɪd]	repeated
	precede	preceded [-dɪd]	preceded
	單 數	複 數	單 數
	appositive	appositives	reader
	scholar	scholars	question
	tea table	tea tables	toilets
	thief	thieves	tin
			複 數
			readers
			questions
			toilets
			tins

【畫綫圖】 分析下列四句:

- (1) He is a bad man. (3) I give him this.
 (2) He is bad. (4) I give this to him.

LESSON 67

Independent Constructions

(1) Sometimes, as we make a statement, we may wish to qualify [kwōl'ifi] or comment [kōm'ěnt] on it. (2) Here are a few examples. (3) He is well now, *I believe*. (4) I am, *to tell you the truth* [trōōth], very poor just now. (5) In these examples, *I believe* and *to tell you the truth* are qualifications [kwōl'ifikā'shənz] or comments [kōm'ěnts] we put to these two sentences, and they are called **parenthetical** [pär'ənthət'ikl] expressions. (6) They are independent [in'dīpən'dənt] of the sentences in which they are found, i.e. they can be taken out of these sentences without affecting their sentence construction [kənstrük'shən]; so they are also called **independent constructions**.

(7) When we want to call the attention of the person whom we want to speak to in particular, we address [ədrēs'] him by his name. (8) This is called the **nominative of direct address**. (9) *Po-fang*, come here. (10) *Kai-tai*, stand up. (11) In these two examples, *Po-fang* and *Kai-tai* are **nominatives of direct address**. (12) They can also be taken out of the sentences without affecting the sentence construction, hence they are **independent constructions** too.

(13) **Interjections** are also **independent constructions**, as they do not affect the construction of the sentences in which they stand. (14) *Aha*, that is how you do it! (15) *Ah*,

he has come. (16) *Alas*, the worst has come to the worst!
 (17) In the examples given above, *aha*, *ah*, and *alas* are interjections and can be taken out without affecting the sentence construction; therefore they are independent constructions.

(18) An independent construction is placed, in analysis, beside the diagram of the sentence. (19) Here are the diagrams of some of the above examples.

(3) he || is well | I || believe |
 now

(4) I || am \ poor | to-tell | truth |
 just-now | very | | the
 (to) | you

(9) (you) || come | Po-fang |
 here

you || do | it
 now

(14) that || is | △ | aha |

生 字

1. qualify [kʌdʒ/ɪi]: 形容, 限制。
- comment [kəm/ənt]: 註解, 評
4. truth [truθ]: 真情。 [論。
- poor [pɔ:]: 貧窮。
5. qualification [kʌdʒ/ɪfɪkəʃən]: 形容, 限制, 變更。

- parenthetical [pær/ənthətɪkəl/ɪki]: 括弧的, 插語的。—*parenthetical expression*: 插語。
6. independent [ɪn/dɪpən/dənt]: 獨立的。—*independent of* ~ 離~而獨立的。

construction [kənstrʊk-/shən, 或 kɒn-]: 構造。——*sentence construction*: 句的構造, 句法。——*independent construction*: 獨立構造。

7. *to call the attention of*: 引起~

的注意。

address [ədrɛs/]: 呼喚。(名詞或云謂詞)——*nominative of direct address*: 直接呼喚的主格。

16. **worst** [wɜ:st]: 極糟糕的事。
has come to: 已成爲。

講 義

(A) 第 1 句 *to qualify or comment on it* 的 *it* 爲 *on* 的賓語, 同時亦爲 *qualify* 的賓語。

(B) 注意: 感歎詞與全句的構造雖沒有關係, 但是在意義上則有密切的關係。

(C) 第 16 句全句的意義爲: “一件極糟糕的事情已弄到再糟糕沒有了的地位”, 即“事情已糟極矣!”

綜 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	qualify	qualified [-fɪd]	qualified
	address	addressed [-st]	addressed
	comment	commented [-tɪd]	commented

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
truth	truths [-dʒz, 或 -θs]	yarn	yarns
comment	comments	qualification	qualifications
construction	constructions	expression	expressions
usage	usages	umbrella	umbrellas
wall	walls	unit	units
wheat	(無)	writer	writers
ware	wares	wardrobe	wardrobes
		yard	yards

【鑿綫圖】 分析本課第 10 與 16 兩句。

LESSON 68

The Wood-cutter's First Wish

(1) Once there lived a wood-cutter [wōd^hkūt'ə] and his wife in a little hut [hūt] in the forest. (2) One winter day, he went out to cut some firewood [fir'wood]; and when he came back, he felt cold and hungry.

(3) "Is supper ready?" he asked his wife.

(4) "No," came the reply, "the fire went out, and the supper will not be ready until an hour later."

(5) "Oh," said the wood-cutter, "I wish I had a hot, big, thick [thik] pancake [pān'kāk] now." (6) Right away flap [flāp], flap, flap! a hot, big, thick pancake knocked [nōkt] at the door and flapped [flāpt] into the hut.

(7) "Oh, dear me, what is this?" cried the wood-cutter's wife, "what is this?"

8. What is a wood-cutter?—A wood-cutter is one who cuts wood and sells it to make his living.
9. What is the best place for him to live in?—In or near a forest is the best place for him to live, of course.
10. Did the wood-cutter in our story live in a big house, or in a small house?—He and his wife lived in a small house, a hut which, in their case, was most likely [li'kli] built of wood.
11. What did he bring home in that particular winter day? —Some firewood he must have brought home, I am sure.
12. What else did he bring with him?—I don't know as the story did not tell us,

13. Yes, the story did tell you, he brought home with him cold and hunger [hŭng'gə], that is why he felt cold and hungry
14. Tell me in your own words the talk between him and his wife and what happened.
15. He asked his wife if the supper was ready, to which his wife replied that it would not be ready until one hour later as the fire went out.
16. The wood-cutter then wished that he had a pancake, and into their hut flapped a hot, big, thick pancake.
17. His wife was greatly surprised [səpri'zd] and she asked what it was.
18. We shall see what it was in the next lesson.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. wood-cutter [v'ɔ:ɪ'kʌ'ʃə, 注意基本重音及次重音]: 樵夫。 hut [hʌt]: 小屋。 2. firewood [fɪr'wɔ:ɪd]: 薪柴。 4. fire goes out: 火熄了。 5. thick [θɪk]: 厚的。 pancake [pæn'kæɪk, 或 pæŋ'kæɪk]: 麵煎餅。 6. flap [flæp]: 撲; 撲擊的聲音。 | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> knock [nɔk, 第一個k字無聲]: 敲; 叩門。 7. dear m: (親愛的我), 嗟喲, 嗟喲。(驚歎語) 10. likely [lɪ'kli]: 可有的。——most likely: 大半, 最有可能性的。 13. hunger [hŭng'gə]: 飢餓。(名詞) 17. surprise [səpri'z]: 使驚奇。 |
|---|---|

講 義

(A) 第2句 he felt cold and hungry=he was cold and hungry; 這 cold 與 hungry 兩字是形容着主語 he, 不是形容着 felt, 所以用形容詞而不用動詞。

(B) 我們平常敘述一件事務或理論時, 我們所用的云謂詞, 依文法的說法, 帶着“敘述語氣”; 我們在發命令時, 云謂詞帶着“命令語氣”; 在我們說一種假設時, 云謂詞帶着“假設語氣”。前兩種的語氣, 沒有什麼難處, 但“假設語氣”卻有許多特

別的地方；其一就是用過去時制來說現在時制的假設，如第 5 句的 *I wish I had a hot, big, thin pancake now*，即其一例。

(C) 在第 13 句 *cold* 與 *hunger* 都是名詞，這句話把 *cold* 與 *hunger* 當做兩件東西，說它們被樵夫帶回來。

(D) 第 15 句 *to which his wife . . .* 的 *which* 乃指 *if the supper was ready* 這個問句。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	flap	flapped [-pt]	flapped
	knock	knocked [-kt]	knocked
	surprise	surprised [-zd]	surprised

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
wood-cutter	wood-cutters	firewood	(無)
hut	huts	hunger	(無)
pancake	pancakes	cold	(無)

- 【造句】 (1) until an hour later (3) right away
 (2) knock ~ door (4) most likely

LESSON 69

The Wood-cutter Explains

- (1) "Ah," said the wood-cutter, "I remember now."
 (2) He then told his wife the following story.
 (3) "This morning when I was going through the forest to cut some firewood, I saw a bush that I thought would make good firewood. (4) I raised [rāzd] my ax

[æks] and was about to cut it, when I heard a voice [vois]. (5) 'Please don't cut the bush!' cried the voice. (6) I looked and found a pygmy [pīg'mī] under the bush. (7) I spared [spārd] him the bush, and he thanked me for it. (8) 'You have a kind heart [hārt],' said the pygmy to me, 'and deserve [dizêr'v] some reward [rīwôrd]. (9) I'll grant [grahnt] you and your wife three wishes. (10) You may wish whatever you like and they shall be granted you.' (11) So, you see, I wished for a hot, big, thick pancake, and a hot, big, thick pancake is here."

12. Where did the pancake come from?—It came from the pygmy.
13. What is a pygmy?—A pygmy is said to be a kind of man, very, very small in size, living in a forest.
14. What has this pygmy to do with this wood-cutter?—The pygmy lived under a bush and the wood-cutter was about to cut it, when the pygmy begged the wood-cutter to spare the bush for him. This the wood-cutter did, so the pygmy promised to grant the wood-cutter and his wife three wishes, no matter what they might be.
15. Was that why the wood-cutter got a pancake when he wished for it?
16. Yes, that was why.
17. What became of the other two wishes?
18. That we shall see in the next lesson.

生 字

4. raise [rāz]: 舉起。

ax, 或 axe [æks]: 斧頭。

voice [vois]: 聲音。

6. pygmy [pīg'mī]: 侏儒; 矮人。

7. spare [spɑːr]: 饒恕; 留下。 deserve [dɪzə'v]: 應得; 值得。
 8. heart [hɑːt]: 心。—*have a* reward [rɪwɔːd]: 酬報。
kind heart: 心慈, 仁慈。 9. grant [grɑːnt]: 允許, 賜。

講 義

(A) 引用文用雙鈎的引號 [“ ”] 來標明它, 如在引用文中又有引用時, 便用單鈎的引號 [' '] 來標明它。這是美國人的用法, 英國人的用法恰與這個相反: 先用單鈎的引號, 在單鈎的引號中的引用文, 始用雙鈎的引號去標明它。

(B) 把第 7 句的 *I spared him the bush* 拿來與第 14 句的 *to spare the bush for him* 比較一下。如果不明白這一點, 請再細閱第 51 課 *Indirect Objects*。

(C) 注意: 第 3 句 *I thought* 是插用的獨立詞句, *would make* 在意義上應緊接 *that*。參看本課第 11 句的 *you see* 及 65 課 2, 6 兩句的 *she thought*。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	raise	raised	raised
	spare	spared	spared
	deserve	deserved	deserved
	grant	granted [-tɪd]	granted
	cut	cut	cut
	單數	複數	單數
	reward	rewards	pygmy
	ax	axes	pygmies
	voice	voices	heart
			hearts
			bush
			bushes

【句法改造】 以下各句中的斜體字與黑體字, 試對換其位置, 而增減介詞:

- (1) The pygmy promised to grant the wood-cutter *three wishes*.
- (2) I give you *not many grammatical rules*.

- (3) He spared *the wish* for him.
 (4) She gives *two eggs* to me.

LESSON 70

The Second and Third Wishes

(1) When the wood-cutter's wife heard the story, she began to fret [frēt] and fuss [fūs] and scold [sköld].

(2) She scolded her husband for having wasted [wā'stɪd] one of the valuable [vāl'üəbl] wishes. (3) After fussing, fretting, and scolding him for a while, she ended with this sentence: (4) "I wish this horrid [hör'ɪd], wretched [ēch'ɪd] pancake would stick so fast [fahst] to your nose that no one could tear [tɪr] it off!" (5) And so it did.

(6) They had a very hard [hārd] time in their attempt [ətēpt'] to tear the cake off the wood-cutter's nose. (7) It simply couldn't [kōön] be done.

(8) At last, the wife suggested: (9) "Well, we still have one wish left, shall we wish that we have plenty of gold [göld]?" (10) We can wish so much gold to make you so rich [rɪch] that you won't mind having a pancake sticking to your nose all the while. (11) Shall we wish it that way?"

(12) At this, the wood-cutter protested [pretēs'tɪd]. (13) "No, no," he said, "I wish nothing of the kind. (14) I wish this horrid, wretched pancake were off my nose at once."

(15) And at once it fell off the wood-cutter's nose.

(16) So the wood-cutter and his wife had their three wishes but were none the better for them.

17. What did the wife of the wood-cutter do when she heard the story?—She scolded her husband for having wasted one of the valuable wishes, and she ended by saying that she wished that the pancake would stick to her husband's nose.
18. Did the pancake stick to the wood-cutter's nose?—Yes, it did. It stuck [stük] to his nose so fast that they could not tear it off.
19. What did they do then?—Then the wife suggested that they wish so much gold to make him so rich that he would not mind having a pancake sticking to his nose all the time.
20. Did he agree to it?—No, he said that he wished the pancake were off his nose at once, and at once it fell off.
21. What were the three wishes that the wood-cutter and his wife had?—First, he wished for a pancake, then she wished that the pancake would stick to his nose, and finally he wished that it would come off. All these three wishes were granted, but they were none the better for them.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. fret [f.ət]: 激怒, 焦灼, 煩擾。
fuss [füs]: 騷動, 大驚小怪。
scold [sköld]: 罵, 大罵。</p> | <p>tear [tär]: 扯, 撕。(過去時制
tore [tör, 或 tūr], 過去分詞
torn [törn])——tear off: 扯開,
撕掉。</p> |
| <p>2. waste [wäst]: 浪費。[價值。
valuable [vəl'üə.l]: 可貴; 有</p> | <p>6. hard [hård]: 辛勞的。
attempt [ət'empt/, 或 et'əmt/]:
嘗試, 企圖。</p> |
| <p>4. horrid [h'ör'ɪ:]: 可憎, 可怕的。
wretched [r'ɛʃ'h'id]: 乖運的。
fast [fah t:]: 固着的, 緊着的。
(熟詞)</p> | <p>7. couldn't [k'udnt, 如非在句末或
要特別地引起人家的注意時, 只讀</p> |

- kōōn]: 不能。(could not 之簡) 10. rich [rīch]: 富裕。 [抗議,
9. gold [gōld]: 金。 12. protest [prətēsɪ/, 或 prōtēsɪ/]:

講 義

- (A) 第 7 句是一句套語,意即“無論如何是做不成功的”。
(B) 第 10 句的 you won't mind . . . all the while, 意思是“你不以永遠有一箇麵筋餅黏在你的鼻頭爲意”。注意在這譯文中把“不以爲意”分開了,不如原文 won't mind 之放在一起。
(C) 第 14 句 pancake were off, 並不是錯誤,這是假設的語氣。
(D) none the better for them = “並不因它們(那三個願望)而較好”。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 66—70):

1. Appositives are words, or groups of words, used to repeat what we have just said in order to make it clearer.
2. Appositives are said to be in apposition with the words which precede them.
3. Appositives serve as adjectives and are diagrammed as such.
4. Independent constructions are words, or groups of words, which are independent of the sentences in which they appear.
5. They are independent of the sentences, so far as the sentence construction is concerned; as to the meaning, they are closely related to the sentences.
6. There are three kinds of independent constructions: the parenthetical expression, the nominative of direct address, and the interjection.
7. When we wish to qualify or comment on what we say, we use a parenthetical expression.

8. When we want to call the attention of our listener, we address him by name. This address by name is called the **nominative of direct address**.
9. An **interjection** is also an independent construction, as it does not affect the sentence construction.
10. **Independent constructions** are placed, in analysis, beside the diagrams of the sentence; in which they appear.
11. Here is the story of a wood-cutter and his wife who had their three wishes but were none the better for them.
12. The wood-cutter went out on a winter day to the forest to get some firewood.
13. He spared a bush which was the home of a pygmy, and the pygmy promised to reward him by granting him and his wife three wishes.
14. When he went home, he felt cold and hungry, but the fire in his home went out and his supper was not ready, so he wished he had a pancake, and a pancake he did have.
15. When his wife was told of the story, she fussed and fretted and scolded her husband for not wishing something better, and she ended with wishing that the pancake would stick to his nose; and so it did.
16. They tried to tear it off but it simply couldn't be done.
17. The wife then suggested to wish so much gold to make him so rich that he wouldn't mind having a pancake sticking to his nose all the while.
18. But the husband wished nothing of the sort, he wished

that the pancake would come off his nose at once; and at once it fell away.

19. That was what had become of the three wishes.

* * *

LESSON 71

How to Get There (I)

STRANGER [strā'njə]: (1) Excuse me, I want to go to H— Road [rōd], would you kindly show me how to get there?

POLICEMAN [pələ'smən]: (2) It's quite a long way from here. (3) You'd [ūd] better take a rickshaw [rīk'-shaw].

STRANGER: (4) How far is it, three miles?

POLICEMAN: (5) No, not quite two miles, don't you need a rickshaw?

STRANGER: (6) Two miles? (7) No, that's nothing to me. (8) You see, I come from the country [kūn'trī], and I'm [im] used to walking. (9) I will walk there, if you can show me the way.

POLICEMAN: (10) All right, you go east for about half a mile, and you'll come to a cross-road [krōs'rō'd], take the one that branches [brāh'nehz] off to your left. (11) From there walk on for about one-third [wūn'thīr'd] of a mile, and you come to the down town section [sēk'-shən] of the city. (12) From there you will have to inquire again.

STRANGER: (13) Thanks.

POLICEMAN: (14) Don't mention it.

(15) From there the stranger takes the road pointed out by the policeman. (16) Soon he comes to the down town section of the city, where he inquires again.

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. stranger [stræ'njə, 注意 n 不可讀成 ng 音]: 不熟識的人。
road [rō:d]: 路。
<i>get there</i>: 到那邊。</p> <p>2. policeman [pələ'smən, 或 pō-, 或 plə's-, 但注意非 -līs-]: 警察。
<i>quite a long way from here</i>: 離此尚遠。</p> <p>3. you'd [ū'd]=you had 之簡。
rickshaw [rɪk'shaw]: 人力車。</p> <p>5. <i>not quit</i>: ~ miles: 不到(幾)英里。</p> | <p>8. country [kʌn'trɪ]: 鄉村。
I'm [ɪm]=I am 之簡。</p> <p>10. cross-road [krɒs' rō'd]: 歧路; 橫路; 分叉路; 十字路。
take [tāk]: 取(道)。
branch [brɑ:ntʃ]: 枝; (轉為) 分支 云謂詞。 「之一」。</p> <p>11. one-third [wʌn'thɪ'd]: 三分之一。
section [sɛk'shən]: 部分。
<i>down town section of a city</i>: 市中心; 市之熱鬧處。</p> <p>12. inquire [ɪnkwɪr']: 詢問。</p> |
|---|--|

講 義

(A) rickshaw 或 jinrickshaw 乃日文“人力車”的譯音; rickshaw 雖為 jinrickshaw 之簡,但字末並沒有“句號”(.)。最近此字或拼作 ricksha, 或 ricsla。

(B) 第 7 句的 that 字係指 two miles; 但係指其距離的總數,非指其為二英里,所以用單數 (that), 不用複數 (those)。

(C) 注意: half a mile, quarter of a mile, one third of a mile 等等。

練 習

<p>【背誦】 現在時制</p> <p>branch</p> <p>inquire</p> <p>fret</p> <p>fuss</p>	<p>過去時制</p> <p>branched</p> <p>inquired</p> <p>fretted</p> <p>fussed</p>	<p>過去分詞</p> <p>branched</p> <p>inquired</p> <p>fretted</p> <p>fussed</p>
---	--	--

scold	scolded	scolded
waste	wasted	wasted
tear	tore	torn
attempt	attempted	attempted
protest	protested	protested

單數	複數	單數	複數
stranger	strangers	mile	miles
road	roads	section	sections
rickshaw	rickshaws	cross-road	cross-roads
branch	branches[-chɪz]	gold	(無)
policeman	policemen (讀音 與單數同)	one-third	two-thirds [tʊɪ'- θɪɹ'dz]

It's quite a long way yet.
How far is it?
Would you kindly show me the way to ——?
Oh, that's nothing to me.

【造句】 試以下列云謂詞的過去分詞各造一完了時制的句子：

1. write 2. eat 3. take 4. get 5. put

LESSON 72

How to Get There (II)

(1) When the stranger reaches the down town section, he goes to one shop and inquires of the clerk.

STRANGER: (2) Excuse me, how can I get to H——
Road?

CLERK: (3) It's about one mile yet, I would advise [ədvi'z] you to také a tram [trām].

STRANGER: (4) Tram? What is it?

CLERK: (5) Tram? Look, there it passes.

STRANGER: (6) Ah, I see, street car [strēt kār].

CLERK: (7) Yes, "street car" as Americans call it, but the English call it "tram".

STRANGER: (8) Thanks, but I want to walk there. (9) Your country cousin doesn't mind walking at all, besides, he wants to see things in the city.

CLERK: (10) Very well, then turn this corner [kōr'nə] and go north for three blocks [blōks], then turn east again and walk for about three quarters of a mile and you will come to a square [skwār]. (11) There are many roads that lead [léd] to the square, one of them is H—Road.

STRANGER: (12) Thanks very much.

CLERK: (13) Don't mention it.

生 字

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 3. advise [ədvi'z]: 勸告。 | 鄉下人。 |
| tram [trām], 或 tramcar [trām/kār]: 電車。 | 10. corner [kōr'nə]: 角; 邊際。 |
| 6. street [strēt]: 街; 街道。 | Block [blōk]: 塊; (在指示道路時專指)四面皆路之方地。 |
| car [kār]: 車。——street car: (街車), 電車。 | square [skwār]: 四方; 四方的; 四方的空地, 方場。 |
| 9. country cousin: (鄉下的表兄弟), | 11. lead [léd]: 引導; (路)通。 |

講 義

- (A) your country cousin (你的鄉下的表兄弟) = '我們鄉下人'。
 (B) square 指空地時, 其地未必是四方的。

- (G) tram 或作 tramcar [trām'kɑː],
 (D) 注意 inquire: of the clerk 中的介詞 of.

練 習

【背誦】		現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
		advise	advised [-zd]	advised
		lead	led [lɛd]	led
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數	
tram	trams	corner	corners	
tramcar	tramcars	block	blocks	
street	streets	square	squares	
car	cars	country cousin	country cousins	
street car	street cars	quarter	quarters	

【造句】 試以下列諸云謂詞各造一將來完了時制之句子：

1. buy 2. go 3. have 4. bear 5. divide

LESSON 73.

How to Get There (III)

X: (1) Pardon me, would you kindly show me the way to S— Street?

Y: (2) I am sorry, I don't know. (3) I'm a stranger in the city too.

Z: (4) Take this street and walk down that direction.
 (5) Go straight on till you come to F— Street, then turn to the south.

X: (6) Excuse me, I can't tell the direction, as there is no sun today.

Z: (7) You needn't worry [nē'dn wūr'i] about that, there is a small clock tower [tow'ə] standing at the crossroad, and on top of the tower you will find a direction indicator [in'dikā'tə]. (8) From there you go southward [sow'thwəd] and you will come to a vacant [vā'kənt] ground. (9) On one side of the vacant ground you will find one tall [tawl] building, which faces the S— Street.

X: (10) Thanks awfully.

Z: (11) You are welcome.

Y: (12) And would you kindly tell me how to get back to my hotel [hō:'el]? (13) I am staying in the Oriental [ōr'iēnt'l] Hotel.

Z: (14) Come with me, I can take you half of the way, as we are going in the same direction. . . . (15) Now here we part [pɑ:t]. (16) You take this street and I take that one. (17) You follow this street till you come to a circle [s.ɪr'kl] with a bronze statue [brɔ:nz stæt'ʊ]. (18) There are five roads leading to the circle. (19) Take the one directly opposite [ɒp'əzɪt] to this street, and walk on for two blocks, then turn to your left and walk on for three more blocks, and you will be standing before your hotel.

Y: (20) Thanks ever so much.

Z: (21) You are welcome.

生 字

6. tel [tɛl]: 告訴; (轉爲) 提提。
7. needn't: [ni:dn't], 除非在句末或重讀時才音不讀出; need not 之前。

- worry [wʊ'ri]: 憂慮。
tower [tow'ə]: 似塔的樓。——
clock tower: 鐘樓。
indicator [in'dikə'tə]: 指明

- 者。——*direction indicator*: 方向指明針。 [南。]
8. *southward* [sow'hwəd]: 向
vacant [vā'kənt]: 空的。
come to: 到。
9. *tall* [tawl]: 高的。
12. *get back*: 回。
hotel [hōtəl', 或 h 不讀]: 旅館。
13. *oriental* [ō'riən'el]: 東方的。
——*Oriental Hotel*: 東方旅館。
14. *take* [tek]: 帶, 領。
half of the way: 一半的路程。
15. *part* [pɑ:t]: 分離。
17. *circle* [sɪr'kl]: 圓環; (轉爲) 圓形空地。
bronze [brɒnz]: 青銅。
statue [stæt'ū]: 像。——*bronze statue*: 銅像。
19. *opposite* [ōp'ozit]: 對面。——
directly opposite: 正對面。

講 義

(A) *Oriental Hotel* 因爲它是專名詞, 所以兩字的第一個字母都用大寫。

(B) *circle* 所指的空地不一定是圓的, 正如 *square* 不一定是四方形的情形相仿。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	worry	worried	worried
	part	parted	parted

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
tower	towers	circle	circles
indicator	indicators	statue	statues
hotel	hotels	half	halves

Pardon me.
I am sorry, I don't know.
Don't worry about it.
I can take you there.

【造句】 用以下諸云謂詞各造一現在時制受動態的句子:

1. take 2. eat 3. drink 4. hear 5. see

LESSON 74

The Fly and the Moth

(1) One day as he was hunting for food, a fly [fi] found a jar [jɑr] of jam [jɑm]. (2) He flew [flo] to it and began to eat the jam on the edge [ɛdʒ] of the jar. (3) It tasted good, and he wanted to have more and more of it. (4) So he went farther and farther in, toward the center [sɛn'tə], and finally he got stuck in the jam. (5) He tried and tried, but he could not get off.

(6) Just then a moth [moθ] passed by. (7) Seeing the fly's useless struggle [u'slɪs strʌg'l], the moth said: (8) "That serves you right, you foolish [foʊ'liʃ], greedy fly!" (9) What could the poor fly say? (10) He knew it served him right.

(11) Soon evening came, and on the same table where the jar of jam stood, a candle was lit [lɪt]. (12) The same moth flew around the candle, ever nearer and nearer, and finally he flew straight to the flame. (13) He was scorched [sɔrɔt] and tried to escape [ɪskə'p], but he fell into the jar of jam. (14) Then the fly said to him: (15) "What, are you so foolish as that? (16) You know my fault [fawlt], but not your own?"

(17) Don't we often act [ækt] like the moth? (18) Often we can see other people's fault, but not our own!

生 字

1. fly [fi]: 蒼蠅(名詞); 飛(動詞)
過去時制 flew [flo], 過
去分詞 flown [flɔn].

jar [jɑr]: 罐, 瓶, 罐。
jam [jɑm]: 果醬。
2. edge [ɛdʒ]: 旁邊, 邊緣。

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4. center, 或 centre [sɛn'tɜ:]: 中央, 中心。 | 11. light [lit]: 點火(云謂詞)。(過去時制及過去分詞 lighted [lɪ'tɪd] 或 lit [lɪt])。 |
| 5. <i>git off</i> : 離去。 | 13. scorch [skɔ:tʃ]: 焦灼。 |
| 6. moth [mɔ:h]: 蛾。 | escape [ɪskə'p]: 逃避。 |
| useless [u'si:ls]: 無用的。 | 15. fault [fɔ:lt]: 過失, 缺點。 |
| struggle [strʌg'l]: 掙扎。 | 17. act [ækt]: 做事。 |
| 9. foolish [fʊə'li:ʃ]: 愚蠢的。 | |

講 義

(A) he wanted to have more and more of it of the it 指果醬。直譯為“他要與更多與更多的它”；此句可意譯為“他越喫越想多與些”。

(B) 同樣地 The same moth flew around the candle, ever nearer and nearer (那同一的蛾飛着在燭的四週, 永遠_更近又較近)可譯為“這隻蛾在蠟燭四週飛着, 越飛越近”。

(C) That serves you right (那服務於你對的) = “那正是你所應得的報酬”, 即“那有應得”。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	light	{lighted [-tɪd] lit [lɪt]}	{lighted lit
	scorch	scorched [-cht]	scorched
	escape	escaped [-pt]	escaped
	act	acted [æk'tɪd]	acted
	fly	flew [flʊ]	flown [flɔ:n]
單數	複數	單數	複數
fly	flies [flɪz]	center	centers
jar	jars	moth	moths [-ths]
jam	jams (多種的果醬)	struggle	struggles
edge	edges [ɛdʒɪz]	fault	faults

- 【造句】 (1) the more . . . the better
 (2) the cheaper . . . the poorer
 (3) the less . . . the nicer

LESSON 75

"In Winter I Get Up by Night", etc.

(I)

1. In winter I get up at night, (1)
 A n' dress by yellow candle light, (2)
 In summer, quite the other way, (3)
 I have to go to bed by day. (4)
2. I have to go to bed and see (5)
 The birds still hopping [hōp'ing] on the tree, (6)
 Or hear the grown-up [grō'n-ūp'] people's feet (7)
 Still going past me in the street. (8)
3. And does it not seem [sēm] hard to you [yōō], (9)
 When all the sky is clear [klēr] and blue [blōō], (10)
 And I should like so much to play, (11)
 To have to go to bed by day? (12)
 —Robert Louis Stevenson. (13)

(II)

1. Girls and boys, (14)
 Come out and play, (15)
 The moon does shine as bright [b. it] as day. (16)

- | | | |
|----|--|------|
| 1. | Come with a hoop [hōōp], | (17) |
| | Come with a call, | (18) |
| | Come with a good will or not at all. | (19) |
| 2. | Leave your supper, | (20) |
| | Leave your sleep, | (21) |
| | Come to your play-fellows in the street! | (22) |
| 3. | Up the ladder [lād'ə], | (23) |
| | Down the wall, | (24) |
| | A penny loaf [lōf] will serve us all. | (25) |

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. <i>by day</i> : (於)日間。 | 18. <i>call</i> [kawɪ]: 叫喊。 |
| 6. <i>hop</i> [hɒp]: 跳躍。 | 19. <i>good will</i> : 好意, 誠心。 |
| 7. <i>grown-up</i> [grō'n-ŭp']: 長大的, 長成的。 | 22. <i>play-fellow</i> [plā'fēlvō]: 遊伴。 |
| 9. <i>seem</i> [sē'm]: 好像, 看起來像~。 | 23. <i>ladder</i> [lād'ə]: 梯子, 可移動的, 如消防隊所用的梯子。 |
| 10. <i>clear</i> [klē]: 晴朗的。 | 25. <i>loaf</i> [lōf]: 塊; (在此處專指) 一塊麵包。(複數 <i>loaves</i> [lōvz]) |
| 16. <i>bright</i> [br.i]: 明亮的。 | |
| 17. <i>hoop</i> [hōō]: (小兒遊戲用的) | |

講 義

(A) 第 3 行 = In summer, it is quite the other way.

(B) *past me* = “自我這兒經過”。但這不是真的從他身邊走過, 看下去有 *in the street* 字樣便知。

(C) 第 3 節 (9 至 12 行) 全句的意思是這樣: “當日間滿天都是蔚藍晴朗, 我正要玩耍的時候, 卻非去就寢不可, 這依你看來, 豈不是很難的嗎?”

(D) 第 16 行的 *bright*, 本應用 *brightly*; 但因音節的關係而用 *bright*。

(E) 第 19 行的 *good will* (= 好意) 乃指家長的願意。

(F) 第 20, 21 兩行的 *leave* 字應作 “拋棄, 丟下” 解。

(G) 第 23, 24 兩行的 *up* 與 *down* 應作 “爬上”, “爬下” 解。

(H) 第 25 行 = “一塊一擲上的麵包已够咱們大家喫了”。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 71—75):

1. I want to go to B— Road, would you kindly tell me how to get there?
2. Would you kindly show me how to go to B— Road?
3. I wish to go to B— Road, would you kindly show me the way?
4. Would you walk there, or would you rather take a rickshaw?
5. I'll walk there, if you will kindly show me the way.
6. Take this road and walk on for three blocks, then turn to your left, and when you have walked a few more blocks, you will find B— Road.
7. I know it's in that direction, but I don't know exactly how to get there.
8. You may walk to the square and then inquire again.
9. That's easy, you turn this corner and walk on till the road branches into two, and you'll find one of them is B— Road.
10. You may take this road till you come to a clock tower and then turn to your right, or you may take that road till you come to a bronze statue, and then turn to your left. In either case, you will be in B— Road when you turn.
11. You know, it's long a way yet. Perhaps you would like to go by tram?
12. If it's a long way yet, I'll take the street car.
13. Then you wait here. Take No. 5 or 8 car to the S— Circle, then change to No. 1, you can reach B— Road by No. 1.

14. Take this tram to H—— Road; where you will see a tall building with a clock tower on top of it, then get down and walk on for two more blocks and you will find it.
15. You take No. 3 tram as far as it goes, and you will come to the road you are looking for.
16. No, no, no, that's directly opposite of what I said. I said he is my cousin from the country, I never said he was a country cousin.
17. Is there any difference between a "cousin from the country" and a "country cousin"?
18. Oh yes, a "country cousin" may not be my cousin.
19. A fly can fly, but can a moth fly too?
20. Oh yes, a moth flies [fliz] as a fly.
21. Pass me that jar of jam, please.
22. Don't be foolish, let's leave it, any more struggle is useless.
23. Light the lamp please, it's dark already.
24. Don't act like that!
25. I can't reach that high, get me a ladder.
26. Who is that man?
27. Why, don't you know him? He is your old play-fellow, Tsu-yi.
28. Can it be? He is a grown-up person now.
29. How many loaves do you need? Three? All right, don't you like to take some jam with you?
30. A good salesman always gets his customers' good-will.
31. Today is certainly a fine day, the sun is bright and the sky clear and blue.

LESSON 76

On a Tram

CONDUCTOR [kændük'tə]: (1) Tickets [tík'its], tickets, tickets please.

TRAM-RIDER [trām'rī'də] No. 1: (2) How much for going to Tibet [tībēt'] Road?

CONDUCTOR: (3) Nine coppers . . . Thanks . . . Here's the ticket.

TRAM-RIDER NO. 2: (4) Chungshan Road?

CONDUCTOR: (5) Sixteen coppers . . . Thanks . . . Here's the ticket.

TRAM-RIDER NO. 3: (6) Twenty-one coppers, here's a twenty-cent piece.

CONDUCTOR: (7) Have you no coppers? (8) A twenty-cent piece equals, you know, to only forty coppers according to our rate [rāt] of exchange [ikschā'nj].

TRAM-RIDER NO. 3: (9) That's all right, I haven't any copper about me.

CONDUCTOR: (10) Thanks, here's your ticket and here's your change. (11) Tickets, tickets please.

TRAM-RIDER NO. 4: (12) Season.

CONDUCTOR: (13) Tickets, tickets please.

TRAM-RIDER NO. 5: (14) Pass [pahs].

CONDUCTOR: (15) Let me see.

TRAM-RIDER NO. 5: (16) Here it is.

CONDUCTOR: (17) All right. (18) Tickets, tickets please.

TRAM-RIDER NO. 6: (19) Season.

CONDUCTOR: (20) Let me have a look.

TRAM-RIDER NO. 6: (21) I forgot to bring it with me.
(22) My number is 2481. My name's

CONDUCTOR: (23) Oh, that's all right.

TRAM-RIDER NO. 3: (24) Open the door please, I want to get off here.

CONDUCTOR: (25) Yes, sir, Mongolia [mǒngō/lyə] Road. (26) Inside please, go inside please, plenty of space [ʃpās] inside, go inside, go inside please. (27) Tickets, tickets.

TRAM-RIDER NO. 7: (28) What is the fare [fār] to Nanchang Road?

CONDUCTOR: (29) To which part of Nanchang Road, sir? (30) It's a long, long road, you know.

TRAM-RIDER NO. 7: (31) Corner of Hankow and Nanchang Roads.

CONDUCTOR: (32) Fifteen coppers, sir. (33) Tibet Road, Tibet Road, any one gets off at Tibet Road? (34) Tickets, tickets please.

TRAM-RIDER NO. 8: (35) To Hankow Road, what is the fare?

CONDUCTOR: (36) Where did you get on the tram?

TRAM-RIDER NO. 8: (37) The last stop [stōp].

CONDUCTOR: (38) Twelve coppers.

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| conductor [kɒndʌk'tə, 或 kɒn-]: 指導者, 管理者; 車上的賣票人。 | 2. Tibet [tībət]: 西藏。——Tibet Road: 西藏路。(現已改爲“廣洽和路”) [西]。 |
| 1. ticket [tīk'it]: 票。 | 4. Chungshan Road: 中山路(在滬) |
| tram-rider [trām'ri'də]: 坐電車的人。 | 8. rate [rāt]: 率(即稅率, 速率等的率)。 |

- exchange** [iksčā'nj, 或 əks-]: 交換; 兌換銀錢。——*rate of exchange*: 銀錢的兌換率。
9. **about** [ə'bow'tj]: 近; 在我身上。
12. **season** [sē'zn]: 乃 *season ticket* (“季票”或“期票”)之簡。〔詞〕
14. **pass** [pahs]: 通行證, 免票證。(名)
24. **get off**: 下車。
25. **Mongolia** [mōngō'lyə, 或 mōn-gō'lōj]: 蒙古。——*Mongolia Road*: (上海)蒙古路 在公共租界北區)。
26. **space** [s:pās]: 空間; 空位。
28. **fare** [f:āj]: 車費。
Nanchang [nā'nčāh'əŋ]: 南昌 (江西省會)。——*Nanchang Road*: (上海)南昌路。
31. **Hankow** [hān'kəw']: 漢口。
Hankow Road: (上海)漢口路 (俗稱“三馬路”)。
36. **get on**: 上車。
37. **stop** [stōp]: 停止; (轉爲)電車站; 公共汽車站。(名詞)

講 義

(A) 本課及下課都是車上賣票人與乘客的對話, 語句不全的極多, 可是在車上的對話老是這樣的。

(B) *Tickets, tickets please=Buy your tickets please. ~ coppers = ~ coppers for going to. — Road, 或 The fare is ~ coppers.* 第 6 句的 *Twenty-one coppers=Give me a ticket of twenty-one coppers.*

(C) *Season=I have a season ticket. Pass=I have a pass.*

(D) *Inside please=Go inside please. Plenty of space inside=There is plenty of space inside.*

(E) 第 28 句=*What is the fare for going to Nanchang Road?* 第 35 句=*I want to go to Hankow Road, what is the fare?*

(F) *Any one gets off at Tibet Road?=Does any one want to get off at Tibet Road?*

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	hop	hopped	hopped
	seem	seemed	seemed

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
conductor	conductors	tram-rider	tram-riders
ticket	tickets	rate	rates
pass	passes	fare	fares

stop	stops	space	spaces
hoop	hoops	play-fellow	play-fellows
ladder	ladders	loaf	loaves

- 【造句】 (1) get on (3) about me
 (2) get off (4) rate of exchange

LESSON 77

On a Bus

BUS-RIDER [būs-rīdə] NO. 1: (1) What's the fare to Kuling Street?

CONDUCTOR: (2) We have one fare system, i.e. one fare for any distance [dīs'təns].

BUS-RIDER NO. 1: (3) How much is it?

CONDUCTOR: (4) Twenty coppers. (5) Chefoo Street, Chefoo Street . . . (6) Tickets, tickets please.

BUS-RIDER NO. 2: (7) How much to Tientsin Street?

CONDUCTOR: (8) You've got on wrong bus [rǒng būs].
 (9) You should have taken Route [rōōt] 5, and this is Route 3.

BUS-RIDER NO. 2: (10) Then let me off at the next stop.

CONDUCTOR: (11) Yes, I ring [rīng] the driver [drī'v] to stop and let you off here, at the request [rīkwěst'] stop.
 (12) The next compulsory [kǒmpǔl'sərī] stop is a long way yet.

BUS-RIDER NO. 2: (13) Thanks very much.

CONDUCTOR: (14) Don't mention it. (15) Get on, get on, quick, Route No. 3, those who want to go get on, quick

(16) Tickets, tickets please. (17) Change your tickets, please.

BUS-RIDER NO. 1: (18) Why, you said one fare for any distance, why do I have to buy my ticket now?

CONDUCTOR: (19) I am sorry I didn't explain you our system clearly. (20) I was in a hurry [hūr'í], you see. (21) The whole route is divided into four sections [sèk'/shenz], one fare covers two sections. (22) Your fare covers to the last stop, and you have to get a new ticket now.

BUS-RIDER NO. 1: (23) But I shall get off at the next stop.

CONDUCTOR: (24) It makes no difference [dif'rəns].

BUS-RIDER NO. 1: (25) But you didn't tell me beforehand [bifór'händ]. (26) If you had told me so, I would have gotten off at the last stop.

CONDUCTOR: (27) All right, then I will let you off at the next stop, and you needn't buy a new ticket.

BUS-RIDER NO. 1: (28) That's fair.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. bus-rider [būsri'də]: 公共汽車的乘客。
 Kuling [kōo'ling']: 牯嶺。——
 <i>Kuling Street</i>: 牯嶺街。</p> <p>2. distance [dīs'təns]: 距離; 遠。</p> <p>5. Chefoo [cheífoo']: 芝罘, 煙台。
 ——<i>Chefoo Street</i>: 芝罘街。</p> <p>7. Tientsin [tyén'tsín']: 天津。
 ——<i>Tientsin Street</i>: 天津街。</p> <p>8. wrong [rǒng]: 錯誤的。
 bus [būs]: 公共汽車。</p> <p>9. route [rōot]: 路線。——<i>Route 5</i> = 第五路。 <i>Route 3</i> = 第三路。</p> | <p>11. ring [r'ing]: 搖鈴; 搖鈴使~。
 driver [dri'və]: 驅逐者; 驅車者, 車夫。
 stop [stöp]: 停止。(云詞)
 request [r'ikwəst']: 請求。——
 <i>request stop</i>: 招呼站(要有人招呼, 公共汽車才停止的站); 小站。</p> <p>12. compulsory [kōmpül'səri, 或 kən-, 或 -səri]的ə音不讀亦可): 強制的; 劃定的。——<i>compulsory stop</i>: 汽車一定停止的站; 火站。
 <i>a long way yet</i>: 離此還遠。</p> <p>20. hurry [hūr'í]: 匆促。——<i>in a</i></p> |
|---|---|

- hurry*: 在匆促之間; 急促。
21. *section* [sɛk'shən]: 部分; 段。
24. *difference* [dif'rəns]: 差別,
25. *beforehand* [bɪfɔr'hænd, 或 bɛfɔr'hænd, 又 ɔr 或 ʌr]: 事前; 事先。
- cover* [kʌv'ə]: 包括, 包容。

講 義

(A) *bus* 原為 *omnibus* [ɔm'nɪbəs] 之簡, 但現在已當獨立的字用; 又複數為 *buses* 或 *busses*, 注意在加 *es* 之前或添一 *s* 或不添均可。

(B) *let me off*, *let you off* 等在 *off* 字之前應有 *get* 字; 但把這 *get* 字省去, 是很通行的用法。

(C) *Route No. 3* = *Route 3*, 嚴格地講, 當然以後一式為對。

(D) *get on*, *quick* 的 *quick* 乃 *be quick* 之簡。

(E) 第 24 句 = “那沒有差別”。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	ring	rang [rɑŋg]	rung [rʌŋg]
	stop	stopped	stopped
	request	requested	requested
	cover	covered	covered

單數	複數	單數	複數
bus-rider	bus-riders	section	sections
bus	{ buses	distance	distances
	{ busses	route	routes
driver	drivers	hurry	hurries

compulsory stop..... compulsory stops
request stop..... request stops

To —— Road, how much?

What is the fare to —— Street?

Please ring the driver and let me off here,

Please let me know beforehand

Are you in a hurry?

Yes, I am in great hurries.

- 【造句】 (1) as agreed upon ~
 (2) pays attention to ~
 (3) bear the brunt

LESSON 78

Sentences Classified according to Use

(1) We shall learn in this lesson one way of classifying [klās'ifiŋ] sentences. (2) We shall see how sentences are classified according to their uses [ū'siz].

(3) When we make a mere [mēr] statement, as in this sentence—I killed [kīld] a mosquito [məskō'to]—the statement is called a declarative [dīklār'ətīv] sentence.

(4) When we ask a question—e.g., Is Mrs. Sun in Shanghai?—the question is called an interrogative [in'terög'ətīv] sentence. (5) When we make a request—e.g., Please do come—the command or request is called an imperative [impēr'ətīv] sentence. (6) When we exclaim [īksklām]—How fast he runs!—we use an exclamatory [īksklām'ətəri] sentence.

(7) We have seen the four kinds of sentences classified according to their uses, namely [nā'mli], the declarative, the interrogative, the imperative, and the exclamatory sentences. (8) We shall see below how their uses influence [in'flōəns] their sentence constructions,

(9) The **declarative sentence** is the simplest [sɪm'plɪst] of all. (10) First comes the **subject**, then the **predicate verb**, and finally the **complement**, if there is any. (11) In an **interrogative sentence** we place the **predicate verb** (if it is *are, is, etc.* or *have, has, etc.*) or part of the **predicate verb** (usually *do, did, etc.*) before the **subject**, and let the rest [rɛst] follow after it. (12) We shall study the **word order** of these two kinds of sentences more in detail [dɛ'tɑ:l] later.

(13) An **imperative sentence** usually goes without the **subject**, which is understood. (14) That is to say, the **verb** comes first and then the **object**, if any. (15) However, if we wish to be more definite, we may put in the **subject** you—e.g., *You do it, don't let her do such a thing*. (16) We may also address the person whom we wish to request or command by name—e.g., *Teh-yung, let me pass*, or *Lo Yuchish, stand up*. (17) These two proper names are, as we have already seen, the **nominatives of direct address**.

(18) We **exclaim**, when we want to emphasize [ɛm'fɛsɪz] something. (19) In an **exclamatory sentence**, we put the thing we want to emphasize first, then the **subject**, and then the **predicate**. (20) For example, see sentence (6).

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. classify [klæs'ɪfɪ]: 類分。</p> <p>2. use [uː]: 用處;作用。(名詞)</p> <p>3. mere [mɛr]: 僅,只,唯。</p> <p>kill [kɪl]: 殺死;打死。</p> <p>mosquito [mɒskə'to, 注意 qui 不可讀成 kwɪ]: 蚊子。</p> <p>declarative [dɪklær'etɪv]: 陳</p> | <p>述的。——<i>declarative sentence</i>: 敘述句。</p> <p>4. interrogative [ɪn'tɛrɒg'etɪv]: 詢問的。——<i>interrogative sentence</i>: 詢問句。</p> <p>5. imperative [ɪmpɔr'etɪv]: 有權威的,命令的。——<i>imperative</i></p> |
|---|--|

- sentence*: 命令句。
6. **exclaim** [ɪksk.ləɪm, 或 ɒks-, 兩個 k 均只呼口氣]: 呼喊; 驚歎。
exclamatory [ɪkskləɪmə.tɪ, 或 ɒks-, 兩個 k 均只呼口氣]: 呼喊的 驚歎的。— *exclamatory sentence*: 呼喊句, 驚歎句。
7. **namely** [nəˈmli]: 舉名而說, 即, 就是。
8. **influence** [ɪnˈfluəns]: 影響。
9. **simplest** [sɪmˈplɪs,]: 最單純的。 [詞]
11. **rest** [ˈɛst]: 其餘的(部分)。(名)
12. **order** [ɔːˈde]: 秩序。— *word order*: 字在句中的秩序。
detail [deɪˈteɪl]: 細目。— *in detail*: 詳細地。
13. *go without* = no: 沒有。
16. *address ~ by name*: 呼~的名。
whom [hɒm]: 那個(指上一字所指的人)。(受格) [謂詞]
request [rɪˈkwɛst/]: 請求。(云
pass [p.ɪs]: 經過。
stand up: 立起來。
18. **empha-size** [ɛnˈfæɪz]: 注重, 加重語勢, 強調。

講 義

(A) 注意: *use* 當名詞用時讀 [u:s], 當云謂詞用時讀 [u:z]。Detail 當名詞用時讀 [deɪˈteɪl], 當云謂詞用時讀 [dɪˈteɪl]。

(B) 第 14 句的 *if any* 與第 11 句的 *if there is any* 意義全同, 而 *if any* 尤常見。

(C) *request* 可作名詞亦可作云謂詞用, 如第 5 句中 *make a request* = “作一虔請求”; 第 16 句中 *to request a person to do something* = “請求某人做一件事”。又, 上課 *request stop* 之 *request*, 原來是名詞, 但是作形容詞用, 以形容後一名詞 *stop* 的。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	kill	killed	killed
	exclaim	exclaimed	exclaimed
	address	addressed [-st]	addressed
	pass	passed [-st]	passed
	emphasize	emphasized	emphasized
	influence	influenced [-st]	influenced

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
use	uses [-sɪz]	mosquito	mosquitoes
idea	ideas	request	requests
detail	details	influence	influences
stomach	stomachs [-ks]	address	addresses
shower	showers	ship	ships
silk	silks (綢緞 絲織品)	sea	seas
salesman	salesmen	shade	shades
stock	stocks	skein	skeins

【畫綫圖】 分析以下諸句：

- (1) Don't say anything about this to anybody.
- (2) He killed a mosquito.
- (3) How fast he runs!

LESSON 79

The Order of Words

(1) We have seen in our last lesson that the subject precedes the predicate; this we call the natural order [nætʃrəl ɔr'də] (2) We have further seen that in interrogative sentence this order is inverted [ɪnvər'tɪd]. (3) We shall see, in this lesson, cases which reverse [rɪvər's] this natural order.

(4) There is one kind of pronoun, which is meant for asking questions, hence called the interrogative pronoun. (5) A interrogative sentence that begins with an interrogative pronoun has the natural order of subject and predicate.

Examples: (6) *Who goes there?* (7) *Which of the knives [nīvz] is sharper [shār'pə]?*

(8) All the other cases of inverted order which we shall study in this lesson are connected with certain words or phrases.

(9) Let us begin with *nor* and *neither*. Examples: (10) A: I didn't do it. B: *Nor did I*: (11) I *neither* meant it, *nor did* I say something similar [sīm'īlə] to it. (12) My glass is not broken, *nor is* yours. (13) He did not attend the meeting [mē'tīŋg], *neither did* you. (14) The last lesson was not heard, *neither is* this. (15) *Neither was* Johnny in favour of this, *nor was* I.

(16) *It* and *there* are sometimes used merely to introduce a sentence. (17) In such usage, they are called the expletives [īksplē'tīvz]. (18) When *it* is used expletively [īksplē'tīvlī], it is considered the grammatical subject, but not *there*. (19) When a sentence is introduced by *there*, we have the inverted order of the subject and the predicate. Examples: (20) *There are* knife and fork [fōrk] on the table. (21) *There is* no one to look after this sick man. (22) *Is there* tea? (23) *Are there* eggs?

(24) Observe the following examples: (25) We had scarcely [skār'sli] (or *hardly*) begun to eat when he came in—*Scarcely* (or *hardly*) had we begun to eat, when he came in. (26) *No sooner* [sōō'nə] had we begun to eat than he came in.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. natural [näch'ræl]: 自然的。
—the natural order: 自然秩序。 | 3. reverse [rīvēr's, 或 revēr's]: 反轉; 倒退。 |
| 2. invert [īnvēr't]: 倒置; 倒轉。 | 4. interrogative pronoun : 詢問代名詞。 |

7. knife [naɪf]: 小刀, 洋刀。(複數 knives [naɪvz])
 sharper [ʃɑːpə]: 較犀利。
11. similar [sɪmɪlɪə]: 相同的。
12. glass [glɑːs]: 玻璃; (轉爲) 玻璃杯。(複數 glasses [glɑːsɪz])
13. meeting [miːtɪŋ]: 會議, 會。
15. in favour [ɪn'fævə]: 贊許。——in favour of: 贊同。
17. expletive [ɪksplə'tɪv, 或 ðks-]: 穢補語, 穢用語。
18. expletively [ɪksplə'tɪvli, 或 ðks-]: 當穢補語用。
20. fork [fɔːk]: 叉子。
25. scarcely [skɑːsli] ~ when: 甫~即, 剛~便。
 hardly ~ when: 甫~即, 剛~便。
26. sooner [suːnə]: 較早。——o sooner: 剛剛。——no sooner ~ than: 剛~即, 甫~即。

講 義

(A) 第 4 句 which is meant for asking questions = “那原爲提出問題之用的”。is meant for = “原來是要爲~之用的”。

(B) neither ~ nor = “不~也不~”。

(C) 第 18 句的 but not there 是簡句, 如把全句寫出, 當如下: but it is not so with there.

(D) 注意: no sooner ~ than = scarcely (或 hardly) ~ when.

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	precede	preceded	preceded
	invert	inverted	inverted
	reverse	reversed	reversed

單數	複數	單數	複數
knife	knives	glass	glasses
meeting	meetings	expletive	expletives
fork	forks	phrase	phrases

【造句】 用下列連詞短語各造二句:

- (1) neither . . . nor
 (2) no sooner . . . than

LESSON 80

Don't Blow Hot and Cold

(1) One winter day, a man walking in a forest lost his way. (2) He had nothing to eat for some time, and was nearly frozen to death [nēr'li frō'zn tə dēth].

(3) In that forest lived a satyr [săt'ə]. (4) The Satyr happened to pass by and, seeing the man in such a state [stāt], pitied [pīt'id] him and took him to his cave [kāv]. (5) For the Satyr had a cave for his home.

(6) As they walked, the man blew on his fingers. (7) The Satyr, who knew very little of man, asked: (8) "Why do you blow on your hands?"

(9) To this question, the man replied: (10) "Why, to warm them, you see, my fingers are nearly frozen." (11) They went on and soon came to the Satyr's cave.

(12) They went in, and the Satyr gave the man, from a boiling cauldron [bōi'liŋ kaw'ldrən], a bowl of soup to give him warmth [wōrmth] and strength [strēngth]. (13) As the soup was very, very hot, the man again blew on it. (14) Seeing this, the Satyr cried: (15) "Isn't the soup hot enough?"

(16) "Well," replied the man, "I am blowing to cool it, this time."

(17) At this, the Satyr became very angry [āng'grī] and cried: (18) "I'll have nothing to do with you, you who can blow hot and cold out of the same mouth."

19. Do you know what this phrase, *blow hot and cold*, means?—No, I don't know.

20. It means changing from side to side very often.
21. Whatever you do, don't blow hot and cold.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>lose one's way</i> : 迷路。 | 詞 <i>blow</i> [bləʊn] |
| 2. <i>nearly</i> [nɛrli]: 幾乎。 | 10. <i>warm</i> [wɔ:m]: 使溫暖。(云謂詞) |
| <i>freeze</i> [frɔ:z]: 結冰, 凍。(過去時制 <i>froze</i> [frɔ:z], 過去分詞 <i>frozen</i> [frɔ:z.]) | 12. <i>boil</i> [boil]: 沸。—— <i>boiling</i> : 沸 |
| <i>death</i> [deθ]: 死, 死亡。(名詞) | <i>cauldron</i> [kaw'ldrɔ:n, 或 kɔ:l]: 鍋子。 |
| —— <i>frozen to death</i> : 凍死。 | <i>warmth</i> [wɔ:mθ]: 溫暖; 熱 |
| 3. <i>satyr</i> [sætə]: 森林中之神。 | <i>strength</i> [strɛŋθ]: 氣力。 |
| 4. <i>state</i> [stæt]: 情境。 | 16. <i>cool</i> [kʊl]: 使冷。(云謂詞) |
| <i>pity</i> [pɪtɪ]: 可憐。(云謂詞) | 17. <i>angry</i> [ɔ:n,'gri]: 發怒的, 脾氣的。 |
| <i>cave</i> [kæv]: 洞。 [為家。 | 18. <i>blow hot and cold</i> : 朝秦暮楚。 |
| 5. <i>had the cave for his home</i> : 洞 | 20. <i>from side to side</i> : 自這邊到那邊。 |
| 8. <i>blow</i> [blɔ:]: 吹氣。(云謂詞) | |
| (過去時制 <i>blew</i> [blu:], 過去分 | |

講 義

(A) *satyr* 乃森林中之神, 普通字典譯為“半人半山羊之神”, 實不準確, 因這是羅馬人的觀念, 希臘人則以為 *satyr* 似人而有馬耳馬尾者, 此名正來自希臘。

(B) 注意第 13 句中 *blow on it* 的 *blow* 是自止云謂詞。

(C) 第 19 句中的 *what this phrase, blow hot and cold, means* 是一個名詞子句而為 *know* 的賓語, 所以不作 *what does this phrase, blow hot and cold, mean?*

(D) *have X for Y* = 以 X 為 Y。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	<i>freeze</i>	<i>froze</i>	<i>frozen</i>
	<i>pity</i>	<i>pitied</i>	<i>pitied</i>
	<i>boil</i>	<i>boiled</i>	<i>boiled</i>

cool		cooled		cooled	
blow		blew		blown	
單數	複數	單數	複數	單數	複數
death	deaths [-ths]	satyr	satyrs		
state	states	cave	caves		
cauldron	cauldrons	warmth	—		
strength	strengths [-ths]	forest	forests		

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 76—80):

1. Sentences may be classified according to their different uses.
2. A declarative sentence makes a mere statement.
3. An interrogative sentence asks a question.
4. An imperative sentence makes a command or request.
5. An exclamatory sentence exclaims.
6. These different uses affect their sentence constructions.
7. In a declarative sentence the subject comes first, then the predicate, and finally the complement, if any.
8. In an interrogative sentence, if the predicate verb is *be* or *have*, we reverse the word order of the verb and the subject; but if the sentence has any of the other verbs for the predicate verb, then we put *do* before the subject while the verb and the complement, if any, come after it, as in a declarative sentence.
9. But when an interrogative sentence begins with an interrogative pronoun, it has the natural order.

10. In an imperative sentence the subject is usually understood, although to make it more definite, we may put in the subject or use a nominative of direct address.
11. In an exclamatory sentence, we put the thing we wish to emphasize first, then the subject, then the predicate and finally the complement, if any.
12. When the predicate follows the subject, they are said to be in the natural order; but there are cases in which the order may be reversed, and this kind of word order is called the inverted order.
13. Sentences introduced by such words as *nor* (and sometimes *neither*), the expletive *there*, and adverbs *scarcely*, *hardly*, *no sooner*, etc. also have the inverted order.
14. Tickets, tickets please.
15. Season.
16. Pass.
17. How much for going to X Road?
18. What is the fare to Y Road?
19. I am going to Z Road, what is the fare?
20. Please ring the driver to stop, I want to get off here.
21. M—— Road, does anybody want to get off here?
22. Come on, quick, quick.
23. Inside please, plenty of space inside, go inside please.
24. Do you want to get off here? There is neither compulsory stop nor request stop here. You will have to wait till the next stop.
25. Change your ticket please, your fare covers only to the last section (or stop).
26. Once a Satyr saved a man from being frozen to death by taking him to his cave.

27. On the way, the man blew on his fingers to warm them; and when they reached the cave, the man was given a bowl of boiling soup, and he blew on it to make it cold; so the Satyr would have nothing to do with him, because he could blow hot and cold out of the same mouth.

* * *

LESSON 81

Whose Treat will It Be?

X: (1) We dined [dīnd] at your uncle's last night, why were you not there?

Y: (2) Our club had a meeting last night, why did you not come?

X: (3) I had something important to discuss [dīskūs'] with your uncle.

Y: (4) I had something important to report to our club, and we had a very nice dinner too.

X: (5) Have we got a new cook? (6) The cooking at our club used to be terribly [tēr'iblī] bad, that's why I have not gone there for a long time.

Y: (7) Yes, the cook was changed long ago. (8) Come let's go and have our dinner there.

X: (9) Whose treat [trēt] will it be?

Y: (10) Mine, of course, I invite you to go there.

X: (11) All right, thanks.

X: (12) Waiter, come here.

Z: (13) Yes, directly.

X: (14) All right, let's get our order ready. (15) Here is the bill of fare [bíl'əv fā], what will you have?

Y: (16) Do you take lobster [lɔb'stə]?

X: (17) Lobster? No, but you order what you like, I will take care of myself.

Z: (18) Here are the pen and paper, please put down the courses you like. (19) Excuse me, I am terribly busy this noon.

Y: (20) Is this the right season for crabs [kræbz]?

Z: (21) Oh yes, we have them.

X: (22) Oh no, the season is almost over for crabs. (23) You can never trust [trʌst] what a waiter says.

Y: (24) All right, here it goes. (25) One plate of lobster, one mandarin [mæn'dərɪn] fish, one cabbage stewed in clear soup. (26) What would you have?

X: (27) Pick out your courses first, then I'll have mine.

Y: (28) This is quite enough for me.

X: (29) Don't you care for some beef, and some liver [lɪv'ə]?

Y: (30) Yes, and is he good at kidneys [kɪd'nɪz]?

X: (31) Oh fair, shall I put it down?

Y: (32) Yes, and cancel [kæn'sl] the mandarin fish then.

X: (33) Oh that's all right. (34) Waiter, come here, here's our order.

Z: (35) Yes. (36) Very sorry, no more kidney left, will periwinkle [pɛ.'iwiŋkl] do?

Y: (37) All right.

crab	crabs	mandarin	mandarins
liver	livers	mandarin fish	mandarin fish
periwinkle	periwinkles	kidney	kidneys

【畫綫圖】 分析第 13, 18, 36 三句。

LESSON 82

I Want to Get Business, Pure and Simple:

X: (1) What had you last night?

Y: (2) It was a regular [rэг'ulə] dinner, you know what that is.

X: (3) Did you have awabi [əwah'bi]?

Y: (4) No, we didn't have that.

X: (5) And shark's fins [sharks fɪnz]?

Y: (6) Oh yes, we had imported [ɪmpɔr'tɪd] quite a few cases of shark's fins from Singapore [sɪng'gəpɔr], and your uncle got some from us.

X: (7) Say, have you got swallow's nests. [swɔl'ɔz nɛsts]? (8) All right, send me half a catty, this afternoon, to my office. (9) Now, don't you, don't you forget to send the bill too.

Y: (10) All right, let me put it down lest. [ləst] forget. (11) Half a catty of swallow's nests, grade [grəd] one or grade two?

X: (12) What do you think?

Y: (13) I would advise you to take grade two, the difference between them is really not great.

X: (14) All right, I'll take grade two, then, and save some money.

Y: (15) All right, grade two, send to office and collect [kōlěkt/]. (16) I'll send you some sea cucumber [sē kū/-kəmbe] too.

X: (17) No, please don't.

Y: (18) No, it's not a present from me, it's sample, I want to get business, pure [pūr] and simple.

X: (19) If that's the case, then send me more.

Y: (20) With pleasure.

X: (21) You see, my granduncle is very fond [fōnd] of it, I'll give him some.

Y: (22) That's good, two packages [pāk'ijlz] of sea cucumbers, free samples. (23) Ah yes, you talked of giving me some pigeons [pīj'inz]. (24) I believe I have now found a place for them.

X: (25) Good! I'll send them to you tomorrow, how many pairs do you wish to have?

Y: (26) Two or three to start with.

X: (27) I'll give you four pairs with a wooden box for their nests.

Y: (28) Thanks. (29) We shall soon have pigeon eggs, then.

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>2. regular [ˌɹɛg'ʊlə]: 循例的; 平常的。——<i>regular dinner</i>: 平常的酒席。</p> | <p>口進(貨)。(云謂詞)
Singapore [sɪŋ'gəʊ; oʊ', 或 -ɪ-ɔʊ']: 新加坡。</p> |
| <p>3. awabi [əwəh'bi]: 鮑魚。</p> | <p>7. say [sā]: 喂。(感歎詞)。</p> |
| <p>5. shark [ʃhɑ:k]; 沙魚。
fin [fɪn]: (魚的)翅。——<i>shark's fins</i>: 魚翅。</p> | <p>swallow [swɔ'l'ə]: 燕子。
nest [nɛst]: 巢; 窩。——<i>swallow's nests</i>: 燕窩。</p> |
| <p>6. import [ɪmpɔ't, 重音在後]: 進</p> | <p>10. lest [ˌɹɛst]: 恐怕, 否則怕, 以英。</p> |

11. **grade** [grād]: 等級, 號。
 15. **collect** [kölēkt/]: 收取; 收帳。
 18. **cucumber** [kū/kə:nbə]: 胡瓜。
 ——*sea cucumber*: 海參。
pure [pūr]: 純粹的。—— *pure and simple*: (純粹與簡單), 單純, 並無其他用意。
21. **fond** [ˈɒn!]: 愛, 嗜好。
 22. **package** [päck/ij]: 包裹。
free [frē]: 免稅。—— *free sample*: 免費貨樣。
 23. **pigeon** [pij'in]: 鴿。
 26. **to start with**: 以~開始。
 29. **pigeon eggs**: 鴿蛋。

講 義

- (A) say, you see, 等口頭語, 偶一用之固然無妨, 但切勿讓它成爲一種習慣。
 (B) 第 9 句的 don't you 並不是詢問句的構造, 乃命令句的強調說法。
 (C) 第 10 句 lest I forget = so that I may not forget.
 (D) “燕窩”在英文中有時作 bird's nest: (鳥巢); 但說 bird's nests (甚至 swallow's nests) 的時候並不一定是指“燕窩”, 有時可照字面解釋(即“鳥的巢”; “燕子的窩”)。
 (E) fond 與 of 常合在一起用。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	import	imported	imported
	collect	collected	collected
	單 數	複 數	單 數
	box	boxes	awabi
	shark	sharks	fin
	swallow	swallows	nest
	bill	bills	grade
	cucumber	cucumbers	sample
	package	packages	pigeon
	present	presents	catty
			awabis
			fins
			nests
			grades
			samples
			pigeons
			catties

【造句】 試以下列語短各造一過去時制的句子：

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) going to bed | (4) beg — pardon |
| (2) coming home | (5) farthest — the right |
| (3) feel sure | |

LESSON 83

Let's have Foreign Food

L: (1) Come on, let's go to the Tiny Café [ti'nǐ kāf'ā], it's a long time already since I had some foreign food.

M: (2) If you'll excuse me, I'd rather not go. (3) In the first place, I don't quite like foreign food. (4) In the second place, I am not used to [ū'stōō] foreign table manners [mǎn'əz].

L: (5) Precisely [přisǐ'slì] for the last reason, you have to go. (6) You must get used to it, as very likely you will get invited by foreigners from time to time.

M: (7) All right, then you'll have to teach me foreign table manners.

L: (8) There isn't much to learn. (9) It's only a matter of getting used to it. (10) If there's anything that you don't know, observe and see what other people do, especially [ispěsh'elì] your host [hōst].

M: (11) For instance, there is always this problem [přōb'lēm]: (12) Which napkin [nǎp'kín] shall I take, the one on my right hand side or the one on my left?

L: (13) The one on your left, as most of the people are right-handed [rǐ't-hǎn'dìd], and need their right hand for many other things.

M: (14) Then they have a set of fork and knife for fish, which should not be used [ʊzʌ] for other dishes, is that right?

L: (15) Yes, but it's easy to tell this set from all the others. (16) Both the knife and the fork are smaller than the others, and they have a silvery surface [sɪl'vəri sʊr'fɪs].

M: (17) Which is bigger, the soup spoon or the dessert-spoon [dɪzətʰt-ʃpʊn]?

L: (18) The soup spoon, of course. (19) Any other point?

M: (20) I always feel a bit embarrassed [ə bɪt ɪmbər'ɛst] to ask others to pass me something.

L: (21) You needn't feel embarrassed at all, when you have to ask people to pass you something. (22) It's perfectly [pɛr'fɪktli] all right to speak to those who sit near you, too, only you must speak low, don't speak too loud.

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. tiny [tɪ'nɪ]: 細小的。 | 9. matter [mætə]: 問題;關係。 |
| café [kə'fɛ]: 咖啡店;小菜館。 | 10. especially [ɪs'ɪ: ʃəl'ɪ, 或 ɛs-]: 特別地,尤其。 |
| 3. place [plæs]: 位。—— <i>in the first place</i> : 一則。 | host [hɔst]: 主人。 |
| 4. <i>in the second place</i> : 二則。 | 11. problem [prɒb'ləm, 或 prɒ'bləm]: 問題。 [之]布巾。 |
| manners [mæn'ɜz]: 禮貌,禮儀。—— <i>table manners</i> : 酒席間的禮儀。 [正,恰。 | 12. napkin [næp'kɪn]: (食時所用 |
| 5. precisely [prɪsɪ'sli]: 準確的, | 13. <i>most of the people</i> : 大半的人。 |
| 6. <i>get used to it</i> : 使習於那個。 | right-handed [rɪ't-hænd'ɪ:]: 慣用右手的。 |
| <i>very likely</i> : 很可能的,大概。 | 15. <i>tell ~ from ~</i> : 辨別~之非~。 |
| <i>get invited</i> : 被請。 | 16. silvery [sɪl'vɜ:ɪ, 或 ɪl'vɪ:ɪ]: 銀的;鍍銀的;像銀的;銀色的。 |
| <i>from time to time</i> : 時時,時或, | |

- surface [sʌr'fɪs]: 表面;外觀。
17. *soup spoon*: 湯匙。
- dessert [dɪz'ɛnt]: 甜食(西餐中的最後食品)。——*dessert-spoon* [dɪz'ɛnt-spʊn]: 喫甜食時所用的匙。
20. *bit* [bɪt]: 少許。——*a bit*=a little.
- embarrass [ɪm'ɛr'əs, ɛm-]: 困苦;羞愧不安。
22. *perfectly* [pɛr'fɪk.li]: 十分, 全然, 完全地。

講 義

(A) *Tiny Café* 乃假想的咖啡室之名, 所以兩字的第一個字母都用大寫。

(B) *get used, get invited* 的 *used* 與 *invited* 都是過去分詞當形容詞用, 以形容主語 *you* 的; 所以是敘述形容詞。

(C) 注意第 15 句, *tell X from Y* = 辨別 X 之非 Y。

(D) 注意 *use* 當名詞用作“用處”解時讀 [ʊs], 當動詞用作“用”解時讀 [ʊz]; 又 *used* 作“被用”, “已用”解時讀 [ʊzd], 但作“習慣, 慣常”解時則讀 [ʊst], 後加 *to* 字連讀 [ʊ'stəʊ]。

練 習

【背誦】

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
café	cafés	point	points
host	hosts	problem	problems
napkin	napkins	surface	surfaces
dessert	desserts	dessert-spoon	dessert-spoons
manner	manners	soup spoon	soup spoons
bit	bits	matter	matters (罕用)

【造句】用下列諸字及短語各造一完了時制的句子:

- | | |
|------------|-----------------------|
| (1) feel | (4) has to |
| (2) forget | (5) leave ~ for . . . |
| (3) give | |

LESSON 84

The Crow and the Fox

(1) One day a crow [krō] stole a piece of cheese [chēz], and quietly [kwī'ətli] settled on a branch of a tree to enjoy it. (2) Just then came a fox passing by. (3) He saw the cheese and said to himself [hīmsēlf]: (4) "Ah, that's the thing for me—a fox."

(5) So he turned from his course and walked up to the crow. (6) "Good day," said he to the crow, "you look wonderfully [wūn'dəfōōli] well today. (7) In addition [ədīsh'ən] to the fine figure [fīg'ə] that you always carry, bright are your eyes and glossy [glōs'i], your feathers [fēdh'əz]. (8) I feel quite sure your voice must be as beautiful as your looks. (9) Now just favour me with a song [sōng] so that I may greet [grēt] you as the queen [kwōn] of birds."

10. What is a crow?
11. A crow is a black bird.
12. Has it a fine figure?
13. No, it has not.
14. Then why did the fox say that this particular crow always carried a fine figure?
15. He wanted to get her cheese, so he had to flatter [flāt'ə] her.
16. What other things did he say to flatter her?
17. He said that her eyes were bright and her feathers were glossy, and finally he said that her voice must be as beautiful as her looks, and so he urged her to

sing [sɪŋ] him a song so that he might greet her as the queen of birds.

18. Did she sing him a song?
19. That we shall see in the next lesson.

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. crow [krō]: 烏鴉。 | figure [fɪg'ə]: 身材, 身段。——
<i>fine figure</i> : 苗條的身段。 |
| cheese: [tʃēz]: 乾酪。 | <i>glossy</i> [glɔs'i]: 有光澤的。 |
| quietly [kwɪ'etli]: 靜靜的; 悄悄地。 | <i>feather</i> [fēdh'ə]: 羽毛。 |
| 3. himself [hɪmsə'ɪf]: 他自己。 | 8. looks [lʊks]: 容貌。(名詞) |
| 5. turn from: 離了。 | 9. favour [fā'və]: 給以恩惠; 賜。 |
| course [kōrs, 或 kōrs]: 路程。 | song [sɔŋ]: 歌; 詩歌。 |
| walk up to: 走近。 | greet [grēt]: 覓賀。 |
| 6. good day: 今天好呀。 | queen [kwēn]: 女王; 王后。 |
| wonderfully [wʌ 'dɔfʊli]: 奇異地; 很特別地; 非常地。 | 13. flatter [flā'tə]: 阿諛。 |
| 7. addition [ədɪʃən]: 加; 加法; 附加物。—— <i>in addition to</i> ~: 在~之外, 加之。 | 15. sing [sɪŋ]: 吟; 唱。(過去時制 sang [sæŋ], 過去分詞 sung [sʌŋ]) |

講 義

(A) 狐狸是狡猾的動物, 善於佔便宜, 所以第 4 句說: “吓, 那正是給我——狐狸——的東西。”

(B) good day 猶如 good mornin', good afternoon, 日間通用; 但普通招呼人時並不大用它。

(C) 第 17 句 sing him a song = sing a song for him; 參看第 9 句 favour him with a song.

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	favour.	favoured	favoured
	greet	greeted	greeted

flatter	flattered	flattered	
sing	sang [sǎng]	sung [sǔng]	
單數	複數	單數	複數
cheese	cheeses [-zìz] (多種乾酪)	branch	branches
himself	themselves	crow	crowds
course	courses	addition	additions
figure	figures	queen	queens
look	looks	feather	feathers
		song	songs

【造句】 用將來完了時制：

- (1) serve (2) spend (3) pay

【畫綫圖】 分析本課第 7, 13 兩句。

LESSON 85

Don't Trust Flatterers

(1) The crow felt greatly [grā'tlì] flattered at the presents [prā'zìz] showered [show'əd] on her by the fox.
 (2) At his suggestion [səjēs'chən] of a song, she opened her mouth to show him what a beautiful voice she had.
 (3) Just at that moment, the cheese dropped from her mouth.

(4) The fox lost no time in picking up the cheese.
 (5) At the same time, he said: "(6) That's enough, you needn't bother [bōdh'ə] about the song now. (7) But in exchange for your cheese, I will give you this piece of advice: (8) *Don't trust flatterers* [flāt'erəz]."

(9) He then went his way with the cheese, leaving the crow to her fine figure, bright eyes, glossy feathers, and beautiful voice.

10. Did the fox succeed in his plan [plǎn]?
11. Yes, he succeeded in making the crow open her mouth.
12. Why did he succeed?
13. Nobody ever praises any crow, so all the more this crow felt flattered by the fox's [fōk'siz] praise, that was why she opened her mouth to sing him a song.
14. Was the fox cunning [kǔn'ing]?
15. Yes, certainly he was, any fox is.
16. But was his advice to the crow a good one?
17. Yes, that is a good advice.
18. Is it good for anybody?
19. Yes, it is good for anybody.

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. greatly [grā'tli]: 大大地。 | 6. both'er [bōdh'ə]: 煩擾, 費神。 |
| praise [prāz]: 讚美; 讚美的話。 | 7. exchange [iksčhā'nj, əks-]: 交換。—— <i>in exchange for</i> : 以交換。 |
| shower [show'ə]: (原義) 傾盆的大雨; (轉作) 多量給與, 博施。 | 8. flatterer [flāt'ərə]: 阿諛者。 |
| 2. suggestion [sojčs'chən]: 提議; 議案。 [刻] | plan [pl'æn]: 計劃。 |
| 4. lose no time: (失卻無時間), 立 | 13. fox's [fōk'siz]: 狐狸的。 |
| | 14. cunning [kūn'ing]: 狡猾。 |

講 義

- (A) shower 在這種借喻的用法中, 其間接賓語之前一定是 on 字。
 (B) 第 9 句 leaving the crow . . . and beautiful voice 可譯為“留下鳥兒去和伊苗條的身段, 明淨的眼睛, 光亮的羽毛, 以及美麗的嗓音爲個”。
 (C) 第 13 句第一句: 句中的動詞用現在時制, 以後的又用過去時制, 這是因

爲第一子句所講的是普通情形，不因時間而變，所以用現在時制；而其後諸子句所講的乃是該時該事的情形，已屬過去，所以用過去時制。

(D) 注意 fox's 讀 [fɒk'sɪz]，成兩音節 (syllables)。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	shower	showered	showered
	bother	bothered	bothered
	succeed	succeeded	succeeded
	單 數	複 數	單 數
	praise	praises	suggestion
	advice	advices	suggestions
	plan	plans	flatterer
			flatterers
			fox
			foxes
		*	*
		*	*
		*	*

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 81—85):

1. In a Chinese dinner, we usually have some shark's fins, pigeon eggs, swallow's nests, and crabs and lobsters if they are in season.
2. Sometimes we have periwinkles and awabi too, but most of the dishes consist of pork, chicken, duck, fish, etc.
3. We had a report at our club last night, after a fine dinner.
4. Is the cooking good?
5. Oh yes, we have a very good cook there.
6. Come on, let's go to the A.B.C. Café, I will give you a nice treat there.

7. Thanks very much. But please, you go first, I'll be there directly, I have something to finish here, you see.
8. Oh, that's all right, I can wait, we'll go together.
9. Waiter, come here.
10. Yes, directly.
11. Just give us the bill of fare and pen and paper, and we'll have the order for you, in a moment.
12. Yes sir, here they are.
13. Come here, waiter, here is our order.
14. Very sorry, we don't have any liver. Will kidney do?
15. No, let's have something else. Suppose we have mandarin fish, are you fond of it?
16. Well, yes.
17. What is this?
18. It's one package of sea cucumbers, I have brought them to you.
19. Oh, how nice of you!
20. Oh no, it's free sample. We imported quite much of them from. . . .
21. That means you want to get some business.
22. Yes, that's it, pure and simple.
23. That's just the same. And you have put them in a very nice box too.
24. Mr. Y— is not used to foreign table manners, and he was invited to a dinner by a foreigner.
25. However, he was not embarrassed, he observed what his host did, and did the same, and his host thought he knew all about their table manners.
26. I have some trouble with this problem, would you

- kindly help me?
27. Why certainly, what is the difficulty?
28. If you will kindly explain me these points, I shall be able to find an answer to the problem, I believe.
29. Once a fox saw a crow on the branch of a tree with a piece of cheese in her mouth which she had stolen.
30. He wanted to get the cheese for himself, so he turned from his course and went up to the foot of the tree to flatter her.
31. After saying that she always carried a fine figure, her eyes were bright, her feathers, glossy, etc., he asked her to sing him a song so that he might greet her as the queen of birds.
32. The crow opened her mouth to sing, and the cheese dropped from her mouth.
33. The fox picked it up and advised her not to trust flatterers.

* * *

LESSON 86

Complex Sentences

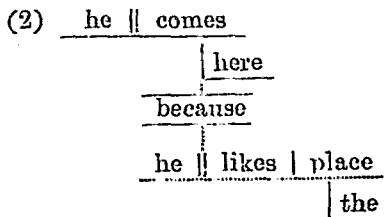
(1) When we have different thoughts that are related to each other and each thought has to be expressed in a sentence, we often have to join these sentences together to form a bigger sentence in order to express all these thoughts as a whole [hōl], for example: (2) He comes here because he likes the place. (3) In this example, there are two thoughts: *he comes here* and *he likes the place*. (4) These

two thoughts are expressed in two sentences, which are, in themselves, complete sentences, but which do not stand each alone. (5) Such sentences are called **clauses** [klaw'ziz], and these two clauses—*he comes here* and *he likes the place*—are joined by the conjunction *because*.

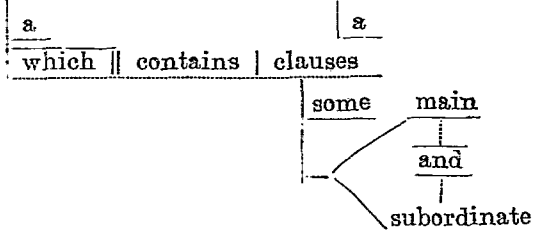
(6) The first clause expresses the main [mān] thought and can stand alone (and make a complete meaning), so it is called the **main** or **principal** [prīn'səpəl] clause. (7) If, however, I meet a man and say to him only these words—*because he likes the place*—and no more, he will not understand me. (8) In other words, the clause, *because he likes the place*, cannot stand alone, although in our conversation [kōn'vərsā'shən] with people who know already what we mean, we often use such a clause alone. (9) This clause, as used in our example, expresses a thought which is not so important, for it only explains *why* he comes here. (10) A clause which expresses a thought that is not so important as what is expressed in the main clause and can not stand alone, is called a **subordinate** [səbōr'dnīt] clause, because it is of the lower rank [rānk] in importance [impōr'tāns].

(11) A **sentence**, which contains some main and **subordinate** clauses, is called a **complex sentence**.

(12) This is the way we diagram a complex sentence,



(11) sentence || is-called \ complex-sentence



(13) Note that each **subordinate clause** is placed below the word which it modifies and that it has a dotted [dōt'īd] line below it, while the **main clause** has an ordinary [ōr'dīnērī] line. (14) Note also that the words which connect the two clauses have each two lines, one above and one below.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. whole [hōl]: 全部, 整個。——
<i>as a whole</i>: 當做一個整個的東西,
思想等等。</p> <p>2. <i>each alone</i>: 每個自己, 各自獨立。</p> <p>5. clause [klawz]: 子句。</p> <p>6. main [māin]: 主要的。
principal [prīn'səpəl, 或 -pl]:
主要的。——<i>principal</i> (或 <i>main</i>)
<i>clause</i>: 主句。</p> <p>8. conversation [kōn'vesū'-
shən]: 談話。</p> | <p>10. subordinate [səbōr'dnīt]: 下
級的, 次等的。——<i>subordinate</i>
<i>clause</i>: 附屬句。</p> <p>rank [rānk]: 品位, 品級。</p> <p>importance: [impōr'təns]: 重
要。(名詞)</p> <p>11. complex sentence: 複雜句。</p> <p>13. dot [dōt]: 點。——<i>dotted line</i>:
(被點成的線), 虛線。</p> <p>ordinary [ōr'dīnērī, 或 ōr'
dnrī]: 平常的, 普通的。</p> |
|---|---|

講 義

(A) 主句與附屬句都各有兩個條件: (1) “主句”表 (a) 主要的思想, (b) 可以獨立存在; (2) “附屬句”表 (a) 次要的思想, (b) 不能獨立存在, 同類的子句是

可分開獨立存在的。

(B) 第 8 與 10 句中的 what=that which (這個,那~的)。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞	
	dot	dotted	dotted	
	單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
	clause	clauses	rank	ranks
	conversation	conversations	dot	dots

【造句】 (1) because (3) for
 (2) so (4) therefore

【畫線圖】 分析第 4 句。

LESSON 87

Compound Sentences

(1) However, sometimes we have thoughts of equal importance which we wish to put into one sentence; when that is done, we have two or more clauses of equal rank in the sentence, for instance: (2) We work hard *and* we succeed. (3) These labourers [lā'bərəz] were lazy [lā'zi], they did not work properly [pröp'əli], *and* they were dismissed [dīsmīst'].

(4) Each of the clauses of the above two sentences can stand alone, hence these are clauses of equal rank, and they are called co-ordinate [kō-ōr'dnīt] clauses. (5) A sentence containing co-ordinate clauses is called a compound sentence.

- dismiss** [dɪsmɪs/]: 開除。 shən, 或 klās'fī-, 或 -shn]: 類分。(名詞)
4. **co-ordinate** [kō-ōr'dnīt]: 同級的, 同等的。—— *co-ordinate clause*: 同級子句。 8. **base** [bās]: 基於, 據。—— *based upon*: 以~為根據。
5. **compound sentence**: 複合句。 11. **subordinate conjunction**: 次級連綴詞。 [續詞。]
6. **simple sentence**: 單純句。 12. **co-ordinate conjunction**: 同級連
7. **classification** [klās'fɪkə' -

講 義

(A) 注意: 如果有三四個同級的子句組成一個複合句, 只有一個連綴詞在末一個子句之前。

(B) 注意單純句在本課裏雖然沒有講過, 但以前已經講過了許多。

(C) 又, 單純句與子句完全相同, 所差者只是: 獨立則為單純句, 放在較大的句子之中便是子句。又, 有的子句須有連綴詞 (不一定是連綴詞, 這個我們慢慢就會再講) 來使它與其他子句發生關係。

(D) *labourer* 或 *workman* [wɔɹ'kmən] 是“工人”普通的名稱, 雖則許多外國人喜歡用 *coolie* [kōō'li] (“苦力”) 而帶有鄙視的意思。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	dismiss	dismissed	dismissed
	base	based	based

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
labourer	labourers	classification	classifications
difference	differences	conjunction	conjunctions

【造句】 用過去完了時制:

- | | |
|----------|--------------|
| (1) do | (3) eat |
| (2) have | (4) memorize |

【畫綫圖】 試分析本課第 5, 10, 11 三句。

LESSON 88

Analysis of the Simple, Compound and Complex Sentences

(1) We have studied, in the last lesson, the three kinds of sentences classified according to their constructions. (2) They are the **simple**, the **compound**, and the **complex sentences**. (3) We shall study them again in this lesson and analyse more of them.

(4) A **compound sentence** must be carefully distinguished [dīstīng/gwīshī] from a sentence containing a **compound subject**, a **compound predicate**, or both. (5) Let us take a few examples.

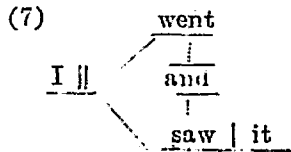
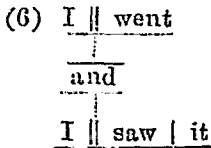
Compound Sentences

- (6) I went and I saw it.
 (8) I did it, Johnny did it too.
 (10) I got up, I had my breakfast, Johnny got up, and he had his breakfast too.

Compound Subj., Pred.

- (7) I went and saw it. (compound predicate)
 (9) Both Johnny and I did it. (compound subject)
 (11) Johnny and I got up and had our breakfasts. (both)

(12) Here are the analyses [-sēz] of these six examples.



[prəvɪ'dɪd] *that* (conjunctive [kənʒŋk'tɪv] phrase) you pay him promptly [prɒmpt'lɪ].

(20) Here are the diagrams of these sentences.

(15) you || must-come (16) (you) || don't-sleep

I || go
|
when

|| till
|
clock || strikes
| the | nine-(times)

who || will-give | lecture
|
(17) I || do-know | Δ | the
| not

pen | is \ mine
|
the
|
you || use | which

(19) he || will-work
|
provided-that
|
you || pay | him
| promptly

生 字

1. distinguish [dɪ.stɪŋ'gɪʃ]:
辨別~不同處。

compound subj. ct: 複合主語。
compound predicate: 複合述語。

14. **illustration** [il'estrā'shən]: 實例。
15. **relative** [rə'lə'tiv]: 有關連的。
——*relative adverb*: 關連副詞。
16. **strike** [stri:k]: 打, 敲。
time: 同, 次數。—— *the clock strikes ~ (times)*: 鐘打幾下。
17. **relative pronoun**: 關連代名詞。
19. **provide** [prəvī'd, 或 prəvī'v]: 供給。—— *provided that* [prəvī'vɪd ðət]: (供給了這個), 倘若, 假使。
conjunctive [kən'jʌŋk'tiv]: 屬於連續詞的。—— *conjunctive phrase*: 連續詞短語。 [的]。
promptly [p.'ɒmptli]: 準時。

講 義

(A) 如從前講過, 受事態的敘述在英文中比在中文中常用; 如第 4 句實等於中文之“我們須詳細辨別複合句之不同於含有複合主語, 複合述語, 或兩者的句子”。

(B) *not only ~ but also* 是相依並行的短語; 前邊用了 *not only*, 後邊必須用 *but also*。

(C) 第 16 句中 *strikes nine* 的 *nine*, 是個形容詞當做名詞用, *nine* 等於 *nine times* (九次)。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	classify	classified	classified
	distinguish	distinguished	distinguished
	provide	provided	provided
	strike	struck	struck (or stricken [stri:k'en])

【造句】 用下列字及短語造句:

- (1) *provided that* (4) *so far as ~ are concerned*
 (2) *strikes* (5) *distinguish*
 (3) *live up to*

LESSON 89

The Weather is Bad and Many are Ill

TEACHER [tō'chə]: (1) What is the matter today?
 (2) So many are absent [ǎb'snt]!

STUDENTS [stū'dənts]: (3) The weather is bad and many are ill.

TEACHER: (4) Let me see. (5) I-jang has some trouble with his eyes, I know. (6) What has become of your brother, Chi-kao?

CHI KAO: (7) He has a cold.

TEACHER: (8) And Chu-yin . . . , well, of course, he is sick when the lesson is hard. (9) Last time, it was toothache [tōō'th-āk], what trouble has he this time, does any one know?

TSU-YIH: (10) I believe he is love sick, in love with ease [ēz].

TEACHER: (11) You are right. (12) The next is Ta-seng.

(13) What sort of sickness [sīk'nīs] has he? (14) Teh-yin, you are his neighbour, do you know?

TEH-YIN: (15) He has some trouble in his throat, we call it *peh-kao* in Chinese.

TEACHER: (16) That is diphtheria [dīfthēr'īə] in English.

TSU-YIH: (17) How do you spell [spēl] it, sir?

TEACHER: (18) D, i, p, h, t, h, e, r, i, a—diphtheria. (19) And Ai-jen is sick of the class work, I know. (20) The next absentee [ǎb'snt'ē] is I'ang-chung. (21) Here is a

letter from him asking for leave of absence [lɛv əv ʔb/sns], I suppose. (22) Teh-yin, come here, take this, read it.

TEH-YUN: “(23) Friday. — (24) My dear Teacher:— (25) My cousin’s marriage will take place tomorrow morning. (26) As he needs my help, I shall not be able to go to school tomorrow. — (27) Hoping that you will not regard [rīgār’d] this as unexcused [ʔn/ʔkskū’zd] absence, — (28) I remain [rīmā’n], — (29) Yours respectfully [rʔspɛkt’fɔōlʔ], — (30) Tzu Fang-chung.”

TEACHER: (31) I’m glad to learn that not all the absentees are sick. (32) Yi-ming may have stomach-ache [stūm’ək-āk], headache [hɛd’āk], or anything like that, I know.

CHI-KAO: (33) No, this time he truly has some trouble. (34) He has chilblains [chīl/blānz] on his feet, and they burst [būrst] yesterday afternoon while on his way home, so he can’t walk now.

TEACHER: (35) I’m sorry for what I have said.

生 字

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| teacher [tɛ’ci.ə]: 教員。 | 16. dip’th-r’a [ɔifthɛr’i.ə, 或讀 -tɪ.ɔər’i.ə]: 白喉。 |
| 1. matter [māt’ə]: 事。 | 17. spell [spɛl]: 拼音。 |
| 2. absent [əb’snt]: 缺席。 | 19. <i>spell of</i> : 對於～獲得討厭。 |
| student [stū’ɛnt]: 學生。 | class [klɑhs]: 班,級,—— <i>class work</i> : 功課。 |
| 5. trouble [t.ū’l]: 病痛, (名詞) | 20. absentee [əb’sntɛ’i]: 缺席者。 |
| 7. cold [kəld]: 傷風。(名詞) | 21. leave [li:v]: 許可。(名詞) |
| 8. hard [hɑrd]: 難。 | absence [əb’sns]: 缺席。—— <i>leave of absence</i> : (缺席的許可), |
| 9. toothache [tə’θ-ək]: 牙痛。 | 25. <i>take place</i> : 實現;舉行。[准假。 |
| 10. love sick: 害相思病。 | |
| ease [i:v]: 安逸。 | |
| 13. sickness [sʔk’nɪs]: 病,病症 | |

LESSON 90

**Don't Kill the Goose that Lays
Golden Eggs**

(1) Once upon a time there was a man who owned [ɔnd] a goose [gōōs]. (2) She was a strange [strānj] goose, for she laid [lād] golden [gō'ldən] eggs. (3) Apart [əpāt't] from that, however, she was like an ordinary goose. (4) Even in laying eggs, she laid, like any other goose, only one egg each day.

(5) Even an egg a day, her owner soon became very rich, as gold means money. (6) But soon the riches [rīch'iz] turned the owner's head, and he wanted to get rich quick [kwīk]. (7) This was the way he figured [fīg'əd] about it. "(8) Since this goose can lay one golden egg every day, she must have plenty of gold inside her. (9) Now, if I kill [kīl] her, I can have all the gold at once. (10) So why should I wait for her to lay me one egg a day? (11) Indeed, why should I not kill her and have all the gold at once? (12) Yes, I will, I will kill her!"

(13) So determined [dītēr'mīnd], he killed her, and found her just like an ordinary goose. (14) As he could find no gold in her, he wished he had not killed her.

(15) He didn't want to get rich quick now. (16) He wanted to have the goose to lay him one egg each day, and he was willing to wait now. (17) But what was done cannot be undone [ʊn'ḡūn'], and he could not have his one golden egg each day now.

18. If you want to do something and I advise you not to kill your goose that lays golden eggs, what does that mean?
19. May the goose that lays golden eggs keep some in store [stɔr] for you!

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. own [ɔn]: 所有,私有。 | quick [kwɪk]: 快,迅速。—— <i>g t rich quick</i> : 火速發財,發橫財。 |
| goose [gʊs]: 鵝,母鵝。 | 7. figure [fɪgʊə]: 計算。 |
| 2. strange [streɪn]: 奇怪的。 | 13. determine [dɪ'tɜ:mɪn]: 決定; 決意。 |
| lay [leɪ]: 生(蛋)。(過去時制及過去分詞 laid [leɪd]) 「金的。」 | 17. undo [ʊn'du:]: 打消。(過去時制 undid [ʊn'dɪd], 過去分詞 undone [ʊn'dʌn]) |
| golden [gəʊlɪn, 或 gəʊldn]: | 19. store: [stɔr, stɔɪ]: 倉庫。——
<i>in store</i> : 積蓄着。 |
| 3. apart [əp'ɑ:t]: 分開,離別。——
<i>apart from that</i> : 除此以外。 | |
| 6. riches [rɪtʃɪz]: 金銀,財富。 | |
| <i>turn ~'s head</i> : 使(某人)大發修望。 | |

講 義

(A) quick 本是形容詞,當狀詞用的地方很少,除了 *get quick* 及命令句如 *run* (或 *come*) *quick* 之外極少用。

(B) 第 15, 16, 17 三句的狀詞均是 *now*, 而云謂詞卻是過去時制,似乎不合理論,但是這在英文中是可能的用法。

(C) 第 18 句 *and I=and if I*, 省去 *if* 一字。

(D) 第 19 句是志願句,就是說這句話表示着說者的志願或欲望。有的文法學家把這一類的句子另列成一類,叫做 *optative* [ɒp'tetɪv] *sentence* (祈願句),與敘述句,命令句,詢問句,感歎句並行。

練 習

【背誦】	單 數	複 數
	goose	geese [gʊs]
	store	stores

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
own	owned	owned
lay	laid	laid
figure	figured	figured
determine	determined	determined
undo	undid	undone

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 86—90)

1. When we join sentences together to form a bigger sentence, these smaller sentences are called **clauses**.
2. **Clauses** may be joined in different ways to form **compound** or **complex** sentences.
3. When these clauses are joined in such a way that when separated again each clause can stand alone to express a complete thought, then we have a **compound sentence**.
4. If these clauses are joined in such a way that when separated again some clause can stand alone to express a complete thought, while some other clause cannot do so, the sentence is called a **complex sentence**.
5. The clauses of a **compound sentence** are of equal rank and are called **co-ordinate clauses**.
6. The clause in a **complex sentence** which can stand alone is called the **main** or **principal clause**, because it expresses the main thought of the sentence.
7. The clause in a **complex sentence** which cannot stand alone is called the **subordinate clause**, because it is not so important as the main clause, hence of the lower rank.

8. To repeat, when a sentence contains a main and one or more subordinate clauses, it is called a complex sentence; when it contains two or more co-ordinate clauses, it is called a compound sentence; and when a sentence does not contain a clause, it is called a simple sentence.
9. A subordinate clause may be joined to the main clause by a subordinate conjunction, a conjunctive phrase, a relative adverb, or a relative pronoun.
10. A co-ordinate conjunction may join words, phrases, or clauses of equal importance or rank.
11. A simple sentence may have a compound subject, a compound predicate, or both.
12. In analysis, a subordinate clause has a dotted line below it and is placed below the word or words it modifies.
13. When it forms one of the essential parts of the sentence a subject or a complement, it is put where it belongs.
14. The word which connects words, phrases, and clauses, has two lines, one above and one below it.
15. When one is absent from a class or any work, he is called an absentee.
16. If a student asks and gets a leave of absence, then the absence is an excused absence, otherwise, it is an unexcused absence.
17. One day a teacher found many of his students absent and he also found many of them were ill or sick.
18. One got cold, one had some trouble with his eyes, one had diphtheria, and one could not walk because the chilblains on his feet burst.

-
19. One wrote a letter to ask for leave of absence, and one failed to give any reason for his absence.
 20. Once there was one goose which laid golden eggs, and soon the riches which these eggs brought to the owner turned his head, so he wanted to kill the goose in order to get rich quick.
 21. When he killed her, he found her to be just like an ordinary goose.
 22. So don't kill your goose that lays golden eggs.

字 彙

(本字彙中生詞及成語，其秩序依首字母之先後排列，惟成語以 a 或 the 起首者，則以第二字為準。凡已見第一冊之生字及成語概不錄入，但遇有拼法雖同而意義有異，或意義雖同而詞類不同者，則仍行注出。其他應行注意事項，請參閱第一冊字彙凡例。)

A, a [ā]

a la carte [ah lah kār't]: 點菜零點 56
about [ə'baʊ't]. 【狀】四周，附近；【介】在(某人)身上 56, 76
absence [æb'sɛns]. 【名】缺席 89
absent [æb'sɛnt]. 【形】缺席 89
absence [æb'sɛns]. 【名】缺席者 89
accountant [ə'kaʊntənt]. 【名】會計員，查帳員 31
accounting [ə'kaʊntɪŋ]. 【名】會計，記帳 32
according to [ə'ɔ:dɪŋ'tu:]: 依照
accurate [æk'jʊrɪ:]. 【形】準確 48
across [ə'krɒs, ə'raʊ's]. 【介】越
act [ækt]. 【云】做事 74 【過】60
add [æd]. 【云】加，添 59
addition [ə'dɪʃən]. 【名】加；加法；附加 84
address [ə'drɛs]. 【云】招呼，稱呼；【名】住址；呼喚，稱呼 49, 6, 67
address ~ by name [ə'drɛs' ~ bɪ nɑ:m]: 呼~的名 78
adjective [æd'ʤɪtɪv, æ'ɛk-]. 【名】形容詞 16

adverb [əd'veɪb]. 【名】狀詞 16
adverbial: [əd'veɪ'bɪəl]. 【形】狀詞的，屬於狀詞的 17
adverbial object: [əd'veɪ'bɪə. əb'ʤɪkt]: 狀詞字語 52
advise [əd'vɪz]. 【云】勸告 72
affect [ə'fɛkt]. 【云】影響 23
afraid [ə'frɑ:d]. 【形】怕 28
Africa [æ'frɪkə]. 【名】非洲 54
African [æ'frɪkən]. 【形】非洲的；【名】非洲人 54
African languages, the [dhi 'frɪkən lɑ:ŋ'gwɪʤz]: 非洲各國的語言文字 55
against [ə ə'ɪnst]. 【介】反對 50
age [eɪ]. 【名】年代 61
agree [ə'grɪ]. 【云】合相合；同意 1, 29. ~, agreed [ə'grɪd], agreed)
agreement [ə'grɪmənt]. 【名】合同，條約，條件 47
ah [ah]. 【感】啊，吓 33 [56
aha [ɑ-hah/]. 【感】哈哈，原來如此
air [ɑɪ]. 【名】空氣；風 27 [56
afas [ə'afəs]. 【感】壞了，事情不好了
alive [ə'lɪv]. 【形】活着 61
all day long [awl dɑ:lɔ:ŋ]: 全日 43 [則 16
al(though [awlðhəʊ]. 【連】雖然，雖

a-milk^{ing} [əmɪl'kɪŋ]. 【狀】以
奶小奶 25 【的】次日 65
amorn^t [ə'moʊ'nɪ]. 【名】(銀錢
ana yse [ən'əɪlɪz]. 【云】分析 41
analysis [ənə'lə'sɪs]. 【名】分析
52 (複數 analyses [ənə'lə'ɒz])
arcestor [æn'ɪstə]. 【名】祖先 49
and yet [ən yət]. 然而 16
angry [æŋ'grɪ]. 【形】發怒的, 洩氣
的 80
Annam [æn'əm]. 【名】安南 54
Annamese [æn'əm'eɪz]. 【形】安南
的; 【名】安南人; 安南的語言文字
54, 55
answer [ab'nse, 美 æn'-]. 【云】回
答, 答覆 24 【L】
anyway [ə'nɪwə]. 【狀】無論如何
apart [ə'pɑ:t]. 【狀】分開 90
apart from that [ə'pɑ:t frəm
ðæt]. 除此以外 90
apologize [ə'pɒlə'ɒʒɪz]. 【云】道歉,
賠不是 53
apparatus [ə'pærə'teɪ]. 【名】機
械, 機器 27 (複數 -es [-ɪz])
appear [ə'piə]. 【云】出現; 來到
12, 50
apply [ə'plɪ]. 【云】置放; 應用 27
apposition [ə'pɒzɪʃən]. 【名】同
列, 同位 66
appositive [ə'pɒzɪ'tɪv]. 【名】同列
語, 同位語, 複述語 66
as [əz, əz]. 【連】既然~所以; 【狀】
當做, 當做~而論 17, 44
as a whole [əz ə hɔ:l]. 當做一個
整個的, 東西, 思想等等 86
as for [əz fə]. 至於 44
as long as ~ [əz lɔ:ŋ əz]. 如~
一樣的長久 47

as the old saying goes [əz ði:
ɔ:l sɑ:'ɪŋ gəʊz]. 俗云 46
as was agreed upon [əz wəz
əg.ə'd ɒpə'n]. 如 59 47 【5】
as well as [əz wəl əz]. 也, 和 與
asleep [ə'sli:p]. 【狀】睡着 45
ascert [ə'sɜ:t]. 【云】斷言 13
assistant [ə'sɪs'tənt]. 【名】助手;
【形】幫助的 31
assistant manager [ə'sɪs'tənt
mænɪ'dʒə]. 副經理, 協理 31
at sea [ət si]. 在海中 7
at the lion's command [ət ðə
lɪən's kəmɑ:nd]. 在獅子的命令
(之下) 43
attempt [ə'tempt]. 【名】嘗試, 企圖
70 【L】
attention [ətən'shən]. 【名】注意
atic [aɪ'tɪk]. 【名】屋頂 3
Australia [awstrə'ljə]. 【名】澳洲
54
Australian [awstrə'ljən]. 【形】
澳洲的; 【名】澳洲人 54
author [ə'θɔ:] 【名】著作家 18
avenue [ə'vɪnju]. 【名】大道, 林路
61 【海】福源路 61
Avenue Foch [ə'vɪnju fɔ:ʃ]. (上
awabi [əwə'bɪ]. 【名】鮑魚 82
awaken [ə'wɑ:kən]. 【云】驚醒 10
away [ə'weɪ]. 【狀】離開 6
awfully [ə'wʊli]. 【狀】極大地 14
ax, axe [aks]. 【名】斧頭 59

B, b [bi]

baby [b'beɪ]. 【名】孩子, 嬰孩 52
backyard [bæk'jɑ:d]. 【名】後庭 3

- bad [bād]. 【形】不好,有缺點 1 (較級 worse [wɛrs], 最級 worst [wɛrst])
- ball [bawl]. 【名】球;球形物 9
- barber [bɑr'beɪ]. 【名】理髮匠 26
- barbershop [bɑr'beɪʃɒp]. 【名】理髮店 26
- bargain [bɑr'geɪn]. 【云】還價;【名】照價貨 8, 10
- bark [bɑrk]. 【云】吠 30
- barley [bɑr'li]. 【名】大麥 20 (複數同)
- barn [bɑ:n]. 【名】穀倉 7
- base [bɑ:s]. 【云】基於,據 87
- based upon [bæst əpən]: 以~爲根據 87 「室 8
- basement [bæ'smənt]. 【名】地下
- basin [bæ'sɪn]. 【名】盆,面盆 4
- bath [bɑ:θ]. 【名】沐浴 22
- bathroom [bɑ'tʃru:m]. 【名】浴室 3 「22
- bath tub [bɑ'tʃtʌb]. 【名】浴盆
- be sure [bi:ʃʊə]: (你)一定須 22
- bear [bɛə] 【云】負擔 28 (~, bore [bɔ:], borne [bɔ:n])
- bear the brunt [bɛə ðe brʌnt]: 與虧 28
- beard [bɛəd]. 【名】鬚 26
- beast [bɛst]. 【名】野獸 44
- beautifully [bju'tɪfəlɪ, -li, -sɪfəlɪ]. 【狀】美極地 2
- because of [bi:kɔz/əv]: 因爲 18
- become [bi:kʊm]. 【云】成爲 66 (~, became [bi:kə'm], become)
- bed-cover [bed'kʌvə]. 【名】蓋牀布 22 「56
- beef steak [bi:f stæk]. 【名】牛排
- beforehand [bɪfɔ'hænd, 'ə-, -fɔ:-]. 【狀】事前 77 「46
- beg for life [bɛg fɔr li:f]: 求饒命
- belong [bi'lɔŋg]. 【云】屬,屬(某人)所有 44
- belong to [bi'lɔŋg' tu:]: 屬於 44
- between [bi'twi:n]. 【介】在兩者之間 36
- bill [bil]. 【名】單,貨單 81
- bill of fare [bil əv fɛə]: 菜單 81
- bird [bɜ:d]. 【名】鳥 46
- bit [bit]. 【名】少許 83
- a bit [ə bit] (= a little): 少許 83
- bite [bit]. 【云】咬 30 (~, bit [bit], bitten [bit'n])
- black [blæk]. 【形】黑 2 「22
- blanket [blæŋkɪt]. 【名】毛毯
- blind [blaɪnd]. 【名】遮陽簾 22
- block [blɒk]. 【名】塊;(四面皆路之)方地 72
- blow [bləʊ]. 【云】吹氣 80 (~, blow [bləʊ], blown [blɔ:n])
- b'ow hot and cold [bləʊ hɒt ən kɔ:d]: 朝秦暮楚 80
- blue [blu:]. 【名+形】藍色 10
- boil [boɪl]. 【云】沸 80 「80
- boiling [boi'liŋ]. 【分詞】在沸的
- books [bʊks]. 【名】帳簿 31
- book-shop [bʊk'shɒp]. 【名】書店 18 「85
- bother [bɒðə]. 【云】煩擾,費神
- bottom [bɒtəm]. 【名】底 28
- bow [bəʊ]. 【云】彎,鞠躬 45
- bow [bəʊ]. 【名】弓 60
- box [bɒks]. 【名】盒,箱 62
- boy [bɔɪ]. 【名】僕役 32
- branch [bræntʃ, 美 bræntʃ]. 【名】枝;【云】分支 71

brand [brænd]. 【名】牌子 10
 bread [brɛd]. 【名】麵包 56
 bread and butter [brɛd_ən
 bʊtə]. 奶油麵包 56
 break [bræk]. 【云】打碎 38 (~,
 broke [brök], broken [brō'kn])
 brick [brɪk]. 【名】磚, 磚 2
 bright [brɪt]. 【形】光亮; 明亮的
 10, 75
 briskly [brɪsk'li]. 【狀】輕快地, 活
 潑地 5
 British [brɪt'ɪʃ]. 【形】不列顛的;
 【名】不列顛人 53 【人】53
 Britisher [brɪt'ɪʃə]. 【名】不列顛
 bronze [brɒnz]. 【名】青銅 73
 bronze statue [brɒnz s:tə'tu:]:
 銅像 73
 brook [brʊk]. 【名】小溪, 小河 45
 broth [brɒθ]. 【名】湯(肉湯) 1
 brother-in-law [brʌðə'rɪnlɔ:].
 【名】夫兄, 夫弟; 內兄; 內弟; 姊丈, 妹
 夫; 襟兄弟 49 (複數 brothers-
 in-law [brʌðə'rɪnz əw])
 Brown, May [n ə braʊn]. 女人名 15
 brunt [brʊnt]. 【名】衝擊 18
 brush [brʊʃ]. 【名】刷子; 【云】刷
 牙齒, 頭髮, 衣服等) 5
 build [bɪld]. 【云】蓋造 2 (~,
 built [bɪlt], built)
 building [bɪl'dɪŋ]. 【名】房子 8
 bunch [bʌnʃ]. 【名】串, 珠 59
 bund [bʊnd]. 【名】灘, 江邊之街道
 61
 Bund, the [tʰ ə bʊnd]: 黃埔路
 (廣州); 黃浦灘, 外灘(上海) 61
 Burma [bɜ:mə]. 【名】緬甸 54
 Burmese [bɜ:mə'z]. 【形】緬甸的;
 【名】緬甸人; 緬甸語言文字 54, 55

burn [bɜ:n]. 【云】燃燒 28 (~,
 lurned [-nd] 或 burnt [-nt],
 burned 或 lurnt)
 burst [bɜ:st]. 【云】爆裂 89 (~,
 burst, burst)
 bus [bʊs]. 【名】公共汽車 77 (複數
 buses 或 busses [lʊs'ɪz])
 bush [lʊʃ]. 【名】灌木 46
 business [bɪz'nɪs]. 【名】事務, 事 66
 bus-rider [bʊs'rɪ'də]. 【名】公共
 汽車乘客 77
 butter [bʊtə]. 【名】牛乳酪(俗稱
 “奶油”) 54
 buyer [bɪ'ə]. 【名】普通買東西的人;
 (公司中的) 進貨員 32
 by and by [bɪ'ən bɪ]: 等一等, 再一
 會兒; 少頃, 不久 1, 46
 by day [bɪ də]: (於) 日間 75

C, c [sə]

cabinet [kæb'ɪnɪt]. 【名】櫥櫃等家
 具 58
 cabinet-maker [kæb'ɪnɪt-mə'ko:].
 【名】細木匠, 家具製造者 58
 café [ˈkæfɪ]. 【名】咖啡館, 小茶館
 call [kɔ:l]. 【名】叫喚 75 [S
 call the attention of [kɔ:l dɪ
 ə'tən/ʃən_əv]: 引起某人的注意
 67
 caller [kɔ:lə]. 【名】探聖者, 求見
 者 32
 calligraph [kɔ:lɪg'rəf] 【名】精美
 的字法術 21 (複數: [-s])
 calligraphy [kɔ:lɪg'rəfɪ]. 【名】書
 法 21 [S
 Canada [ˌkænə'də]. 【名】加拿大

- Canadian [kənə'dyən]. 【形】坎拿大的; 【名】坎拿大 54
- canal [kənəl/]. 【名】人工鑿成的河, 運河 55
- cancel [kən'sl]. 【云】取消 81
- candle [kən'dl]. 【名】蠟燭 15
- Canton [kən'tɒn/, kəntɒn/]. 【名】廣州 61
- capita: letter [kəp'ɪtəl lɪtə/]. 【名】大寫字母 75
- car [kɑː]. 【名】車 72
- card [kɑːd]. 【名】名片, 卡片 32
- care for [kɑː fə]. 【名】愛好 40 [59]
- carpenter [kɑːpɪntə]. 【名】木匠
- carry [kə'ri]. 【云】攜帶 64
- case [keɪ]. 【名】實例; (名詞或代名詞在句法上的) 格, 位 12, 24
- cashier [kəʃiə/]. 【名】主街納者, 司庫 31
- cat [kæt]. 【名】貓 28
- cat's-paw [kæts'paw]. 【名】“紫鈴”, 傀儡 29
- catty [kæ'ti]. 【名】(中國之) 斤 34
- cauldron [kaw'ldrɒn, kɔɪ/]. 【名】鍋子 10
- cave [keɪv]. 【名】洞 80
- ceiling [seɪlɪŋ]. 【名】天花板 2
- central [sən'trəl]. 【形】中央的, 中部的 74
- Central America [sən'trəl əmə'ri:kə]. 【名】美洲中部 54
- centre, center [sən'tə]. 【名】中央 74 [1]
- ceremony [sə'rɪməni]. 【名】禮節
- ce:tain [seɪ'teɪn]. 【形】某(某部, 某個等等) 11 [10]
- change [tʃeɪŋ]. 【名】零幣, 找頭
- cheese [tʃi:z]. 【名】乾酪 54
- C'efoo [tʃə'fʊ/]. 【名】(山東) 芝罘, 煙台 77' [芝罘街 77]
- Chefoo Street [tʃə'fʊ strɪt]. 【名】概, 衣櫃 22
- chest [tʃɛst]. 【名】概, 衣櫃 22
- chest of drawers [tʃɛst əv drɔːz]. 【名】抽櫃, 衣櫃 22
- chestnut [tʃɛst'nʌt]. 【名】栗子 28
- chick [tʃɪk]. 【名】雛, 小雞 64
- chicken [tʃɪk'n]. 【名】小雞, 童子雞 64 [89]
- chilblain [tʃɪl'blaɪn]. 【名】凍瘡
- child [tʃɪld]. 【名】子女或兒輩 48, 50 (複數 children [tʃɪldrən])
- China [tʃi'na]. 【名】中國 53
- choose [tʃu:z]. 【云】選擇, 舉 57 (~, chose [tʃəʊz], chosen [tʃəʊzn])
- Chungshán Road [tʃʊŋʃən'shān' rɔːd]. 【名】中山路 76
- church [tʃɜːtʃ]. 【名】禮拜堂 35
- circle [sɪ'kəl]. 【名】圓環; 圓形空地 73
- city [sɪ'ti]. 【名】城市, 大城 58
- class [klaːs]. 【名】類; 班級 13, 89 (複數 classes [k ə l ə sɪz])
- class work [klaːs wɜːk]. 【名】功課 89
- classification [klæsɪfɪkə'shən, klæsɪ'fɪ-]. 【名】類分 87
- classify [klæsɪ'fai]. 【云】類分 78
- clause [klaʊz]. 【名】子句 86
- claw [klaʊ]. 【名】爪 28
- clean [kli:n]. 【云】洗淨 5
- clear [kliə]. 【形】晴朗; 清潔 75
- clear soup [kliə sʊp]. 【名】清湯 81
- clerk [klɜːk, klɛ'k]. 【名】店員 8
- clip [klɪp]. 【名】(用剪剪器) 剪髮 23

- clippers [klɪp'əz]. 【名】剪髮器 23
- clock strikes ~ (tin es), the [ˌhə klɒk striks ~ (tɪnz)]: 時鐘打我下 88
- clock tower [k'lɒk təw'ə]: 鐘樓 7
- close [kləʊ]. 【形】近(剪髮時, 指“近肉”); 剪短 26
- closely [kləʊ'sli]. 【狀】相近地 49
- cloth [klɒð]. 【名】布 26 (複數 cloths [klɒθs, klɒðz])
- clothes [klɒðz, 舊式讀法 klɒz]. 【名】衣服 35 (無單數)
- club [klʌb]. 【名】俱樂部 38
- coarse [kɔːs, kɔːp]. 【形】粗 8
- cognate [kɒg'næt]. 【形】同源的 51
cognate object [kɒg'næt ə'ʃi:kt]: 同源賓語 51
- coir [kɔɪ]. 【名】棕 21
- coir mat [kɪr mæt]: 棕席 21
- cold [kəʊld]. 【名】傷風 89
- collect [kə'lekt]. 【云】收取; 收帳 82 [9]
- colour, color [kʌlə]. 【名】色, 顏色
- comb [kɒm]. 【名】梳子; 【云】梳(頭髮) 5
- come on [kʌm'ɒn]: 來呀! 1
- come to [kʌm tə]: 到(什麼地步, 或地方) 67, 73
- command [kə'mænd, 美 kə'mænd]. 【名·云】命令 43
- communt [kəm'ʌnt]. 【名·云】吐辭; 諱言 67, 70
- common noun [kəm'ən nəʊn]: 通用名詞 55 [38]
- company [kəm'pəni]. 【名】公司
- compare [kəm'pəɪ, kom-]. 【云】比較 57 [賸橫 29]
- compensate [kəm'pensət]. 【云】
- complement [kəm'plɪmənt]. 【名】補尾語 23
- complete [kəm'pli:t, kom-]. 【形】完全; 【云】完成, 使完滿 12, 23
- completely [kəm'pli:tli, kom-]. 【狀】完全地 16 [48]
- complex [kəm'pleks]. 【形】複雜
- complex sentence [kəm'pleks sɛn'təns]: 複葉句 86
- complimentary [kəm'plɪməntə-ri]. 【形】恭維的 63
- complimentary close [kəm'plɪməntə'ri kləʊz]: 恭維的結尾 63
- complimentary ending [kəm'plɪməntə'ri ɛn'dɪŋ]: 恭維的結尾 63
- compound [kəm'paʊnd]. 【名】混合物; 【形】混合的, 複合的 27, 41
- compound predicate [kəm'paʊnd prədɪkət]: 複合述語 88
- compound sentence [kəm'paʊnd sɛn'təns]: 複合句 87
- compound subject [kəm'paʊnd sʌ'ʃi:kt]: 複合主語 88
- compulsory [kəm'pʊlsəri, kom-, -əri]. 【形】強制的, 劃定的 77
- compulsory stop [kəm'pʊlsəri stɒp]: 一定停止的站, 大站 77
- concern [kənsɛ'n]. 【云】關涉 47
- conclusion [kənk ə'si:ʒən]. 【名】結尾 63
- condition [i'ædɪs'i:ʒən]. 【名】情形, 情勢 16
- conductor [kəndʌktə, kon-]. 【名】指揮者; 管理者; (車上的) 賣票人 76
- confident [kən'fɪdənt]. 【云】相信, 自信 67 [賸亂的 48]
- confusing [kə'fju:zɪŋ]. 【名】混

- conjunction** [kənjʌŋk/ʃən]. 【名】連詞,連合詞 33
conjunctive [kənjʌŋk/tiv]. 【形】屬於連詞的 88
conjunctive phrase [kənjʌŋk/ti: fra:z]. 連詞短語 88
connection [kənək/ʃən]. 【名】接連,關係 42
consider [kənsɪd/ə, kən-]. 【云】想,視為,當作 57 [41
consist [kən'sɪst/]. 【云】含有,包括
consist of [kən'sɪst/v/əv]. 含有,合~所成 41
construction [kənstrʌk/ʃən, kən-] 【名】構造 67
contain [kən'teɪn/]. 【云】含有,包括 23
conversation [kən'vəʃən/ʃən]. 【名】談話 85
cooking [kəʊk/ɪŋ] 【名】烹飪,烹任的藝術 81
cool [kʊl]. 【云】使冷 80
cooperate [kə'ɒp/əreɪt/]. 【云】合作 32
coordinate [kə'ɔ:dnɪt/]. 【形】同級的,同等的 87
coordinate clause [kə'ɔ:dnɪt klaʊz]. 同級子句 87
coordinate conjunction [kə'ɔ:dnɪt/ən'ʌŋk/ʃən]. 同級連詞 87
corn [kɔ:n]. 【名】穀類 34
corn beef [kɔ:n bi:]. 醃牛肉 34
corner [kɔ:nə]. 【名】角端,角邊際 63, 72 [42
correct [kə'rekt/]. 【形】對的,不錯
correspond [kə'res'ɒnd/ənt/]. 【名】寫信的人,互相通信的人 61
cosily, cozily [kə'zɪli/]. 【狀】舒服地 30
could [kəd]. 【助】(假使)能够 14
couldn't [kədnt/]. 【簡】(=could not) 不能 70
country [kʌn'tri/]. 【名】國;鄉村 53, 71
country cousin [kʌn'tri kʌz'n/]. 鄉下人,鄉下佬 72
courage [ˈʌrɪʃ/]. 【名】勇敢,勇氣,膽量 38
course [kɔ:rs, kɔ:rs]. 【名】一道食物,路程 56, 84
cousin [kʌz'n/]. 【名】中表兄弟姊妹,堂弟兄姊妹 49
cover [ˈkʌvə/]. 【云】包括,包容 77
crab [kræb]. 【名】蟹 81
crack [kræk/]. 【云】使破裂 47
cream [kri:m]. 【名】乳酪,乳酪色,淡黃色 10 [15
crooked [krəʊk'tid/]. 【形】彎曲的
cross [krɔ:s, kros]. 【形】乖戾的,暴戾的 8
cross-road [kros'ro:d/]. 【名】歧路,橫路,交叉路,十字路 71
crow [krəʊ]. 【名】烏鴉 84
cry [kri/]. 【云】高聲呼叫 50
cucumber [kʌ'kʌmbə/]. 【名】胡瓜,黃瓜 82
cunning [kʌn/ɪŋ]. 【形】狡猾 85
cupboard [kʌb'ɔ:d/]. 【名】碗碟櫃 22 [21
curtain [kɜ:tn/]. 【名】帷,幕,帳幕
custom [kʌs'təm]. 【名】風俗 4
customer [kʌ'tɔ:mə/]. 【名】顧客,客人;商店的客人,主顧 8, 26 [21
cut [kʌt/]. 【云】割,削 25 (過去時制及過去分詞)

D, d [ɔ̃]

- dare [dāɹ]. 【云】助 敢 44
- dark [dārk]. 【形】深色 9 (較級 darker [dārkə]; 最級 darkest [dārkɪst])
- date [dāt]. 【名】日期 63
- daughter-in-law [dau/əɹɪnlaw]. 【名】媳 49 (複數 daughters-in-law [dau/ˈtoʊzɪnlaw]).
- deal [di]. 【名】一份,許多 33
- dear [dēɹ]. 【形】親愛的 61
 dear me [dēɹ mə]: 嗟呀,哎呀 68
- death [dēθ]. 【名】死亡 80 (複數 deaths [dēθs])
- declarative [dɪkləɹ/ə:ɪv]. 【形】陳述的 78
 declarative sentence [ɪkləɹ/ə-tɪv sən/ʔəns]: 陳述句 78
- deep [dēp]. 【形】深 顏色 10
- deer [dēɹ]. 【名】鹿 43
- define [dɪf/ɪnɪt]. 【形】一定的 14
- definition [dēf/ɪnɪʃ/ə]. 【名】界說,定義 11 [好 1
- delicious [dɪlɪʃ/əs]. 【形】滋味很
- deliver [dɪ:ɪv/ə]. 【云】送交 63
- denote [dɪnə/ʔt]. 【云】指 55
- depend [dɪpənd/]. 【云】靠,恃 18
 depend on [dɪpənd/ ɒn]: 憑~而決定 18
- derive [dɪɹ/v]. 【云】得來 53
- describe [dɪ krɪ/v]. 【云】描寫,形容 15 [69
- deserve [dɪzəɹ/v]. 【云】應得,值得
- design [dɪzɪ/ɒ]. 【名】花樣 33
- dessert [dɪzəɹ/ʔt]. 【名】甜食(西餐中的最後食品) 83
- dessert-spoon [dɪzəɹ/ʔt-spʊ/ɒn]. 【名】喫甜食時所用的匙 83
- detail [dɪ/ˈeɪl, dɪtə/ɪ]. 【名】細目,細節 78
- determine [dɪtəɹ/ˈmɪn]. 【云】決定,決意 93
- diagram [dɪ/ˈeɪgrəm]. 【名】線圖; 【云】畫線圖 41, 66 [60
- diamond [dɪ/ˈəmənd]. 【名】金剛鑽
- difference [dɪf/ərəns]. 【名】不同處,差別 53
- difficulty [dɪf/ɪkə/ʔtɪ]. 【名】困難處,難關 53 (複數 -ies [-ɪz])
- dine [dɪn]. 【云】喫正餐 14
- dining-table [dɪ/ˈnɪŋ-ˈtæbəl]. 【名】大菜檯 22 [檯 89
- diphtheria [ɪfθəɹ/ɪə]. 【名】白喉 23
- direct [dɪrɛk/ɪ, dɪ-, de-]. 【形】直接的 23
 direct object [dɪrɛk/ɪ ɒb/ʒɪkt]: 直接賓語 23
- direction indicator [dɪrɛk/ʃən ɪn/ˈdɪkə/ʔeɹ]: 方向指明針 73
- directly [dɪrɛk/ɪ, dɪ-, de-]. 【狀】直接地;立刻 23, 81
- directly opposite [dɪrɛk/ɪ ɒp/ə-zɪt]: 正對面 73 [18
- discover [dɪskʌv/ə]. 【云】發現
- discuss [dɪkʌs/]. 【云】討論 81
- dismiss [dɪsmɪs/]. 【云】開除 87
- distance [dɪs/əns]. 【名】距離;遠隔 77
- distinction [dɪstɪŋk/ʃən]. 【名】分別 13
- distinctly [dɪstɪŋk/ʃlɪ]. 【狀】階階地 19
- distinguish [dɪstɪŋ/ˈwɪ:lɪ]. 【云】辨別,不同處 83

divide [dɪvɪd]. 【云】分, 分開 5
 dog [dɒg]. 【名】狗 3
 door sill [dɔːr sɪl]. 門限 59
 dot [dɒt]. 【名】點; 【云】加點 86
 dotted line [dɒtɪd lɪn]. 虛線 86
 doubt [daʊt]. 【名】疑惑 61
 down town [daʊn taʊn]. 城內, 市內 58
 down town section of a city [daʊn taʊn sɛkʃən əv ə sɪtɪ]. 市中心; 市之熱鬧處 71
 draw [draʊ]. 【云】拉; 繪圖 6, 41
 drawer [draʊə, draʊ]. 【名】抽斗 22
 drawing-room [draʊɪŋ-rʊm]. 【名】客廳 9
 dream [dri:m]. 【名】夢 64
 dress [dres]. 【云】整理(宰殺禽獸時, 指取出其中肝, 肺, 心, 腸, 洗乾淨, 而清理之及同類的工作) 43
 dresser [dresə]. 【名】梳妝臺 22
 drift [drɪft]. 【云】飄流, 趨向 54
 driver [draɪvə]. 【名】驅逐者; 驅車者, 車夫 77
 drop [drɒp]. 【云】使落下 62
 drop ~ into [drɒp ~ ɪn'tə]. 將~ 投入 62
 due [dju]. 【名】應得之款 47
 dull [dʌl]. 【形】暗淡, 不光亮 10
 dust [dʌst]. 【名】灰塵; 【云】拂(塵) 35
 Dutch [dʌtʃ]. 【形】荷蘭的; 【名】荷蘭人; 荷蘭的語言文字 [4, 55]

E, e [ə]

eager [eɪgə]. 【形】熱心的 50
 ease [eɪz]. 【名】安逸 89
 e.g. [eɪ'jə, ɪə'ɪgəz/ɪmpɪ]. 【簡】(拉丁文 *exempli gratia* 之簡) 例如 55
 egg [ɛg]. 【名】卵, (特指) 雞蛋 64
 electric [ɪ'lɛk'trɪk]. 【形】電的, 電氣的 27
 electrical [ɪ'lɛk'trɪkəl]. 【形】電的, 電氣的 27
 embarrass [ɪm'bærəs, ɛm-]. 【云】困苦; 慚不安 83
 emphaze [ɛm'fæzɪz]. 【云】注重; 加重語勢, 強調 78
 employ [ɪm'plɔɪ, ɛm-]. 【云】僱, 僱用 47
 empty [ɛmp'tɪ]. 【形】空; 【云】使
 engage [ɪŋgə'ʤ, ɛn-]. 【云】約, 從事; 訂約; 訂婚 32, 62
 engaged [ɪŋgə'ʤd, ɛn-]. 【分詞】有約的; 有事(指與人談話) 32
 engagement [ɪŋgə'ʤmənt, ɛn-]. 【名】約; 婚約 62
 engagement is broken, t'he [dɪ'ɪŋgə'ʤmənt ɪz brɒ'kn]. 解除婚約 62
 England [ɪŋgə'glænd]. 【名】英格蘭, 英國 53
 English [ɪŋgə'glɪʃ]. 【形】英文的; 英國的 11, 33
 enjoy [ɪn'ɔɪ, ɛn-]. 【云】賞樂; 享用
 enrage [ɪnrə'ʤ, ɛn-]. 【云】激怒 30
 enterprising [ɛn'tɜːprɪzɪŋ]. 【分詞】進取的 38
 entitle [ɪntɪ'tɪl, ɛn-]. 【云】應有, 應享, 使應享有 44
 envelope, envelop [ɛn'vɛləp]. 【名】信封 62
 equal [ɪ'kwəl]. 【云, 形】等於, 相等 [84]

each alone [əʃ'ə'əʊn]. 每個自己; 各自獨立 86

equal to [ɛ'kwel tōō]: 等於,與~相
等 24 [等 35

equivalent [ɛ'kwiv'ələnt]. 【形】相
equivalent to [ɛ'kwiv'ələnt tōō]:
等於,與~相等 33 [55

eraser [ɪrə'zə]. 【名】(擦字的)橡皮

escape [ɪskə'p]. 【云】逃避 74

especially [ɪ'spɛʃh'əli, əs-]. 【狀】
特別地尤其 43 [12

essential [ɪ'sɛn'shəl]. 【形】主要的

Europe [ɪ'r'əp]. 【名】歐洲 43

European languages, the [dhe
ɪ'r'əp'i'ən ləŋg'wɪdʒz]: 歐洲各
國的語言文字 55

ever since [ɛv'ə sɪns]: 自~時起一
直到現在 31

every time [ɛv'rɪ tɪm]: 每回 29

everywhere [ɛv'rɪwhɛr, -wɛr].
【狀】各處,不論何處 50

example [ɪgzə'mpl, əgz-]. 【名】
例 13 [12

except [ɪksɛpt, ək-]. 【介】除~以外

exchange [ɪksɛʃ'nɪʒ, əks-]. 【名】
交換;兌換銀錢 76, 85

exclaim [ɪksklaɪ'm, əks-]. 【云】呼
喊;驚歎 78

exclamatory [ɪksklaɪ'mətəri, əks-].
【形】呼喊的,驚歎的 78

exclamatory sentence [ɪks-
klaɪ'mətəri sɛn'təns]: 呼喊句,
驚歎句 78

exist [ɪgzɪst, əgz-]. 【云】存在 38

explain [ɪkspleɪ'n, əks-]. 【云】說
明 32

expletive [ɪksplɛ'tɪv, əks-]. 【名】
填補語;插入語 79

expletively [ɪksplɛ'tɪvlɪ, əks-].
【狀】實填補語用 79

express [ɪksprɛs', əks-]. 【云】表
示 11

expression [ɪksprɛʃ'hən, əks-].
【名】表示的方式,表現 11

F, f [ɛf]

fail [fæ]. 【云】失敗 39

fair [fær]. 【名】市集;墟;【形】公道
的 25, 47 [47

faithful [fə'thɪfʊl]. 【形】忠誠的

fall [fawl]. 【云】下降 7 (一, fell
[fɛl], fallen [faw'lən])

fall off [fawl'ɔf]: 脫去 38

familiar [fə'mɪljə]. 【形】熟識的;
不拘禮節的 61

family [fæm'ɪli]. 【名】家庭 62

family picture [fæm'ɪli pɪk'tʃə]:
全家福 62

fan [fæn]. 【名】扇;【云】揮扇;揮扇
使 27

fare [fær]. 【名】車費;食物 76, 81

farmer [fɑ'mɛ]. 【名】農夫 20

fascist [fæʃ'est]. 【名】意大利降
場惡團員,法西斯黨員 53

fast [fæst]. 【狀】快;深(言睡眠);
固定地;緊黏管地 17, 45, 7)

father-in-law [fɑ'dhərɪnlaw].
【名】翁;丈人 49 (複數 fathers-
in-law [fɑ'dhərɪnlaw])

fault [fawlt]. 【名】過失;缺點 74

favour, favor [fə'vɜ]. 【名】恩惠;
贊許;【云】給以恩惠,賜 19, 79, 84

fear [fɛr]. 【云】怕 1

feather [fɛðə]. 【名】羽毛 84

feeling [fɛ'lɪŋ]. 【名】感覺;情感
33

- fellow [fɛl'ə]. 【名】伴侶 24
- field [fi:ld]. 【名】田;空地 7
- fight [fi:t]. 【云】爭鬪,爭 51 (~, fought [fawt], fought)
- figure [fi:g'ə]. 【名】身材,身段;【云】計算 84, 90
- Filipino [fi'l'ipə'nō]. 【名】菲律賓人 53 (複數 Filipinos [-sɪz])
- fin [fi:n]. 【名】魚的翅 82
- finally [f'inaɪ]. 【狀】最後,末了 4
- fine [fi:n]. 【形】細的 17
- fine figure [fi:n fi'ə]. 苗條的身段 84
- fire [fi:ə]. 【名】火;火爐 6
- fire goes out [fi:ə gəʊ'əʊt]. 火熄了 68
- firewood [fi:ə'wɔ:d]. 【名】薪柴 68
- first cousin [fɜ:st kʌz'n]. 從兄弟姊妹;表兄弟姊妹 49
- fish [fi:ʃ]. 【名】魚 1 (複數仍用 fish; 但指各種不同的魚則用 fishes [fi:ʃ'ɪz]); 【云】捕魚 43
- fisherman [fi:ʃ'mən]. 【名】漁人 46 (複數 -men [-mən, -mən])
- flame [flæm]. 【名】火舌,火焰 15
- flap [flæp]. 【云】撲;【名】撲撲的聲音 68
- flatter [flætə]. 【云】阿諛 84
- fatterer [flætə'rə]. 【名】阿諛者 85
- fleece [fli:s]. 【名】羊毛(羊身上的毛,或一隻羊一次剪下來的毛) 50
- flower [flaʊ'ə]. 【名】花 7
- flush [flʌʃ]. 【名】沖洗,抽水沖洗 22 【動】 22
- flush toilet [flʌʃ tɔɪ'lɪ:t]. 沖水馬桶 45
- fly [fli]. 【云】飛 60 (~, flew [fləʊ], flown [fləʊn])
- fly [fli]. 【名】蒼蠅 74 (複數 flies [flaɪz]).
- foam [fəʊm]. 【名】浪花 60
- Foch [fɔ:ʃ, fɔ:ʃ]. 【名】福煦(法國當代名將) 61
- fold [fəʊld]. 【云】摺 62
- Follen, Eliza Lee [i'vɔ:lɪz fɔl'ən]. 人名 60 【話】 19
- follow [fɔ'ləʊ]. 【云】隨從;領悟(跟) 62
- fond [fɔ:nd]. 【形】愛,嗜愛 82
- fond of [fɔ:nd əv]. 愛,嗜好 82
- fool [fʊ:l]. 【云】騙,愚弄 19
- foolish [fʊ:l'ɪʃ]. 【形】愚蠢的 74
- foot [fʊ:t]. 【名】尺,英尺 33 (複數 feet [fi:t])
- for ages [fɔ: ə'jɪz]. 許久,很久 61
- for food [fɔ: fʊd]. 當食物 46
- for instance [fɔ: ɪn'stəns]. 例如 46
- for sale [fɔ: seɪ]. 出賣 46 【12
- for what reason [fɔ: wɔt rə'zɪn]. 爲什麼理由,有什麼理由 46
- for yourself [fɔ: ɔ:nsɪf]. 親自 57
- force [fɔ:s]. 【云】擠出(牙膏);強逼使出 5
- foreign [fɔ:ri:n]. 【形】外國的 56
- foreigner [fɔ:ri:ne]. 【名】外國人 53 【樹林】 45
- forest [fɔ:rist, 美 fɔ:rst]. 【名】林子 79
- fork [fɔ:k]. 【名】叉子 79
- form [fɔ:m]. 【名】形式;【云】組成 11, 23 【者】 3
- former [fɔ:mə]. 【形】(the ~) 前 25
- fortune [fɔ:tʃən]. 【名】財產,事業 25
- forward [fɔ:wəd]. 【狀】向前 44
- fox [fɔks]. 【名】狐狸 39
- fox's [fɔks'ɪz]. 狐狸的 85
- frame [fræm]. 【名】骨架;框 2

France [frɑ:ns]. 【名】法蘭西(國名), 法國; 佛郎士(人名) 54

free [frē]. 【形】自由的; 離開的, 分離的; 免費 60, 82

free sample [frē sah'mpl]: 免費貨樣 82

freely [frē'li]. 【狀】自由地; 不拘束地; 大量地 1, 41

freeze [frōz]. 【云】結冰, 凍結 80
(~, froze [frōz], frozen [frō'zn])

French [fræŋʃ]. 【形】法國的; 【名】法國人; 法國語言文字 54, 55

Frenchman [fræŋʃ'mæn]. 【名】法國人 54 (複數 -men [-mæn, -mən])

fresh [frēʃ]. 【形】新鮮的 34

fret [frēt]. 【云】皺怒, 焦灼, 煩擾 70

friendly [frēn'dli]. 【形】友誼的, 和藹的 68

Fritz [frīts]. 【名】人名 53

from now on [frəm now ɔ:n]: 從今以後 11

from side to side [frəm sīd tə sīd]: 自這邊到那邊 80

from time to time [frəm tīm tə tīm]: 時時, 時或 83

frozen to death [frō'zn tə dəθ]: 凍死 80

fruit [frūt]. 【名】果子 39

fully [fūl'i]. 【狀】完滿地 29

function [fʌŋkʃən]. 【名】效用 17

funny [fʌn'i]. 【形】奇怪的 34

furnish [fɜ:n'ɪʃ]. 【云】裝置 21

furniture [fɜ:n'niʃə]. 【名】傢具, 木器 94

fuss [fʌs]. 【云】騷動, 大驚小怪 70

G, g [jə]

game [gām]. 【名】趣味 45 [47

gather [gæð'ə]. 【云】採集, 收集; 替

general [jən'erəl, jən'rəl]. 【形】普通的 82

generally speaking [jən'erəli sp'e:kɪŋ]: 依普通情形而論 55

German [jɜ:m'mæn]. 【形】德國的; 【名】德國人; 德語, 德文 53, 55

Germany [jɜ:m'məni]. 【名】日耳曼, 德國 53

get [gət]. 【云】猜得 15

get back [gət bæk]: 回 73

get invited [gət invi'tid]: 被請 53 [76

get off [gət'ɔ:]: 離去; 下車 74,

get on [gət'ɔ:n]: 上車 76

get rich quick [gət rɪʃ kwɪk]: 火速發財, 發橫財 90

get there [gət ðeə]: 到那邊 71

get used to it [gət ʊst tə it]: 使習於那個 88

give up [gɪv'ʌp]: 放棄, 作罷 30

glass [glɑ:s]. 【名】玻璃; 玻璃杯 2, 79 (複數 glasses [glɑ:s'z])

glossy [gɔ:si]. 【形】有光澤的 84

go on [gə ɔ:n]: 繼續下去 29

go without [gə wɪðəu't] (=have no): 沒有 78

gold [gəʊld]. 【名】金 70 [的 90

golden [gəʊlden, gəʊ'ln]. 【形】金

golden eggs [gəʊ'dn ɛgz]: 金蛋 90

good day [gʊd'deɪ]: 今天好呀 84

good deal, a [ə gʊd deɪ]: 許多 33

good gracious [gʊd grə'sheɪ]: 天哪, 啊呀 83

- good will [gōəd wīl]: 好意, 誠心 75
 goods [gōdɪz]: 【名】貨物 8
 goose [gōos]: 【名】鵝, 母鵝 90 (複數 geese [gē])
 gracious [ri's ə]. 【形】慈惠的, 優厚的 33
 grade [grāi]. 【名】等級, 號 82
 grammar [grām/ə]. 【名】文法 11
 grammatical [g əmət'i:ləi, -kl] 【形】文法的, 關於文法的, 合於文法的 42
 gramme, gram [grām]. 【名】克, 格蘭姆, 公分 (簡寫作 g.) 34
 grand [grænd]. 【形】大; 顯盛的 28
 Grand Canal, the [the grænd kənəl]: (中國) 運河 55
 grandchild [grænd'chıld]. 【名】孫或孫女 外孫或外孫女 43
 grandchildren [grænd'chil'drən]. 【名】孫, 外孫 (不分男女) 43
 granddaughter [grænd'daw'tə]. 【名】孫女, 外孫女 43
 grandfather [grænd'fah/dhə]. 【名】祖父, 外祖父 43
 grandmother [grænd'müdh/ə]. 【名】祖母, 外祖母 43
 grandparents [grænd'pär'ənts]. 【名】祖父母, 外祖父母 43
 grandson [grænd'sün]. 【名】孫, 外孫 43
 granduncle [grænd'üng/kl]. 【名】伯祖, 叔祖, 等 57
 grant [grənt, 美 grənt]. 【云】允許, 賜 69
 grape [grəp]. 【名】葡萄 19
 great [grät]. 【形】大, 偉大; 【名】大人物 44 【不列顛】 53
 Great Britain [g'æt brɪ'tən]: 大
 great granddaughter [grät grænd'daw'tə]: 曾孫女, 外曾孫女 48
 great grandfather [grät grænd'fah/dhə]: 曾祖父, 外曾祖父 43
 great grandmo. her [rätgränd'müdh/ə]: 曾祖母, 外曾祖母 43
 great grandparents [grät grænd'pär'ənts]: 曾祖父母, 外曾祖父母 43
 great grandson [grät grænd'sün]: 曾孫 (男), 外曾孫 (男) 43
 Great Wall, the [dhə grät wawl]: (中國) 長城 55
 greatly [grä'tli] 【狀】大大地 85
 greedy [grē'di]. 【形】貪食的 6
 green [grēn]. 【形】青 9
 greet [grē]. 【云】祝賀 84
 grey, gray [grē]. 【形】灰色 10
 grocery [grō'sərɪ, -sri]. 【名】食物雜貨店 14 (常用複數) 14
 gross [grōs]. 【形】總的; 未除淨的
 gross weight [grōs wāt]: 總重 34
 group [grōop]. 【名】羣 12
 grow up [g'ō ūp]: 成人, 成年 46
 growl [growl]. 【名】藉藉聲; 咆哮; 喃喃不平之鳴; 【云】作藉藉聲; 喃喃鳴不平 44 【長成的】 75
 grown-up [grō'n-ŭp]. 【形】長大的; grown-up people [grō'n-ŭp pē'pl]: 成人, 大人 75
 grumble [grü'mbl]. 【云】喃喃埋怨
 guar ntee [gär'əntē]. 【云】擔保
 guess [gēs]. 【云】猜 15 [33
 guest [gēsɪ]. 【名】客人 6
 guide [gāi]. 【名】指南 9
 gurgle [gür'gl]. 【云】作潺潺聲; 使作潺潺聲 5

H, h [äch]

- had the cave for his home [häd dlə käv fə 'iz l.ɔː]: 以洞爲家 80
- hair cut [hær kút]: 剪髮(名詞) 26
- hair-cutting [hær'kút'ɪŋ]: 【形】關於剪髮的 26
- half of the way [hæf əv ðə weɪ]: 一半的[程] 78
- hall [hawl]. 【名】門廳, 門廊 3
- hand [hænd]. 【云】交付 52
hand over to [hænd əv təʊ]: 移交(某人) 52
- hand-mirror [hænd'mɪ.ə]. 【名】手鏡 5
- handle [hæn'dl]. 【名】柄 15
- hang [hæŋ]. 【云】吊, 掛, 下垂 21, 45 (~, hung [hʌŋ], hung)
- Hankow [hæn'kəʊ]. 【名】漢口 76
Hankow Road [hæn'kəʊ' rəʊd]: (上海)漢口路 76
- happen [hæp'n]. 【云】發生, 遭逢 46
- hard [hɑːd]. 【形】難, 辛勞的 8, 70
- hardly [hɑː'dli]. 【狀】未必 46
hardly ~ when [hɑː'dli ~ wɪn]: 甫~即, 剛~便 70
- harm [hɑːm]. 【名】害處 8
has come to [hæz kʊm tə]: 已成爲 67
has come to the worst [hæz kʊm tə ðə wɜːst]: (事情)糟透了 67
- hatch [hætʃ]. 【云】孵化; 解 64
- have a hard time [hæv ə hɑːd tɪm]: 受苦 70
- have a kind heart [hæv ə kɪnd hɑːt]: 心慈, 仁慈 68
- head ache [hɛd'æɪk]. 【名】頭痛 89
- heading [hɛd'ɪŋ]. 【名】標頭(寄信人住址及發信日期) 68
- heart [hɑːt]. 【名】心, 心腸 69
- he'll [hɛl]. 【代】(=he will) 他將
- hen [hɛn]. 【名】母雞 64 {7
- hence [hɛns]. 【狀】所以 53
- herself [hɜː'sɛlf]. 【代】伊自己 29
- hide [hɪd]. 【云】藏, 隱 7 (~, hid [hɪd], hidden [hɪd'n])
- high [haɪ]. 【形】高 60
- himself [hɪm'sɪf]. 【代】他自己
- Hindustani [hɪn'dʊstɑːni, -tɑh'nɪ]. 【名】印度的語言文字 15
- hole [həʊl]. 【名】孔, 洞 15
- holard [hɒl'ɑːd]. 【名】荷蘭 54
- hoop [hʊp]. 【名】鐵圈 75
- hop [hɒp]. 【云】跳躍 75
- hope [həʊp]. 【名】希望 80
- horizontal [hɒrɪ'zɒntl]. 【形】地平的, 平的 41 {70
- horrid [hɒrɪd]. 【形】可憎, 可怕的
- hors d'oeuvre [hɔː'd'ɔːvɜː, ɔː'vɜː]. 【名】菜盤 56
- host [hɒst]. 【名】主人 83
- hotel [həʊtəl, ho'ɒl]. 【名】旅館 75 {53
- hotly [hɒtli]. 【狀】熱烈地; 急迫地
- however [haʊ'ɛvə]. 【連, 狀】雖然; 無論 1, 46
- however I like [haʊ'ɛvə lɪk]: 無論如何的少 46
- however much [haʊ'ɛvə mʌtʃ]: 無論如何的多 46
- hunger [hʌŋgə]. 【名】飢餓 68
- hunt [hʌnt]. 【名, 云】狩獵 48

hunter [hʌn'te]. 【名】獵人 43
 hurry [hʌr'i]. 【名】匆促 77
 husband [hʌz/bʌnd]. 【名】丈夫 48
 hut [hʌt]. 【名】小屋 68
 hyphen [hi'fən, hi'fn]. 【名】連字號(-) 42

I, i [i]

- I see [i se]: 我明白了,是呀 18
 i.e. [i'e, dhət'iz]. 【簡】(拉丁文 *id est* 之簡) 就是 17
 if [if]. 【連】是否 15
 I'll [il]. 【縮】(=I will) 我要 14
 illustration [il'vəstrə'shən]. 【名】實例 88
 I'm [im]. 【縮】(=I am) 我是 71
 immediately [im'e'dyətli, -jət-]. 【狀】立刻 58
 imperative [impə:'etiv]. 【形】有權威的,命令的 78
 imperative sentence [impər'etiv sə...'tens]: 命令句 78
 import [impɔ:t]. 【云】進口;進(貨) 80 【要】86
 importance [impɔ:'æns]. 【名】重
 in a hurry [in ə hʌr'i]: 匆促之間,急促 77
 in addition to [in ədɪ'shən tə]: 在~之外,加之 84
 in apposition with [in ə'pɔ:zɪʃ'ən wɪð]: 與~同列 66
 in detail [in de'taɪl]: 詳細地 78
 in exchange for [in ɪks'tʃeɪ'njə]: 交換 85 【79】
 in favour of [in fə'ver'əv]: 贊同
 in frames [in fræmz]: 鐵樞的 21
 in love with [in lʌv wɪð]: 與某人發生戀愛 62
 in order that [in ɔ:'dɜ:ðet]: 爲要使 38
 in place of [in pləs'əv] (= instead of): 代替 18
 in scrolls [in skrɔ:lz]: 捲成筒的 21
 in spite of [in spɪt'əv]: 儘管有~的妨礙仍然 38
 in store [in stɔ:t]: 積蓄著 90
 in the first place [in ðə fɪrst pləs]: 一則 88
 in the second place [in ðə sək'ənd pləs]: 二則 88
 inch [ɪnʃ]. 【名】英寸 33
 incline [ɪn'klaɪn]. 【云】傾斜 41
 increase [ɪn'krəs]. 【名】增加 35
 increase of salary [in'krəs'əv səl'əri]: 加薪 62
 independent [ɪn'dɪpən'dent]. 【形】獨立的 67
 independent construction [ɪn'dɪpən'dent kɔnstrʌk'shən]: 獨立構造 67
 irdependent of [ɪn'dɪpən'dent əv]: 脫離~而獨立的 67
 India [ɪn'diə]. 【名】印度 53
 Indian [ɪn'dyən]. 【形】印度的; 【名】印度人 53 【者】73
 indicator [ɪn'dɪkə'teɪ]. 【名】指明
 indirect [ɪn'dɪrɪkt', -dɪ-, -de:]. 【形】間接的 61
 indirect object [ɪn'dɪrɪkt'əb'ʃjɪkt]: 間接賓語 61
 indirectly [ɪn'dɪrɪkt'li, -dɪ-, -de:]. 【狀】間接地 61
 individual [ɪn'dɪvɪd'uəl, -vɪj'uəl]. 【名】個人 55

Indo-China [in'dō-chī'ne]. 【名】
印度支那 54

Indo-Chinese [in'dō-chīnē'z].
【形】印度支那的; 【名】印度支那人;
印度支那的語言文字 54, 55

influence [in'fluəns]. 【云】影響

ink [ɪŋk]. 【名】墨水 55 [78]

inner [in'ə]. 【形】(in 的較級)較內的
的 5 [內部 5

inner part, the [dhə in'ə pɑ:t]:
inquire [ɪŋkwɪr'.]. 【云】詢問 71

instance [ɪn'stɑ:ns]. 【名】例 12

instead [ɪnstɪd'.]. 【狀】代替 13

instead of [ɪnstɪd' əv]: 代替 13

interest [ɪn'terɪst, -rɒst, -trɪst,
-trɛst]. 【云】使(人)有興味 8

interjection [ɪn'tɛ, ʃən]. 【名】
感歎詞 36

interrogative [ɪn'tɛrɔg'ətɪv].
【形】詢問的 78

interrogative pronoun [ɪn'tɛ-
rɔg'ətɪv prə'noun]: 詢問代名
詞 79

interrogative sentence [ɪn'tɛ-
rɔg'ətɪv sɛn'təns]: 詢問句 78

interval [ɪn'təvəl]. 【名】相隔之
時間 81 [81]

intimate [ɪn'tɪmət]. 【形】親密的

intransitive [ɪntrə'hnsɪ'tɪv,
-træn-]. 【形】自止的, 動作或情
形不影響及他物的 23

intransitive verb [ɪntrə'hnsɪ'tɪv
vɛrb]: 自止式謂詞 23

introduce [ɪn'trə'dʊs]. 【云】介
紹 31

introduction [ɪn'trə'dʊk'shən].
【名】引子 63 [79]

inert [ɪnɜ't]. 【云】倒置, 靜

invite [ɪ'vɪt]. 【云】請 53

Ireland [ɪr'lənd] 【名】愛爾蘭 53

Irish [ɪr'ɪʃ]. 【形】愛爾蘭的; 【名】
愛爾蘭人 53

Irishman [ɪr'ɪʃmən]. 【名】愛爾蘭
人 53 (複數 -men [-mən, -mɒn])

iron [ɪən]. 【云】熨, 燙(衣服) 35

island [ɪ'lənd]. 【名】島 55

Italian [ɪ'tæljən]. 【形】意大利的;
【名】意大利人; 意大利語文 53, 55

italics [ɪ'tæl'ɪks]. 【名】斜體字 51

Italy [ɪ'təli]. 【名】意大利 53

itself [ɪtsɛl'f]. 【代】它自身 47

J, j [jə]

jackal [jæk'awl]. 【名】胡狼 43

jam [jəm]. 【名】果醬 74

Japan [jəpæn'] 【名】日本 54

Japanese [jəpənē'z]. 【形】日本的;
【名】日本人; 日本語言文字 54, 55

jar [jɑ:]. 【名】壺, 瓶, 罐 74

Java [jə'və]. 【名】爪哇 54

Javanese [jəvənē'z]. 【形】爪哇
的; 【名】爪哇人 54

Johnny [jɔn'i]. 【名】毛鴨(男子名,
即 John [jɒn] 的小名) 6

judge [jʌdʒ]. 【名】審判官 44

jump [jʌmp]. 【云】躍 20

just [jʌst]. 【狀】恰好 39

K, k [kə]

keep [kēp]. 【云】保持; 記帳(與
books 連用時) 7, 31 (～, kept
[kəpt, kept])

kettle [kət'l]. 【名】鍋茶銚 6
 kid [ki]. 【名】小羊 5
 kidney [ki'dni]. 【名】腰 81
 kill [ki]. 【云】殺死,打死,弄死 48
 kilogramme, kilogram [ki'l'g-
 rām]. 【名】仟克,公斤 (簡寫
 作 kg., 但現時常說 kilo 或 kilos
 [i'l/5 或 ki'l/5]) 34
 kind of you [kind'əv ū]. 承蒙 62
 king [kiŋ]. 【名】王,國王 6
 kitchen [ki'hən]. 【名】廚房 3
 knife [nɪv]. 【名】刀 79 (複數
 knives [nɪvz])
 knock [nɒk]. 【云】敲;叩門 68
 known [nəʊn]. 【分詞】被人家知道
 :8 (know [nəʊ], knew [nū], ~)
 Korea [kə'ri:ə]. 【名】高麗,朝鮮 54
 Korean [kə'ri:ən]. 【形】高麗的;
 【名】高麗人;高麗語言文字 54, 55
 Kuling Street [kū'liŋ's rɛt].
 牯嶺街 77

L, I [ɔ]

labour, labor [lə'bo:]. 【名】工;工
 作 44
 labourer, laborer [lə'hɔ:ə]. 【名】
 工人,勞工 87
 lace [lās]. 【名】花邊;花邊布(用爲窗
 幔者) 21
 ladder [lād'ə]. 【名】梯子(可移動
 的,如消防隊所用的) 75
 lamb [lām]. 【名】小羊 50
 lane [lan]. 【名】巷 81
 language [lāŋ'gwɪ]. 【名】語言,
 語言,文字 55

latch [lætʃ]. 【名】門闌 6
 lather [lə'hð:ə, 美 lə'hð:ə]. 【名】
 肥皂泡沫;【云】塗以肥皂泡沫 27,
 30 [54
 Latin [læ'tɪn]. 【形】拉丁(民族)的
 Latin America [læ'tɪn ə'mer'i-
 kə]. 拉丁美洲(即北美洲之南部及
 南美洲全部) 54
 Latin American [læ'tɪn ə'reɪ-
 kən]. 拉丁美洲的;拉丁美洲的人
 51
 latter [læt'ə]. 【形】(late 的較級)
 後者(作此解時,前加 the) 3
 laugh [lɑ:f]. 【云】笑 23
 lavender [læv'ɪndə]. 【名】淡紫 9
 lay [li]. 【云】生(蛋) 90 (~, laid
 [læd], laid)
 lazy [læ'zi]. 【形】懶惰的 87 (較
 級 lazier [læ'zi:ə], 最級 laziest
 [læ'zi:st])
 lead [led]. 【云】引導;通 72 (~,
 led [ləd], led) [53
 leader [lɔ:də]. 【名】領導者,領袖
 leaf [li:f]. 【名】葉子,樹葉 (複數
 leaves [li:vz]) 45
 learnt [lɛrnt]. 【分詞】(learn 的
 過去時制及過去分詞)學,學習 37
 leave for [li:v fɔ:]. 到~(地方)去 61
 leave [li:v]. 【名】許可 89
 leave of absence [li:v əv əb-
 sɛns]. 准假 89 [82
 lest [lest]. 【連】恐怕,否則怕,以免
 letter box [lɛt'ə bɒks]. 信箱 62
 life [li:]. 【名】生命,性命 17 (複
 數 lives [li:vz])
 light [li:]. 【形】淺色 9 (較級
 lighter [li:'ə], 最級 lightest
 [li:'tɪst])

light [laɪt]. 【名】點火 74 (～, lighted [lɪ'tɪd] 或 lit [lɪt], lighted 或 lit)
 likely [lɪ'kli]. 【形】可有的 68
 lime [laɪm]. 【名】石灰 49
 line [laɪn]. 【名】線 41 [50]
 linger [lɪŋ'gə]. 【云】逡巡; 留戀
 lion [lɪ'ən]. 【名】獅子 43
 liquid [lɪk'wɪd]. 【名】液質: 【形】液質的 27
 list [lɪst]. 【名】單, 目錄 55
 listener [lɪs'nə]. 【名】聽話的人
 little [lɪ'tl]. 【形】小 45 [57]
 live [lɪv]. 【云】生活, 活着 58
 live up to ~ [lɪv ʌp tə]: 履行某種義務 47
 liver [lɪv'ə]. 【名】肝 81
 loaf [ləʊf]. 【名】(麵包之)一塊 75 (複數 loaves [ləʊvz])
 lobster [ləʊ'stə]. 【名】龍蝦 81
 lock [lɒk]. 【名】鎖鑰 58
 locksmith [lɒk'smɪθ]. 【名】修理鎖鑰的人; 銅匠 58 [33]
 long measure [lɒŋ məʒ'ə]. 尺廣
 long way yet, a [ə lɒŋ wə jət]: 離此地還遠 77
 look [lʊk]. 【云】看起來像 5
 look after [lʊk ə'hʌftə]: 照顧, 照料 52
 looks [lʊks]. 【名】容貌 84
 look-out [lʊk'əʊt]. 【名】留心 18
 lose no time [ləʊz nɔ tɪm]: 立刻 85 [迷路 80]
 lose one's way [ləʊz wʌnz wə]:
 lot [lɒt]. 【名】多數, 多量, 衆多 64
 a lot of [ə ɒt ə]. 【名】許多 64
 lots and lots of [lɒts ən lɒts əv]: 許許多多 64

loud [laʊd]. 【狀】大聲 19
 louder [laʊ'də]. 【狀】(loud 的較級)較大聲 19 [50, 62]
 love [lʊv]. 【云】愛; 【名】愛情, 戀愛
 love sick [lʊv sɪk]: 害相思病 89
 low [ləʊ]. 【狀】低, 低聲 19

M, m [ɛm]

maid [maɪd]. 【名】女子, 女郎 25
 mail [maɪl]. 【云】寄信, 付郵 82
 main [maɪn]. 【形】主要的 86
 main clause [maɪn klaʊz]: 主句 86
 make [meɪk]. 【云】使; 整理 15, 22 (～, made [meɪd], made)
 make one bad [meɪk d ə bəd]: 錯狀 22
 Malay [mə'lɑ:]. 【名】馬來人; 馬來語言文字 54, 55
 Malaya [mə'lɑ:yə]. 【名】馬來亞(即馬來半島及其附近的島嶼) 54
 Malayan [mə'lɑ:yən]. 【形】馬來亞的; 【名】馬來亞人 54 [49]
 man and wife [mæn ən wɪf]: 夫妻
 manager [mænɪ'ʒə]. 【名】經理 31
 mandarin [mæn'dərɪn]. 【名】官 81 [桂魚 81]
 mandarin fish [mæn'də.rɪn fɪʃ]:
 manger [mænɪ'ʒə]. 【名】槽 30
 manners [mæn'əz]. 【名】禮貌 83
 market [mɑ:kɪt]. 【名】市 33
 Market Standard foot [mɑ:kɪt stæn'dəd fʊt]: 市尺 33
 Market Standard system [mɑ:kɪt stæn'dəd sɪs'tɪm]: 市標準制 33

- marriage** [mɑ:ʹi]. 【名】結婚 62
marry [mɑ:ʹi]. 【云】與~結婚,嫁,娶 25 [6]
Mary [mɑ:ʹi]. 【名】瑪麗(女人名)
mason [mɑ:sɔ:]. 【名】泥水匠 59
massage [mɑ:s.əb/zh]. 【名,云】按摩 27
mat [mæt]. 【名】席 21
matter [mæt/ə]. 【名】事,事,問題,關係 52, 83
mattress [mæt/ris]. 【名】褥子 12
May [mɑ:]. 【名】女人名 15
meadow [mē.ə/]. 【名】田野,草場 5
mean [mēn]. 【云】意指 12 (~, meant [mēnt], meant)
mean by ~ [mēn bi:]. ~的意義是,~意即 46 [2]
meaning [mēn/ɪŋ]. 【名】意義
measure [mēzh/ə]. 【名】量度,尺寸 52, 58
meeting [mē/ɪŋ]. 【名】會議,會 79 [具 31]
member [mēn./tə]. 【名】會員;人
mend [mēnd]. 【云】補 15
mention [mēn/shən]. 【云】說到,提及 8
mere [mē]. 【形】僅,只,唯 78
messenger [mēs/ɪ.jə]. 【名】送信人 52
messenger boy [mēs/ɪnjə bɔi]. 信差 52
metre, meter [mēt/ə]. 【名】米突,尺,米,公尺 33
mile [mil]. 【名】英里 52
milk [mɪk]. 【云】擠牛奶 25
mind [mɪ.nd]. 【名】心;【云】以爲 19
mine [mɪn]. 【代】我的 28
mirror [mɪ/ə]. 【名】鏡 5
mistake [mɪstə/k]. 【名】錯誤 53
misty [mɪs/ɪ]. 【形】霧罩的 60
modifier [mɒd/ɪfɪə]. 【名】變動意義者 17
modify [mɒd/ɪfi]. 【云】變動~的意義;限制 16 (~, modified [mɒd/ɪfɪ], modified)
Molly [mɒl/ɪ]. 【名】女人名 64
Mongolia [mɒ:ggɔ:/yə]. 【名】蒙古 76
Mongolia Road [mɒŋggɔ:/yə rɒd]. (上海) 蒙古路 76
monkey [mʌŋg/ki]. 【名】猴子 28
mortar [mɔ:tə]. 【名】灰泥 59
mosquito [mɒskə/tɔ]. 【名】蚊子 70 (複數加 -es [-z])
most likely [mɒst l/klɪ]. 大半,最有可能性的 68
most of the people [mɒst əv ðe pē/pi]. 大半的人 83
moth [mɒθ]. 【名】蛾 74 (複數加 -s [-s])
mother-in-law [mʌð/ərɪnlɔw]. 【名】姑,丈母 49 (複數 mothers-in-law [mʌð/əzɪnlɔw])
mouthful [mɔw/θfʊl]. 【名】滿口,一口 48
mug [mʌg]. 【名】漱口杯 5
mulberry [mʌ/bəri, -brɪ]. 【名】桑 35
mushroom [mʌsh/rʊm]. 【名】草,菌,菇 34
Mussolini [mʊssɔ:ɪn/ɪ]. 【名】墨索里尼(人名) 63
mutual [mʌ/ʉə, 英 mʌ/ʉə]. 【形】公共的 62

N, n [ɛn]

- Nadir [nɑː'dɪr]. 【名】人名 53
 name [nɑːm]. 【云】命名, 稱呼 48
 naming one's relations [nɑːm-
 ɪŋ wʌnz rɪ ə'heɪnz]: 親戚間的
 稱呼 48
 namely [nɑːmli]. 【狀】即, 就是 78
 Nanchang [nɑːn'ʃɑːŋ]. 【名】南
 昌(江西省會) 76
 Nanchang Road [nɑːn'ʃɑːŋ
 rɔːd]: (上海)南昌路 76
 napkin [næp'kɪn]. 【名】(食時所用
 之)布巾 83 [66
 nation [nə'sheɪn]. 【名】國家; 民族
 natural [nə'tʃʊrəl]. 【形】自然的 79
 natural order [ɔː'tʃɔːr]: 自然秩序
 79 [地] 23
 naturally [nə'tʃʊrəli]. 【狀】自然
 nature [nə'tʃə]. 【名】性質 50
 naught [nɔːt]. 【名】無物, 零 34
 near [nɪə]. 【介】近 30
 nearly [nɪəli]. 【狀】幾乎 80
 needn't [niːdn't]. 【縮】(=need
 nɔː) 無須, 不必 1
 neighbour, neighbor [neɪ'bɔː]. 【名】
 鄰人 6
 neither [neɪ'dhə, nɪ-]. 【連】不, 也
 不 1 [48
 nephew [nɛp'hju, nɛv'ju]. 【名】姪兒
 nest [nest]. 【名】窩, 巢 82
 net [net]. 【形】淨, 除淨的 34
 net weight [net wɛɪt]: 淨重 34
 never [nevə]. 【狀】永不, 決不 16
 never mind [nevə mɪnd]: 不
 相干, 不要緊 28
 next [nɛkst]. 【狀】其次 5

- nicely [nɪ'sli]. 【狀】精細地 21
 nicer [nɪ'sə]. 【形】(nice 的較級)
 較精細 2
 niece [niːs]. 【名】姪女 48
 no sooner [nə sʊə'nə]: 剛剛 79
 no sooner ~ than [nə sʊə'nə ~
 dhə:]: 剛~便, 甫~即 79
 nominative [nə'mɪneɪtɪv]. 【形】屬
 於主語的, 屬於主格的; 【名】主格
 24, 67
 nominative case [nə'mɪneɪtɪv
 kæs]: 主格 24
 nominative of direct address
 [nə'mɪneɪtɪv əv dɪrɛkt'
 əbrɛs:]: 直接呼喚主格 67
 none [nʌn]. 【代】一個也沒有 3
 nor [nɔː]. 【連】也不 3 [66
 North China [nɔːθtʃaɪ'neɪ]: 華北
 not quite ~ miles [nɔːt kwɪt ~
 n.i:z]: 不到~(幾)英里 71
 note [nəʊt]. 【云】注意 13
 notice [nəʊtɪs]. 【云】看出 13
 noun [naʊn]. 【名】名詞 13
 nowadays [nəw'edəz]. 【狀】現在,
 當今之世 40
 number [nʌm'bɔː]. 【名】數目字 49
 nut [nʌt]. 【名】樹子(如栗子等) 47

O, o [o]

- object [ɔb'ʃɪkt, -ʃɔkt] 【名】賓語;
 物, 東西, 人 28, 51
 object complement [ɔb'ʃɪkt
 kɔm'plɪmənt]: 賓語補足語 57
 objective [ɔb'ʃɛktɪv]. 【形】屬於賓
 語的, 受賓語謂詞所述的動作或情形
 之影響的 24

- objective case** [ɔb'ʤektɪv kɑ:s]:
受格 24
- observation** [ɔb'zəvə'shən]. 【名】
觀察 11
- obtain** [əbteɪn]. 【云】得到, 取得;
有; 通行(罕作此解) 11, 49
- of** [ɔv, əv]. 【介】關於 62
- offer** [ɔf'ə]. 【云】獻與, 取~與 26
- office hours** [ɔf'is ɔwɪz]: 辦公時
間 31
- oh** [ɔ]. 【感】啊 36 [38
oh my: 吓, 我的[天呀], 嗟呀, 啊呀
omit [ɔmɪt', o-, ə-]. 【云】減去 12
- old saying** [ɔld seɪŋ]: 俗語 46
- on** [ɔn]. 【狀】前進 1
- on the look-out for** [ɔn ðə lʊk' /
ɔw't fə]: 留心尋覓 18
- once every year** [wʊns ɛv'ri jɪɪ]:
每年一回 66
- once in a while** [wʊns ɪn ə wɪl]:
有時; 偶然一次 38
- once upon a time** [wʊns əpʊn' ə
tɪm]: 有一回, 從前 46
- one another** [wʊn ə.ʊðh'ə]: 彼此,
互相 33 [48
one's [wʊnz]. 【代】人的, 任何人的
one-third [wʊn'thɪd]. 【代】三分
之一 71 [73
opposite [ɔp'ozɪt]. 【形】對面的
orange [ɔr'ɪŋ]. 【名】橙, 柑; 【名-
形】橙黃色 10
- orchard** [ɔtʃəɪ]. 【名】果園 39
- order** [ɔr'də]. 【云】定(指定菜, 定
貨); 【名】秩序; 所定的菜, 所要定的
菜 56, 78, 81 [49
ordinal [ɔr'ɔ:nl]. 【形】循序的
ordinal number [ɔr'dɪnəl
nʊm'ɪə]: 序數 49
- ordinary** [ɔr'dɪnəri, -dnri]. 【形】
平常的, 普通的 86 [73
oriental [ɔr'ɪən'tɪl]. 【形】東方的
Oriental Hotel [ɔr'ɪən'tɪ hɔ-
təl]: 東方旅館 73 [14
otherwise [ʊð'əwɪz]. 【狀】否則
ounce [aʊns]. 【名】英兩 34 (簡寫
作 oz.) [61
ours [ɔwɪz]. 【代】我們的, 咱們的
ourselves [ɔwɪ'sɔlvz']. 【代】我們
自己, 咱們自己 12
out of order [aʊt'əv ɔr'də]: 損壞
18 [9
out of stock [aʊt'əv stɔk]: 脫貨
oversea, overseas [ɔ'vɛsə', -z].
【狀】海外的 54
oversea (-seas) Chinese [ɔ'vɛsə'
(-z) tʃɪ'ni:z]: 華僑 54 [59
overshoes [ɔ'vɛʃəʊz]. 【名】套鞋
own [ɔn]. 【形】所有, 私有 90
owner [ɔ'nə]. 【名】主人 30
ox [ɔks]. 【名】牛(牝牛) 30 (複數
oxen [ɔk'sn])

P, p [pə]

- package** [pækɪdʒ]. 【名】包裹 32
- pail** [pæl]. 【名】提桶 64
- pain** [peɪn]. 【名】痛 29
- pains** [peɪnz]. 【名】辛苦 29
- paint** [peɪnt]. 【名】油漆, 畫; 油漆原
料, 畫國彩色 59 [59
painter [peɪntə]. 【名】油漆匠; 畫家
pair of scissors, a [ə pɛr'əv
sɪz'ɔz]: 一把剪刀 26
pair of tongs, a [ə pɛr'əv tɔŋz]:
一把大鉗 16

- pane [pæn]. 【名】片, 方片 2
- pancake [pæn'kæk, pæŋg-]. 【名】
. 麵餅 68
- paragraph [pɑ:'ɒgrəf]. 【名】(文
字之)段, 節 13 (複數加 -s [-s])
- pardon [pɑ:'dɒn]. 【名·云】饒恕 19
- parent [ˌɛər'ent]. 【名】父或母 48
- parenthetical [pær'enthə'tɪkl].
【形】括弧的, 插語的 67
- parenthetical expression [pær'-
enthə'tɪkl ɪksprəʃ'ən]. 插語
67 【屬】59
- parlour, parlor [ˌpɑ:'ləʊ]. 【名】客
房 [pɑ:tɪ]. 【云】分離 73
- part of speech [ˌɛər'ɔv spɛtʃ].
詞類 18 【伴】44
- partner [ˌɛər'tnə]. 【名】合夥者, 夥
伴 [pɑ:ʃ]. 【名】美, 美, 美. 【名】通行證;
免票證; 【云】經過 76, 78
- patch [pætʃ]. 【名】惡漢(罕用) 6
- patiently [pə'shəntli]. 【狀】忍耐
地 10
- pave [pæv]. 【云】鋪(地板或路) 2
- paw [pɑ:w]. 【名】蹄掌 29
- pay attention to [ˌpeɪ'ətən'si:ən tə].
注意某事 49
- peculiar [pɪkə'liə, -lə]. 【形】奇
特的, 特別的 51
- pence [pəns]. 【名】(=penny 的複
數) 辨士 25
- penny [pən'i]. 【名】辨士(英國幣制
的最小單位) 25 (複數 pennies,
pence)
- people [pe'pl]. 【名】人民, 民族 55
(作此解時另有複數加 -, [-s])
- perfectly [pə'fɛktli]. 【狀】完全
地 18 【許】8
- perhaps [ˌpə'hæps, prəps]. 【狀】也
- periwinkle [pə'riwɪŋkl]. 【名】
螺 81
- person [pɜ:'sn]. 【名】人 12
- Philippine Islands, the [dɪə'ɪl-
ɪlənz ɪ'ləndz]. 菲律賓羣島 53
- Philippines [fɪl'i:ənz, -pɪnz].
【名】菲律賓 53
- phrase [frɑ:z]. 【名】短語 17
- pick [pɪk]. 【云】揀 13
- pick out [pɪk'əʊt]. 揀出 13.
- picture [ˌpɪk'tʃə]. 【名】圖畫 21
- pie [pi]. 【名】麵餅 25
- piece [pi:s]. 【名】一塊, 一件 19
- piece-goods [ˌpi:s'gudz]. 【名】布
匹類 33 【人】25
- pie man [pi'mæn]. 【名】賣麵餅的
- pig [pɪg]. 【名】豬 1
- pig's stomach [pɪgz stʊm'æk].
豬肚 1
- pigeon [pɪj'ɪn]. 【名】鴿 82
- pigeon egg [pɪj'ɪn ɒg]. 鴿蛋 82
- pink [pɪŋk]. 【形】淡紅 9
- pity [pɪ'ti]. 【云】可憐 80
- pace [peɪs]. 【名】地方, 位; 【云】置,
放 12, 16, 83
- plan [plæn]. 【云】計劃 85
- plaster [ˌplɑ:'steɪ]. 【云】塗灰泥 2
- plate [pleɪt]. 【名】盤 1
- play [pleɪ]. 【云】(與樂器合用時)吹,
彈, 奏 45 【75
- play-fellow [pleɪ'feləʊ]. 【名】遊伴
- pleasure [ˌpleʒə]. 【名】快樂 14
- plenty [ˌplenti, plɒnti]. 【名】許
多 95
- plenty of [ˌplenti'ɒv]. 許多 65
- point [poɪnt]. 【云】指, 指點; 【名】
點 16, 33
- point out [poɪnt'əʊt]. 指出 16

- policeman** [pə'lɪs'mən, pə'lɪ's-]. 【名】警察 71 (複數 -men [-mən, -mən])
- pomade** [pə'mah'd]. 【名】生髮油, 香髮膏 5 [67]
- poor** [pʊr]. 【形】可憐的; 貧窮 7, **poor thing** [pʊr θɪŋ]: 可憐蟲, 可憐的東西 7
- porch** [pɔ:tʃ]. 【名】走廊 3
- portion** [pɔ:ʃn]. 【名】份 43
- position** [pə'zɪʃən]. 【名】位置
- post** [pəʊst]. 【名】郵政 62 [18]
- post office** [pəʊst ɒfɪs]: 郵政局
- pot** [pɒt]. 【名】壺, 盆 21 [62]
- potato** [pə'teɪtəʊ]. 【名】洋山薯 56
- pound** [paʊnd]. 【名】磅 54 (簡寫作 lb., 複數 lbs.) [4]
- pour** [pɔ:, pɔ:]. 【云】傾注 (液質)
- powder** [ˈpaʊdər]. 【名】粉類 27
- practice** [ˈpræktɪs]. 【名】練習 11
- praise** [praɪz]. 【名】讚美, 讚美的話 85
- precede** [prɪ'sɛd, prɛ-]. 【云】在前; 居於~之前 83, 66
- precisely** [prɪ'si:li]. 【狀】準確, 正, 恰 83 [12]
- predicate** [prɛd'ɪkət]. 【云】敘述
- predicate** [prɛd'ɪkət]. 【名】敘述, 述語 12
- predicate adjective** [prɛd'ɪkət, ɪdʒɪktɪv]: 述語形容詞 16
- predicate nominative** [prɛd'ɪkət ɪnɔ:mɪnətɪv]: 述語主格 24
- predicate verb** [prɛd'ɪkət vɜ:b]: 述語謂詞 24
- prefer** [prɪ'fɜ:v]. 【云】寧願 56
- preposition** [prɛ'pəʊzɪʃən]. 【名】介詞 36
- preposition phrase** [prɛp'əʊzɪʃən fraɪz]: 介詞性短語 38
- prepositional** [prɛp'əʊzɪʃənəl]. 【形】屬於介詞的 36
- prepositional complement** [prɛp'əʊzɪʃənəl kəm'plɪmənt]: 介詞補足語 52
- prepositional phrase** [prɛp'əʊzɪʃənəl fraɪz]: 介詞短語 33
- prepositional verb** [prɛp'əʊzɪʃənəl vɜ:b]: 含有介詞的謂詞短語 52 [43]
- present** [prɪzənt]. 【云】呈獻; 陳列
- prettiest** [prɪ'ti:st]. 【形】(pretty 的級) 最美麗的 64
- pretty** [prɪ'ti]. 【形】美麗的 25
- principal** [prɪn'sɪpəl]. 【形】主要的 86
- principal clause** [prɪn'sɪpəl klaʊz]: 主句 86
- problem** [prɒ'bləm, -ləm]. 【名】問題 13 [生 27]
- produce** [prɒdʊs]. 【云】使生出, 產
- promise** [prɒmɪs]. 【云】答應 13
- promotion** [prə'məʃən]. 【名】擢陞, 階級 62
- promptly** [prɒmptli]. 【狀】準時的 88
- pronoun** [prə'naʊn]. 【名】代名詞 13 [的 55]
- proper** [prɒpər]. 【形】固有的, 獨有的
- proper noun** [prɒp'ər naʊn]: 專有名詞 55
- properly** [prɒ'ɒlɪ]. 【狀】照規矩地, 適宜地 87 [63]
- protest** [prə'ɒst, prɒ-]. 【云】抗議
- provide** [prə'vɪd, prɒ-]. 【云】供給 88

provided that [prəvɪ'dɪd ðət]:
倘若, 假使 88
pudding [pʊd'ɪŋ]. 【名】布丁(鷄
蛋糕之上加以甜醬) 56
pull [pʊl]. 【云】拉, 拖 28
pure [ɪ'ɹ]. 【形】純粹 82
pure and simple [ɪ'ɹ, ən sɪm'p-
l]. 【形】單純, 並無其他用意 82
purple [pɜ:p'l]. 【名, 形】紫色 9
purpose [ɪ, ɹ'pɜ:s]. 【名】目的, 效
用, 用途 8
put down [pʊt daʊn]: 寫出 63
pygmy [pɪ, mɪ]. 【名】侏儒; 矮人
69 (複數 -ies. [-ɪz])

Q, q [kū]

qualification [kwɒlɪ'fɪkə'shən].
【名】形容, 限制, 變更 7 [67
qualify [kwɒlɪ'fɪ]. 【云】形容, 限制
queen [kwi:n]. 【名】皇后, 女王 83
quench [kwɛnʃ]. 【云】止(渴) 59
question [kwɒs'tʃən]. 【名】問題
quick [kwɪk]. 【狀】快 90 [24
quietly [kwɪ'etli]. 【狀】靜靜地, 悄
悄地 84
quit [kwɪt]. 【名】棉被 22
quite a few [kwɪt ə fu]: 頗不少 18
quite a long way from here [kwɪt
ə lɒŋ wə frəm hɛr]: 離此地
很遠 71

R, r [ɹ]

raise [raɪz]. 【云】舉起 69
rank [rɒŋk]. 【名】品位, 品級 86

rate [ræt]. 【名】比率 76
rate of exchange [ræt əv ɪks-
tʃə'nɪʃ]: 銀錢的兌換率 76
razor [rə'zə]. 【名】剃刀 27
reach [ri:tʃ]. 【云】達到 62
reader [ri'də]. 【名】讀者 66
real [ri'el]. 【形】真的 46
reap [ri:p]. 【云】刈, 收割(五穀) 20
reason [ri:zn]. 【名】理由 45
reasonable [ri:znə'bəl]. 【形】合理;
(價錢)公道 8
receiver [ri:sɪ'və]. 【名】接收者 83
receiver of a letter [ri:sɪ'və əv
ə lɛtə]: 受信人 63
recently [ri:sntli]. 【狀】近日 61
recommend [rɛk'ɒmənd]. 【云】
推薦, 介紹 18
refer [ri'fɛr]. 【云】指 14 (~,
referred [-'fɛr'd], referred)
refuse [ri'fju:z]. 【云】拒絕 64
regard [rɪ'gɑ:d]. 【云】看, 算 89
regular [rɛg'jələ]. 【形】循例的, 平
常的 82
regular dinner [rɛg'jələ dɪnə]:
家常便飯 82 [49
relate [ri'læt]. 【云】關連, 使有關連
relation [ri'lə'shən]. 【名】關係;
有關係的人, 親戚 86, 48 [88
relative [rɛl'etɪv]. 【形】有關連的
relative adverb [rɛl'etɪv əd-
vɜ:b]. 【關連狀詞 88
relative pronoun [rɛl'etɪv
prə'naʊn]. 【關連代名詞 88
release [ri:li:s]. 【云】釋放 47
rely [ri:li]. 【云】依賴, 靠 52
rely on [ri:li'ɒn]: 依賴, 靠 52
remain [ri'meɪn]. 【云】留存, 繼續,
依然是 83

remember [rɪməm'bə]. 【云】記憶
18

repair [ɪˈpɑːr]. 【名·云】修理 58

repeat [rɪˈpiːt]. 【云】重述 63

reply [rɪˈpli]. 【云】回答 50

report [rɪˈpɔːt]. 【名·云】報告,報到
31

report for work [rɪˈpɔːt fɔː
wɜːk]: 上工 31 [77, 78]

request [rɪˈkwest]. 【名·云】請求

request stop [rɪˈkwest stɒp]: 招
呼站,小站 77

respectfully [rɪˈpektɪfʊli]. 【狀】
恭敬地 89

respectively [rɪˈspektɪvli]. 【狀】
循次序,前者對前者,後者對後者 49

rest [rɛst]. 【名】其餘的(部分) 78

restaurant [rɛstərɒŋ, rɛstə-
rɑːnt]. 【名】餐館,飯店,酒樓 53

return [rɪˈtɜːn]. 【云】回;退回 68

reverse [rɪˈvɜːs, rɛ-]. 【云】反轉,
倒退 70

reward [rɪˈwɜːd]. 【名】報酬 44

rich [rɪtʃ]. 【形】富裕 70

riches [ˈrɪtʃɪz]. 【名】金銀,富裕
90 [71]

rickshaw [rɪkˈʃɑːw]. 【名】人力車

riddle [ˈrɪdl]. 【名】謎語 15

right away [raɪt ə ɑː]. 立刻 16

right-handed [raɪtˈhændɪd]. 【形】
慣用右手的 83

ring [rɪŋ]. 【云】搖動;搖鈴使 77

rinse [rɪns]. 【云】(輕驅地)洗,將水
注入又傾出 4

road [rəʊd]. 【名】路 71

robin [ˈrɒbɪn]. 【名】知更鳥 7

romance [ˈrɒmɑːns]. 【名】情事,戲
劇 62

roof [rʊf]. 【名】屋 2 (複數
roofs [rʊfs])

round [raʊnd]. 【形】圓的 60

'round [raʊnd]. 【簡】(=around)
週圍,環繞 35

route [raʊt]. 【名】路線,路 77

Route 6 [raʊt ɪv]: (第)五路 77

Route (No) 3 [raʊt (nɒm'bɔː)
θrɜː]: (第)三路 77

rub [rʌb]. 【云】抹,擦,磨 4

rule [ruːl]. 【名】規則;管理,統治
11, 53 [壽命 17]

run for one's life [rʌn fɔː wʌn zɪː
lɪf]

Russia [rʊʃɪə]. 【名】俄國 54

Russian [rʊʃɪən]. 【形】俄國的;
【名】俄國人;俄國語言文字 54, 55

S, s [ɛs]

salad [səˈlæd]. 【名】生菜 50

sale [seɪl]. 【名】賣 46

salesman [seɪlsmən]. 【名】賣貨
員 8 (複數 -men [-ən, -mən])

salutation [səˈljuːtəʃən]. 【名】
招呼,稱呼 63

same as ~, the [ðə ɪm əz]: 與~
相同 31

sample [sɑːmpl, 美 sɑːm-]. 【名】
貨樣,樣子 57

satyr [səˈtɪr]. 【名】樹林中之神 80

sausage [ˈsɑːsɪdʒ]. 【名】臘腸 56

save [seɪv]. 【云】救 46

say [seɪ]. 【感】喂 82 [24]

saying [seɪɪŋ]. 【名】(所說的)話

scarcely [ˈskɜːsli]. 【狀】甫~即,
剛~便 79

scholar [ˈskɒlə]. 【名】學者 66

- scissors [sɪz'əz]. 【名】剪刀 26
 scold [skɔld]. 【云】罵,大罵 70
 scorch [skɔtʃ]. 【云】焦灼 74
 Scotch [skɔtʃ]. 【形】蘇格蘭的;
 【名】蘇格蘭人 53
 Scotland [skɔt'lænd]. 【名】蘇格蘭 53
 Scottish [skɔt'ɪʃ]. 【形】蘇格蘭的 53
 scroll [skrɔl]. 【名】卷軸 21
 scrub [skrʊb]. 【云】擦,揩 35
 scud [skʊd]. 【云】飛奔 60
 sea [si]. 【名】海 7
 sea cucumber [si kʊ'kʌmbə].
 海參 82
 season [si'zn]. 【名】(season ticket
 之簡) 月票,期票 76
 second cousin [sɛk'sʌnd kʊz'n]. 再
 從兄弟姊妹,從表兄弟姊妹 49
 secretary [sɛk'retrɪ]. 【名】書記
 32 [71, 77
 section [sɛk'shən]. 【名】部份;段
 see [si]. 【云】曉得了 13 [75
 seem [si:m]. 【云】好像,看起來像
 self [sɛlf]. 【代】自身 61 (複數
 selves [sɛlvz])
 sell [sel]. 【云】賣 46
 send [sɛnd]. 【云】差,使 47 (一,
 sent [sɛnt], sent)
 send for [sɛnd fɔ:]. 召,叫~來 58
 sender [sɛn'dɜ:.]. 【名】寄信人 63
 sentence [sɛn'təns]. 【名】句子 12
 sentence construction [sɛn'təns
 kɔnstrʊk'tʃən]. 句的構造,句法
 67 [開 41
 separate [sɛp'reɪt]. 【云】分開,隔
 set [set]. 【名】組,套,副 59
 settee [sɛti:]. 【名】靠背長椅 21
 several [sɛv'rəl]. 【形】數個;幾個
 shade [ʃæd]. 【名】色度 9 [21
 shade-guide [ʃæ'd-gɪ'd]. 【名】色
 度指南 9
 shampoo [ʃæmpʊ]. 【名·云】洗
 頭髮 27
 Shanghai [ʃæŋ'hɑɪ, ʃæŋhɪ'].
 【名】上海 61
 shape [ʃeɪp]. 【云】使形成 60 (過
 去分詞: shaped, 被形成) [44
 share [ʃɛə]. 【名】份額;【云】分得
 shark [ʃɑ:k]. 【名】沙魚 82
 shark's fins [ʃɑ:kz fɪnz]. 魚翅
 82
 sharp [ʃɑ:p]. 【形】犀利 28 (較
 數 sharper [ʃɑ:p'pɜ:], 最數
 sharpest [ʃɑ:p'pi:st])
 sharpen [ʃɑ:p'n]. 【云】使利,磨
 利,磨利 27
 sharper [ʃɑ:p'pɜ:]. 【形】較犀利 28
 shave [ʃeɪv]. 【云·名】剃鬚 26
 shaving-dish [ʃeɪvɪŋ-dɪʃ].
 【名】剃鬚用的碟 27
 Shaw [ʃəʊ]. 【名】人名 58
 sheep [ʃi:p]. 【名】綿羊 45 (複數
 同)
 sheet [ʃi:t]. 【名】被單 22
 shepherd [ʃɛp'hɜ:l]. 【名】牧羊人
 45 [有 60
 she's [ʃi:z]. 【縮】(= he has) 伊
 ship [ʃɪp]. 【名】船;【云】運貨,轉
 運 7, 32
 shipping clerk [ʃɪp'ɪŋ klɜ:k].
 運貨管理員 32 [匠 68
 shoemaker [ʃu'mə'keɪ] 【名】鞋
 short [ʃɔ:t]. 【形】短;矮 15
 short story [ʃɔ:t stɔ:ri]. 短篇
 小說 18

- should [ʃəʊd, s'əʊ]. 【助】與云詞謂合用以指假定之將來的事實 應該; shall 在過去時制 14, 49, 61
- shower [ʃəʊə]. 【名】(夏天)陣雨; 驟雨; 【云】下傾盆大雨; 多量給與, 博施 7, 85
- shrink [ʃrɪŋk]. 【云】縮 縮回 38
- shroud [ʃraʊd]. 【名】橫挽索 60
- Si. m [si'əm, siām']. 【名】暹羅 54
- Siamese [si'əmeɪz]. 【形】暹羅的; 【名】暹羅人; 暹羅語言文字 51, 15
- sick of [ɪk əv]. 對於~覺得討厭 89
- sickness [ɪk'nɪs]. 【名】病, 病症 83
- sieve [si:v]. 【名】篩 15
- sign [ɪn]. 【云】簽字 63
- signature [sɪg'nɪtʃə]. 【名】簽名 63
- silk [sɪlk]. 【名】絲; 綉縐 9, 33 (作“綉縐衣服”解時複數加 -s [-s])
- sill [ɪl]. 【名】閩, 門限, 窗檯 21
- silvery [sɪl'vəri, -vri]. 【形】銀的; 鍍銀的; 像銀的; 銀色的 83
- similar [sɪ'mɪlə]. 【形】相同的 79
- similarly [sɪm'ɪləli]. 【狀】同樣地 49
- Simon [si'mən]. 【名】西門(男子名) 25 [25]
- simple [sɪm'pl]. 【形】簡單, 率直
- simple sentence [sɪm'pl sɛn'tɛns]. 單純句 87
- simplest [sɪm'plɪst]. 【形】(simple 的最級) 最單純的 78
- simply [-ɪm'pli]. 【狀】簡單地, 只, 祇 40
- since [saɪns]. 【連】自~時起 31
- sincerely [sɪnsər'li]. 【狀】真誠地 61
- sing [sɪŋ]. 【云】吟, 唱 84 (~, sang [ʌŋg, s: ŋg [sʊŋg])
- Singapore [sɪŋ'gəʊr', -pɔ:]. 【名】新加坡 82
- sing- [sɪ:ŋ]. 【名·云】魚 27 [42]
- single [sɪŋ'gi]. 【形】單的, 獨一的
- sister-in-law [sɪs'tə:ɪnlaw]. 【名】夫之姊妹; 妻之姊妹; 妯娌; 嫂子, 弟婦 49 (複數 sisters-in-law. [sɪs'teɪzɪnlaw])
- sit on the eggs [sɪt ɒn dhɪ'egz]. 孵卵 64
- skein [skɛn]. 【名】絛, 絛 9
- skin [skɪn]. 【名】皮; 【云】剥皮 43 (~, skinned [skɪnd], skinned)
- sleepy [slɪ'pi]. 【形】好睡, 瞌睡 6
- Sleepy Head [slɪ'pɪ hɛd]. 好睡的人, 瞌睡蟲 6
- slippers [slɪp'ɔz]. 【名】拖鞋 58
- slow [sləʊ]. 【形】慢, 遲 6
- slowly [sləʊli]. 【狀】慢慢地 19
- small letter [smaw:lɪ'tə]. 小寫字母 15
- snapshot [-næp'shɒt]. 【名】自己拍的照像 61
- snow [snəʊ]. 【名】雪; 雨雪 7
- So-and-so [səʊ'ənsə]. 【代】某某, 某人 63
- so far [sə fɑ:]. 至此一點為止 59
- so far as ~ is concerned [sə fɑ: ~ ɪz kənsɛr'nd]. 只關於~, 關於~的話 47
- so that [sə ðæt]. 以使, 使, 使這樣: 8
- soap [səʊp]. 【名】肥皂 4
- sofa [sə'fɑ:]. 【名】沙發 21
- soft [sɒft]. 【形】暗淡 10
- son [sʊn]. 【名】子, 兒子 13
- song [sɒŋ]. 【名】歌, 詩歌 84

- sen-in-law [sün'inlaw]. 【名】子婿
49 (複數 sens-in-law [sün'zin-law])
- sooner [sōō'nə]. 【狀】(soon 的較
級) 較早 79
- sou: t [sɔ:t]. 【名】種類 38
- soup spoon [sɔ:p'spōon]. 湯匙 83
- sour [sow]. 【形】酸的, 酸 40
- South, the [hə'saʊθ]. 南方 61
- South Africa [saʊθ əf'rɪkə].
南非洲 54
- South African [saʊθ əf'rɪkən].
南非洲的; 南非洲人 54
- South America [saʊθ əmər'ɪkə].
南美洲 54
- southward [səʊ'thwəd]. 【狀】向
南 73
- sow [səʊ]. 【云】播, 播種 20
- space [speɪs]. 【名】空間; 空位 76
- Spain [speɪn]. 【名】西班牙 53
- Spaniard [spæn'jəd]. 【名】西班牙
人 53
- Spanish [spæn'ɪʃ]. 【形】西班牙
的 【名】西班牙語言文字 53, 55
- spare [speɪ]. 【云】餘, 留下 69
- speaker [speɪkə]. 【名】說話者 57
- speech [spi:tʃ]. 【名】語言 16
- spell [spel]. 【云】拼音 89
- spin [spɪn]. 【云】紡績 6
- spite [spɪt]. 【名】惡意, 妨礙 3
- square [skwɛə]. 【形】四方的; 【名】
四方; 四方的空地, 廣場 2, 72
- squirrel [skwɪr'əl]. 【名】松鼠 47
- staff [staf]. 【名】職員(全體) 31
- stamp [stæmp]. 【名】郵票; 【云】蓋
郵票; 蓋印 37, 52
- stand [stænd]. 【名】架; 座 21
- stand for [stænd fɔ:r]. 代表 36
- stand on ceremony [stænd ɒn sər'i-
məni]. 拘守禮節 1
- stand up [stænd'ʌp]. 立起來 78
- standard [stænd'ɑ:d]. 【名】標準
star [stɑ:]. 【名】星 60 138
- start [stɑ:t]. 【云】起手, 開始, 出發
11 82
- start with [stɑ:t wɪð]. 以~開始
- state [steɪt]. 【云】陳述, 記載, 說明;
【名】情勢 1, 4, 80 56
- statement [steɪtmənt]. 【名】記載
- statue [steɪtʃu]. 【名】像, 造像 73
- steak [steɪk]. 【名】炙肉片 56
- steal [sti:l]. 【云】偷 28
- stenographer [stɛnə'grə:fə]. 【名】
速記打字員 52 44
- step [step]. 【名】步; 【云】踏, 走 59,
stewed in clear soup [s:əd ɪn klɪə
səʊp]. 湯燉 81
- stick [stɪk]. 【云】黏着 62 (~,
stuck [stʌk], stuck)
- still the old, old self (或 selves)
[sti:l dɪ ðə ɔ:l, ɔ:lɪ səlf (sɛlvz)].
依然故我 61
- stock [stɒk]. 【名】存貨 8
- stomach [stʊm'æk]. 【名】胃, 肚 1
(複數 stomachs [stʊm'ækz])
- stomach-ache [stʊm'æk-æk]. 【名】
胃痛 89
- stop [stɒp]. 【云】停止; 【名】電車
站, 公共車站 76, 77
- store [stɔ:, stɔ:]. 【名】店; 倉庫
13, 30
- straight [straɪt]. 【形】直 8
- strange [streɪndʒ]. 【形】奇特的 99
- stranger [st'reɪndʒə]. 【名】陌生人
71
- straw [strɔ:w]. 【名】草桿, 草 30

- street [st-rēt]. 【名】街,街道 72
 street car [st-rēt. k.ɑ:]: 街車,電車 72
- strength [st.ɒŋθ]. 【名】氣力 80
- strictly [st-rɪk'tlɪ]. 【狀】嚴格地
- strike [st-rɪk]. 【云】打 88 [42]
- stripe [st-rɪp]. 【名】條紋,條 33
- strong [st-rɒŋ]. 【形】強:的,強盛的 66 [27]
- strop [st-rɒp]. 【名】剃鬚刀的皮條
- struggle [st-rʌg'l]. 【名】扎掙 74
- student [st-udent]. 【名】學生 89
- study [s-ʌdɪ]. 【名】研究 13
- subject [s-ʌb'jɪkt, -jɛkt]. 【名】主語 12
- subjective complement [s-ʌb'jɛkt-ɪv kəm'plɪmənt]: 主語補足語 57 [級的,次等的 86]
- subordinate [s-əbɔ'rde-nɪt]. 【形】下
- subordinate clause [s-əbɔ'rde-nɪt klaʊz]: 附屬句 83
- subordinate conjunction [s-əbɔ'rde-nɪt kən'jʌŋkʃən]: 次級連詞 87
- succeed [s-ək-s-əd]. 【云】成功 46
- such a noun [s-ʌtʃ ə naʊn]: 這樣的一個名詞 55 [27]
- suggest [s-əj'stʃ]. 【云】提議,暗示
- suggestion [s-əj'stʃən]. 【名】提議,提案 85
- sup [s-ʌp]. 【云】喫晚飯 6
- superscription [s-ʌp-ə'skrɪpʃən]. 【名】封面字樣 63
- supply [s-əplɪ]. 【云】供給,補足 42
- suppose [s-ə'p-əʊz]. 【云】假使~如何 9
- surely [sh-ʊə'rɪ]. 【狀】一定的,無可疑蓋地 40
- surface [s-ʌr'fɪs]. 【名】表面;外觀 83
- surprise [s-ə'prɪz]. 【云】使驚奇 68
- swallow [sw-ɔ'ləʊ]. 【名】燕子 82
- swallow's nests [sw-ɔ'ləʊ nəsts]: 燕窩 82
- sweets [sw-ets]. 【名】蜜餞或其他甜的食物 1 [32]
- system [sɪ's-tɪm, -təm]. 【名】系統

T, t [tē]

- t' [t]. 【簡】to 之前 25
- table [t-ā-bl]. 【名】表 53
- table cloth [t-ā-bl kləʊθ]. 【名】桌巾,檯布 37 [所定好的] 56
- table d'hôte [tah'blɔ't]. 【名】全餐(茶館)
- table manners [t-ā-bl mən-ə:z]: 食時應有的禮儀 83
- tail [t-āɪ]. 【名】尾巴 44
- tailor [t-ā-lə]. 【名】裁縫 58
- take [t-āk]. 【云】看作,當作;取(得);帶 14, 71, 73 (~, took [t-ōok], taken [t-ā'kn])
- take a bath [t-āk ə bæθ]: 沐浴,洗澡 22 [81]
- take care of [t-āk kār-əv]: 照顧
- take place [t-āk pl-]. 【名】實現 89
- tall [t-awl]. 【形】高的 73
- Taylor, Bayard [b-ā'ārd t-ā-lə:]: 人名,十九世紀的美國文學家兼詩人 63
- tea [t-ē]. 【名】茶;茶點;茶會 14
- tea table [t-ē t-ā-bl]. 【名】茶几 21
- teacher [t-ē-tʃə]. 【名】教員 50
- tear [t-ēə]. 【云】扯,撕 70
- tope [t-ōp] .orn [t-ōrn]

- tear off [tār'ōf]: 扯開, 撕開 70
 tell [tɛl]. 【云】辨別 73
 tell X from Y [tɛl'ɔks frəm wɪ]:
 辨別 X 之非 Y 83
 tehd [tɛhɪ] 【云】看守, 照顧 45
 terribly [tɛr'ɪlɪ]. 【形】可怕的; 極
 81 [56]
 therefore [ðə'hæf'ɔr]. 【連】所以
 these few lines [ðəz fɪ lɪnz]: 這
 幾行(字) 61
 thick [θɪk]. 【形】厚的 83
 thief [θi:f]. 【名】竊賊, 偷兒 28
 (複數 thiefs [θi:vz])
 think over [θɪŋk'ɔvə]: 細想, 熟
 思 52
 thirst [θɪrst]. 【名】口渴 8)
 thought [θɔht]. 【名】思想 11
 thrash [θræʃ]. 【云】打, 打(五穀)
 tread [tred]. 【名】線 9 [20
 /hɪs [dhɪs]. 【狀】這樣地 20
 Tibet [tɪbət]. 【名】西藏 76
 Tibet Road [tɪbət' rɔd]: 西藏路
 (現已改名“廣洽聯路”) 76
 ticket [tɪk'ɪt]. 【名】票 76 [77
 Tientsin [tyɛn'tsɪn]. 【名】天津
 Tientsin Street [tyɛn'tsɪn/
 strɪ:]: 天津街 77
 tile [tɪl]. 【名】瓦; 磚 2
 time [tɪm]. 【名】回, 次 88
 tin [tɪn]. 【名】罐頭 34
 tiny [tɪ'nɪ]. 【形】細小的 13
 Tiny Café [tɪ'nɪ kəf'e]: 假想的
 咖啡館名
 tip [tɪp]. 【名】酒資; 【云】付酒資 66
 'tis [tɪz]. 【縮】(=it is) 那是 20
 toilet [tɔɪ'lɪt]. 【名】廁所 22
 tone [tɔn]. 【名】音調, 語氣 61
 tongs [tɔŋgz]. 【名】大钳 13
 too bad [tɔɔ bəd]: 太有缺點, 遺憾;
 美中不足; 太可惜 1
 tool [tɔɔl]. 【名】工具 59 [89
 toothache [tɔɔ'hæk]. 【名】牙痛
 toothbrush [tɔɔ'hbrʊʃ]. 【名】
 牙刷 5 [管 5
 tooth-paste [tɔɔ'thpæst]. 【名】牙
 toss [tɔs]. 【云】擡起, 昂起 64
 touch [ʊtʃ]. 【云】摸, 觸 44
 toward [təwəd, tɔw'ɔr', tɔ'ɔr',
 tɔwɔr'd]. 【介】向 41
 towel [təu'el]. 【名】手巾, 面巾 4
 tower [təu'ə]. 【名】似塔的樓 73
 town [taʊn]. 【名】市鎮, 小城 58
 tram [træm]. 【名】電車 72
 tramcar [træm'kɑr]. 【名】電車 72
 tram-rider [træm'raɪdər]. 【名】電
 車乘客 76
 transitive [træns'ɪtɪv, træn'-.
 【形】他動的, 動作或情形影響及他
 物的 23
 transitive verb [træns'ɪtɪv
 vɜ:b]: 他動云謂詞 23
 treat [tri:t]. 【云】處理; 待酒; 【名】
 請宴, 東道 42, 81
 tree [tri:]. 【名】樹 7 [45
 tremble [trɛm'bl]. 【云】震動, 戰慄
 trim [trɪm]. 【云】修葺 28 (~,
 trimmed, trimmed)
 trouble [trʊbl]. 【云】打擾; 【名】
 煩擾; 病痛 19, 49
 trust [trʌst]. 【云】相信 82
 truth [tru:θ]. 【名】真確, 真理 40
 try and see [tri ən sɛ:]: 試一試看
 tub [tʊb]. 【名】桶, 盆 58 [57
 tune [tʊn]. 【名】聲調 60
 turn [tɜ:n]. 【云】轉; 使轉向 29, 50
 turn~out [tɜ:n~əʊt]: 逐出 50

turn from [tɜrn frəm]: 離了 84
 turn round [tɜrn raʊnd]: 轉回,
 掉頭 29
 turn one's head [tɜrn wʌnz
 hɛd]: 使(某人)發怒 90
 twinkle [ˈtwɪŋkl]. 【云】閃爍 60
 two-hour interval, a [ə tuː-əʊr
 ɪnˈtɜvəl]: 兩小時的間隙或間隔 31

U, u [ū]

umbrella [ʊmbrəˈlæ]. 【名】雨傘 7
 understand [ʌnˈdɜstænd]. 【云】
 不言而喻; 省略 12 (~, under-
 stood [ʌnˈdɜstəʊd], under-
 stood)
 undo [ʌnˈdʊ, ʌnˈdʊ]. 【云】打
 消 90 (~, undid [ʌnˈdɪ],
 undone [ʌnˈdʊn])
 unexcused [ʌnˈɪkskʊzɪd]. 【分詞】
 不可饒恕的 80
 unit [ˈjuːnɪt]. 【名】單位 17
 unite [ˈjuːnɪt]. 【云】合併 53
 United States of America, the
 [dʌ ˈjuːnɪtɪd stæts əv əməˈrɪ-
 kə]: 美洲合眾國, 美國 53
 unknown [ʌnˈnəʊn]. 【形】不知名
 的, 不著名的 18
 unless [ʌnˈləs]. 【連】除非 18
 unsolved [ʌnˈsɒlvɪd, ʌnˈsɒlvd, ʌn-
 sɒlvɪd]. 【分詞】不曾解決的 66
 up [ʌp]. 【狀】完, 盡 6 [27
 upon [əˈpɒn, əˈpɒn]. 【介】在~之上
 urge [ɜːdʒ]. 【云】催促, 慫恿 48
 usage [ˈjuːzɪdʒ]. 【名】用法, 習慣 11
 (複數 usages [ˈjuːzɪdʒɪz])
 use [uːz]. 【云】用, 使用 4

use [uːz]. 【名】用處, 作用 78
 used [uːt]. 【分詞】(use 的過去分
 詞) 慣 1
 used to [ˈuːst tə]: 慣於 1
 useless [ˈuːslɪs]. 【形】無用的 74

V, v [vō]

vacant [vəˈkænt]. 【形】空的 73
 vacation [vəkeɪʃən]. 【名】假期
 62
 valuable [ˈvæljuəbl]. 【形】可貴的;
 很有價值的 70
 vase [vɑːs, 美 vās, vāz]. 【名】花
 瓶 21
 verb [vɜːrb]. 【名】云謂詞 13
 vertical [vɜːtɪkəl, -kɪl]. 【形】垂
 直的 41
 very likely [ˈvɛrɪ lɪˈkɪli]: 很可能地,
 大概 83
 village [ˈvɪlɪdʒ]. 【名】村莊 64
 vine [vaɪn]. 【名】葡萄樹 39
 voice [voɪs]. 【名】聲音 69

W, w [dʊb/ū]

wagon-load [wəgənˈləd]. 【名】一
 車; 滿一車 47
 waiter [ˈweɪtə]. 【名】侍役, 西崽 56
 Wales [weɪlz]. 【名】威爾斯 53
 walk up to [wɔːk ʌp tə]: 走近 84
 wall [wɔːl]. 【名】牆 2
 wardrobe [wɔːrɪd-rəʊb]. 【名】掛衣
 櫥 22
 ware [wɛə]. 【名】貨 25
 warm [wɔːm]. 【云】使溫暖 80

- warmth** [wɔ:rmθ]. 【名】 溫暖, 熱氣 80
wash [wɔ:ʃ]. 【云】 洗 4
wasn't [wɔ:z'nt, wezn't]. 【縮】 (= was not) 不是 47
waste [wæst]. 【云】 浪費 70
watchmaker [wɔ:tʃ'meɪkə]. 【名】 修理鐘表的人 18
weigh [weɪ]. 【云】 秤, 權, 輕重 54
weight [weɪt]. 【名】 重量 54
weight measure [weɪt məʒhə]: 尺度 24
well [wel]. 【狀】 好好地 18
we'll [wel]. 【縮】 (= we will) 我們要 6
well known [wel'nəʊn]. 【形】 著名的 18
Welsh [welʃ]. 【形】 威爾斯的: 【名】 威爾斯人 53
wet [wet]. 【形】 濕的, 用過的 27
whatever [wə'tevə, wət-]. 【代】 任何 56
what for? [wɔ:t fɔ:]: 爲什麼? 有什麼用處? 爲何? 19
whatsoever [wɔ:t'səʊvə, vət-]. 【代】 不論爲何的, 任何的 53
wheat [wi:t, wēt]. 【名】 小麥 23 (複數同)
whenever [wenəvə, wən-]. 【狀】 不論何時 30
whether [wəðə, wə'hə]. 【連】 或許 18
whether ~ or [wə'hə ~ ɔ:]: 抑~抑 18
which [wɪtʃ, wɪç]. 【代】 哪個? 18
white [waɪt, wɪt]. 【形】 白 59
whole [həʊl]. 【名】 全部, 整個 86
whom [həʊm]. 【代】 誰(受格): 那個人(指上一字所指的人)(受格) 18, 78
whose [həʊz]. 【代】 誰的 18
why [waɪ, wi]. 【感】 是啊, 當然, 呀: 【名】 這個理由 4, 28
wide [waɪd]. 【形】 闊 52
will [wɪl]. 【名】 意志 14
winty [wɪn'tri]. 【形】 冬天的 60
wipe [waɪp]. 【云】 拭, 揩 4
wish [wɪʃ]. 【名】 願望 61
with all that [wɪð əw dhæt]: 雖然如此 12
with best wishes [wɪð bɛst wɪʃh-iz]: 祝此間安 對親熱的朋友用的) 61 [63
within [wɪ'hɪn]. 【介】 在~之內
without [wɪ'hoʊt]. 【介】 沒有 68
without doubt [wɪðəʊt daʊt]: 無疑地 64
wives [waɪvz]. 【名】 (wife 的複數) 妻 48
wolf [wɔ:lf]. 【名】 豺狼 48
wo:der [wɔ:'dɜ:]. 【云】 疑惑而欲知其詳 60
wonderfully [wʌndəfʊli]. 【狀】 奇異的, 很特別地; 非常地 54
won't [wɔ:n]. 【縮】 (= will not) 不要 14
wood [wʊd]. 【名】 木頭 2
wood-cutter [wʊd'kʌtə]. 【名】 樵夫 68 [的 2
wooden [wʊd'n]. 【形】 木頭製
woodwork [wʊd'wɜ:k]. 【名】 (房屋上之) 木工 59
wool [wʊl]. 【名】 羊毛 53
woolen [wʊl'n, wʊl'in]. 【形】 羊毛的 53

- word order [wɜːd ɔːdə]: 字在句
中的秩序 78
- work [wɜːk]. 【云】工作以使 27
- world [wɜːld]. 【名】世界 60
- worry [wʊrɪ]. 【云】憂慮 73
- worst [wɜːst]. 【形】(bad 的最級)
最壞,最不好 67
- worst, the [d. ə wɜːst]: 極糟糕的
事 67
- worth [wɜːθ]. 【形】值,值得 46
- worth while [wɜːθ waɪl]: 值
得 46 [70]
- wretched [rɛtʃtɪd]. 【形】乖違的
- wring [rɪŋ]. 【云】絞 4 (~,
wrung [rʌŋ], wrung)
- writer [rɪˈtaɪ]. 【名】寫者; 著作家
18
- wrong [rɒŋ]. 【形】錯誤的 77

Y, y [wɪ]

- yard [jɑːd]. 【名】庭; 碼 3, 33
- yarn [jɑːn]. 【名】線; 粗線 5
- yellow [jɛləʊ]. 【形·名】黃色 19
- you'd [juːd]. 【縮】(=you had) 71
- you'll [juːl]. 【縮】(=you will) 14
- ycurs [juːz]. 【代】你的 31
- Yours sincerely [juːz sɪnsərɪli]:
你的真誠的_朋友 61

內政部著作權註冊執照警字第五九八七號

開明中學講義
“開明英文講義”

(第二冊)

中華民國廿四年三月初版

中華民國三十一年二月第一版

有著作權



不許翻印

編著者 林語堂 林 幽

發行者 章 錫 琛
吉安古南鎮開明書店

印刷者 南昌一職印刷所

總發行所

上海福州路二六八號

開明書店

分發行所

吉安 重慶 貴陽 成都 曲江
桂林 衡陽 昆明 金華

開明書店分店

(164p.)

設47642.2

